新概念英语名师导学系列

大家网
TopSage.com

新概念英语
名师精讲笔记

第二册

一线教学名师
全力出击

一线名师，担当主编；
授课精华，倾情奉献；
一本在手，考试无忧；
真题考点，一网打尽！

《新概念英语》学习胜经
New Concept Bible

攻克
高考，PETS2级，考研，雅思4.5，剑桥通用英语证书PET

商务印书馆
The Commercial Press

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

新概念英语名师导学系列

新概念英语名师精讲笔记

（第二册）

新东方名师编写组

商　务　印　书　馆
2010年·北京

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

新概念英语名师精讲笔记．第二册/新东方名师编写组编．—北京：商务印书馆，2010
(新概念英语名师导学系列)
ISBN 978-7-100-06922-9

Ⅰ．新… Ⅱ．北… Ⅲ．英语—自学参考资料 Ⅳ．H31

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2009)第 235768 号

所有权利保留。
未经许可，不得以任何方式使用。

新概念英语名师精讲笔记
(第 二 册)
新东方名师编写组

商 务 印 书 馆 出 版
(北京王府井大街36号 邮政编码 100710)
商 务 印 书 馆 发 行
北京瑞古冠中印刷厂印刷
ISBN 978-7-100-06922-9

2010 年 4 月第 1 版　　开本 787×1092 1/16
2010 年 4 月北京第 1 次印刷　　印张 22¼
定价：29.80 元

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

前　言

可以说我对于英语学习的兴趣是被《新概念英语》这套书激发出来的。由于课文本身很有趣，所以尽管觉得吃力，我却没有产生任何厌倦情绪。我用了两个多月的时间，就把第二册到第四册的200多篇课文生吞活剥地学完了。我的朋友、现任新东方教育科技集团常务副总裁周成刚，就是在没日没夜地模仿了《新概念英语》的朗读后，获得了一口标准的伦敦口音，最后被英国BBC广播公司看中，变成了BBC的记者和节目主持人。

——新东方教育科技集团董事长兼总裁俞敏洪

对于那些对《新概念英语》经典学习有详细计划安排的人来说，在最短时间内打下良好的基础并顺利进入下一阶段的学习，是他们最期望达到的。当然，这也是我们新概念英语名师导学系列丛书的编者们努力的动因和方向。在系列丛书的编写中，我们很重视这种连贯性和内在的互联性。所以，在脉络清楚的情况下，您能在一开始的英语学习中就因体验到无数前辈总结的经典而受益。

在英语学习中，你有没有觉得很无助的时候？尽管身边有热心的老师，亲爱的同学，你自己也有着良好的记忆力和学习能力，但你是否有时候还是会觉得课时短暂，瞬间记忆能力欠缺呢？你有十二分的热情，可是你还是不能达到学习目标，你是不是在困惑？总是会有各种的小念头浮上脑际，偶尔也会觉得怎么自己没有老师那么精通课本？……不要紧，就让这本辅导书来帮助你解决这些问题吧！你不会再冥思苦想、一筹莫展了，因为她像一本专门为《新概念英语》第二册量身定做的辞典，更像一个不可多得的良师益友，随时陪伴在你左右。

《新概念英语名师精讲笔记》第二册最大的特色是学习板块清晰，知识全面，与课本完全同步，虽然不能作为一位名师当面教授课程，但她几乎把课堂上名师所要传授给同学们的知识点全部囊括其中了。她也像是一位最优秀的学生所做的详细的听课笔记。可以说，她是你学习《新概念英语》过程中不可或缺的一本重要的辅导用书。

这本书是每课一个章节，每一章节按：(一)本课重点和难点；(二)本课词汇；(三)课文详解；(四)语法精析等四个板块进行组织编排的。清晰醒目，让同学们在拿到这本书的那一刻就会对《新概念英语》第二册的内容和学习步骤有个如大纲般清晰的了解。根据老师们多年的课堂教学经验和教学步骤进行学习，你就可以用尽可能少的投入获得尽量多的知识，这是其他辅导丛书所无法比拟的。我们相信，这本书清晰的脉络将会带给你十足的学习热情和信心。

综上所述，对于为参加高考和准备系统学习《新概念英语》教材的读者来说，这套《新概念英语名师精讲笔记》辅导丛书还是非常必要的。本书的主要特点在于：

- 强大的编写阵容，编写人员全部由新东方英语教师担任。
- 丰富的课文内容，多样的讲解形式。
- 四大板块的编排，形式科学、全面，设计合理，难易适中。
- 重点难点突出，有助于掌握课文要点，提高学习效率。
- 使用方便，既可自学，也可在课堂上使用。

基于以上特点，我们在本书的编写上考虑到按一般课时的讲解安排，使学生做到有条不紊、循序渐进地学完《新概念英语》第二册课本。

由于时间仓促，书中的不妥之处在所难免，敬请广大读者和英语同仁不吝批评指正。

编　者

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

说　明

《新概念英语名师精讲笔记》第二册中，每课都分四大板块，即本课重点和难点、词汇、课文详解、语法精析等。

现对词汇部分和课文详解部分作一说明：

词汇部分：

在课文主词的释义里有【词组】【联想】【用法】【辨析】等部分。

【词组】为主词的固定搭配、常用习惯用语。

【联想】是指除词组和例句外，与主词有关联的知识点，可以是同根词，也可以是近义词或反义词等。

【用法】主要是对单词释义和使用的一个详细阐述。

【辨析】是对容易混淆的同义词或词形相近的词的近一步分析讲解。

课文详解部分：

分三部分：课文句子及译文；句子中的有关知识点；与各种考试相关的知识点。其中：

● 后面的内容为相应的课文句子中有关的知识点，包括语法、词汇的特殊用法、辨析和句子结构分析等。

★ 后面的内容为与各种考试相关的知识点。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

目　　录

Lesson 1　A private conversation …… 1
Lesson 2　Breakfast or lunch? …… 5
Lesson 3　Please send me a card …… 9
Lesson 4　An exciting trip …… 13
Lesson 5　No wrong numbers …… 16
Lesson 6　Percy Buttons …… 20
Lesson 7　Too late …… 24
Lesson 8　The best and the worst …… 27
Lesson 9　A cold welcome …… 31
Lesson 10　Not for jazz …… 35
Lesson 11　One good turn deserves another …… 40
Lesson 12　Goodbye and good luck …… 43
Lesson 13　The Greenwood Boys …… 47
Lesson 14　Do you speak English? …… 49
Lesson 15　Good news …… 52
Lesson 16　A polite request …… 54
Lesson 17　Always young …… 60
Lesson 18　He often does this! …… 66
Lesson 19　Sold out …… 71
Lesson 20　One man in a boat …… 73
Lesson 21　Mad or not? …… 76
Lesson 22　A glass envelope …… 81
Lesson 23　A new house …… 84
Lesson 24　It could be worse …… 87
Lesson 25　Do the English speak English? …… 89
Lesson 26　The best art critics …… 91
Lesson 27　A wet night …… 94
Lesson 28　No Parking …… 97
Lesson 29　Taxi! …… 101
Lesson 30　Football or Polo? …… 105
Lesson 31　Success story …… 108
Lesson 32　Shopping made easy …… 111
Lesson 33　Out of the darkness …… 113

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

Lesson 34 Quick work ······ 115
Lesson 35 Stop thief! ······ 119
Lesson 36 Across the Channel ······ 121
Lesson 37 The Olympic Games ······ 125
Lesson 38 Everything except the weather ······ 129
Lesson 39 Am I all right? ······ 132
Lesson 40 Food and talk ······ 135
Lesson 41 Do you call that a hat? ······ 137
Lesson 42 Not very musical ······ 141
Lesson 43 Over the South Pole ······ 145
Lesson 44 Through the forest ······ 148
Lesson 45 A clear conscience ······ 152
Lesson 46 Expensive and uncomfortable ······ 154
Lesson 47 A thirsty ghost ······ 158
Lesson 48 Did you want to tell me something? ······ 161
Lesson 49 The end of a dream ······ 164
Lesson 50 Taken for a ride ······ 168
Lesson 51 Reward for virtue ······ 171
Lesson 52 A pretty carpet ······ 173
Lesson 53 Hot snake ······ 176
Lesson 54 Sticky fingers ······ 180
Lesson 55 Not a gold mine ······ 183
Lesson 56 Faster than sound! ······ 187
Lesson 57 Can I help you, madam? ······ 190
Lesson 58 A blessing in disguise? ······ 194
Lesson 59 In or out? ······ 197
Lesson 60 The future ······ 200
Lesson 61 Trouble with the Hubble ······ 203
Lesson 62 After the fire ······ 205
Lesson 63 She was not amused ······ 207
Lesson 64 The Channel Tunnel ······ 210
Lesson 65 Jumbo versus the police ······ 213
Lesson 66 Sweet as honey! ······ 218
Lesson 67 Volcanoes ······ 221
Lesson 68 Persistent ······ 225
Lesson 69 But not murder! ······ 227
Lesson 70 Red for danger ······ 232
Lesson 71 A famous clock ······ 235
Lesson 72 A car called Bluebird ······ 238
Lesson 73 The record-holder ······ 241
Lesson 74 Out of the limelight ······ 244
Lesson 75 SOS ······ 247

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

Lesson 76 April Fools' Day ………… 249
Lesson 77 A successful operation ………… 251
Lesson 78 The last one? ………… 253
Lesson 79 By air ………… 257
Lesson 80 The Crystal Palace ………… 259
Lesson 81 Escape ………… 262
Lesson 82 Monster or fish? ………… 265
Lesson 83 After the elections ………… 268
Lesson 84 On strike ………… 271
Lesson 85 Never too old to learn ………… 274
Lesson 86 Out of control ………… 278
Lesson 87 A perfect alibi ………… 281
Lesson 88 Trapped in a mine ………… 284
Lesson 89 A slip of the tongue ………… 287
Lesson 90 What's for supper? ………… 290
Lesson 91 Three men in a basket ………… 293
Lesson 92 Asking for trouble ………… 296
Lesson 93 A noble gift ………… 299
Lesson 94 Future champions ………… 302
Lesson 95 A fantasy ………… 305
Lesson 96 The dead return ………… 307
《新概念英语(第二册)》课后习题答案 ………… 310

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 1 A private conversation

本课重点和难点

- 英语基本句型

本课词汇

private ['praivit] *adj.* 1. 私人的，私有的 2. 私营的，私立的 3. 秘密的，私下的

【词组】in private 秘密地；私下地

conversation [ˌkɔnvə'seiʃən] *n.* 谈话，会话

theatre ['θiətə] *n.* 剧院

seat [siːt] *n.* 1. 座位，底座 2. 所在地，场所 *v.* 使坐下

【辨析】seat *vt.*；sit *vi.*

seat 用法有二：1. seat oneself；2. be seated。

I saw the professor sitting/seated among the students.

seat 还有"坐得下……人"之意。

play [plei] *v.* 1. 玩 2. 参加（比赛） 3. 演奏，扮演，演出 *n.* 1. 游戏 2. 比赛 3. 剧本，戏剧

【词组】fair play 公平竞争，公平对待，光明磊落；play with 玩弄，以……为消遣

loudly ['laudli] *adv.* 大声地，响亮地

angry ['æŋgri] *adj.* 愤怒的，生气的

【词组】be/get angry with sb. 生某人的气；be/get angry at sth. 因某事而生气

【用法】"生气"（状态）要用 be angry；"发怒"（动作）要用 get angry。

angrily ['æŋgrili] *adv.* 气愤地

attention [ə'tenʃən] *n.* 注意（力），留心

【词组】pay attention to 注意（其中 to 为介词）

bear [bɛə] *n.* 1. 熊 2. 粗鲁的人 *vt.* 1. 容忍，忍受 2. 负担，负荷 3. 生育，结果

【用法】1. 作"忍受，容忍"讲时，主要用于否定句和疑问句中，常与 can，could 连用，其后接 doing，to do 或接复合宾语。2. 作"承担；生子；结果（实）；忍耐"讲时，其过去分词用 borne，作"出生"讲时，过去分词用 born；表示"生孩子"时，后可接双宾语。

business ['biznis] *n.* 1. 买卖，商业 2. 商店，商业机构 3. 任务，事务，职务

【词组】get down to business 认真着手办事；have no business 没有……的权利；mean business 态度认真；on business 因公；out of business 停业的，破产的；talk business 谈工作（生意）

rudely ['ruːdli] *adv.* 粗鲁地，无礼地

课文详解

1. Last week I went to the theatre. 上个星期我去看戏。

● go to the theatre：去看戏（强调活动，而不是地点）。日常生活中到某一指定的地点做有关的事情，常见的表达法如下：

1) go to＋the＋somewhere（地点）

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

e. g. go to the cinema 去看电影
go to the shop 去买东西
go to the block 被处死,被送上断头台

2) go to+somewhere(地点)

e. g. go to church 去做礼拜
go to school 去上学
go to hospital 去住院
go to sea 去当海员

3) go to+the+one's

e. g. go to the barber's 去理发(男)
go to the butcher's 去买肉
go to the baker's 去买面包

2. ... I got very angry...我非常生气

● get "是逐渐变得"的意思,接近 become,表示心情转变的过程。如果"I was very angry"则表示作者原本就生气,并不暗示他受到干扰。

e. g. During the night, it got terribly cold. 在夜间,天变得相当冷。

3. ...I could not hear the actors...我听不见演员在说什么

hear sb. 听见某人的话
hear from sb. 收到某人的来信
hear of sb. /sth. 知道某人(某事)
hear about sth. 听说、得悉某消息

e. g. I just heard about his dismissal/illness.
我刚听说他被解雇了/生病了。
I've never heard of her/that place.
我从来没听说过她/那地方。
I hear from my mother once a week.
我一星期收到一封我妈妈的来信。

4. ...I turned round...我回过头去

turn round 转身,回头

★ 四级相关的考点短语:

1) turn to sb. 求助于某人

e. g. I always turn to my mother for help whenever I am in trouble.
每当我碰上困难时,我总是向妈妈求助。

2) turn up 出现,出席,到达

e. g. He promised to come to my birthday party, but he did not turn up at last.
他答应过要来参加我的生日派对,但最终他还是没来。

3) turn sb. sth. down 拒绝

e. g. Tom wanted to join the army but was turned down because of his poor sight.
汤姆想从军,但却由于视力不好而被拒绝。

4) turn out 证明是,结果

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

e. g. It turned out that he did not kill that man. 事实证明他没杀人。

5) turn over 打翻，翻转

e. g. The car turned over. 汽车翻了。

5. In the end 最后，终于(表示较长一段时间或努力之后)

● 类似于：finally/at last/in time

6. None of your business. 不关你的事。

★ 四级近义词辨析：business，matter，event，affair，incident，case

1) business：分内的事或某人的责任、事务等。

e. g. Mind your own business. 管好你自己的事。

Get down to business. 着手必须做的事，进入正题。

2) matter：指某人关心或需要考虑处理的事，不具体，常用语。

e. g. It's a matter of common knowledge. 这是一件众所周知的事。

3) event：多指国家、社会历史上发生的重大事件，也指个人生活中的重大事件。

e. g. Winning the scholarship was a great event in the boy's life. 获得奖学金是这男孩一生中的一件大事。

4) affair：常用复数，指重大的或者头绪较多的事情、业务等。

e. g. A Prime Minister is kept busy with affairs of states. 总理为国务而操劳。

5) incident：指较小或不重要的小事情。

6) case：指事例、实情或与某人相关的环境或特殊情况。还可以指案例、病例等。

e. g. He said he was a lawyer, but this is not the case. 他说他是一个律师，但这不是真的。

● none of... 一个都没有，相当于"not one of"或者"no one..."，但 no one 一般不跟 of 连用。

e. g. She kept none of my letters. 我的信她一封都没有保留。

None of/Not one of the students was punished today. 今天没有一个学生受罚。

语法精析

英语基本句型

1. 主＋谓(不及物动词)

The flowers are blooming. 花开得正艳。

The car stopped outside. 汽车停在门口。

2. 主＋谓(及物动词)＋宾

Walls have ears. 隔墙有耳。

He loves music. 他热爱音乐。

3. 主＋谓(及物动词)＋间宾＋直宾

I will buy you a ring. 我将给你买一个戒指。

He gave me a book. 他给我一本书。

主＋谓(及物动词)＋直宾＋间宾

He bought a gift for me. 他给我买了一件礼物。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

I passed the book to him. 我把书递给他。

4. 主+谓(系动词)+表语

I got very angry. 我变得非常生气。

She feels hungry. 她觉得饿。

5. 主+谓(及物动词)+宾+宾补(名词、形容词、副词、不定式、分词等)

The couple named their baby Henry. (名词作宾补)

He found the trip exciting. (形容词作宾补)

The boy knocked the tea pot over. (副词作宾补)

He wants me to wear the dress. (不定式作宾补)

I saw John punished. (分词作宾补)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 2 Breakfast or lunch?

本课重点和难点

- 比较一般现在时与现在进行时
- 感叹句的结构

本课词汇

until [ən'til] *prep.* / *conj.* 直到……为止(till)

【语法】not until 引导的时间状语从句放于句首,从句要使用陈述句语序,主句使用倒装语序。

outside ['aut'said] *prep.* 在……外 *adj.* 外面的,外部的 *adv.* 在外面,向外面 *n.* 外部,外表

【词组】at the outside 至多,充其量

What a day! 这倒霉的天气!

just then 就在那时

ring [riŋ] *n.* 1. 圆圈,戒指 2. 铃声 3. 电话 *v.* 1. 打电话 2. 敲铃

【词组】ring off 挂断电话

aunt [ɑ:nt] *n.* 伯母,婶母,姑母,姨母,舅母

repeat [ri'pi:t] *n.* 重复 *v.* 重做

【词组】repeat after 跟(某人)朗读(说话);repeat oneself 重说自己说的话;won't bear repeating 不堪重复

Dear me! 天啊!

课文详解

1. It was Sunday. 那是个星期六。

- 在英语中,it 的用法较广泛,可指时间、天气、距离等,其主要用法如下:

1) 表时间

e. g. It's 8 o'clock.

It's Monday.

2) 表天气、气候状况

e. g. It's raining again.

It's cold/warm today.

It was dark outside.

3) 表距离

e. g. It's ten miles to school.

It's a short way now.

4) 表不明身份的人或物

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

e. g. Who's that at the door?

It is me.

It is a lovely baby.

5) 作形式主语，代替不定式或主语从句等

e. g. It is difficult to learn swimming.

It is a pity that he can't come tomorrow.

6) 形式宾语，代替不定式或宾语从句等。

e. g. I think it a pity that you didn't catch the train.

He thought it easy to get the tickets.

2. on Sundays 在星期天的时候

● 介词 on 用于表示某一天的时间短语中。

e. g. on Monday afternoon

on that day

● Sundays 时间名词用复数形式表示每一个这样的时间，与一般现在时连用，表示经常性的行为。

e. g. I have English lessons on saturday afternoons.

They do not work on Sundays.

3. I never get up early on Sunday. I sometimes stay in bed until lunchtime. 星期天我从来不早起，而有时我要一直躺到吃午饭的时候。

● 这两句话都用到了一般现在时，表示作者的一种习惯。

4. I looked out of the window. 我望望窗外。

look out of... 向……外看

★ 高考与四级重点短语：

1) look into sth. 调查，检查

e. g. The police are looking into the cause of the accident.

2) look forward to sth. 盼望，期待

e. g. We are looking forward to seeing you again.

3) look over sth. 仔细检阅，反复检查

e. g. Look it over before you hand in your paper.

4) look through 温习，仔细阅读

e. g. I must look through the notes before the final exam.

5) look sth. up 查(资料)

e. g. Look up a word in the dictionary.

5. It was dark outside. 外面一片昏暗。

★ 四级近义词辨析：dark，black，dense，bold，tan，dim

1) dark：指漆黑无光或没有任何的照明，还可指前途暗淡、心情沉重。

e. g. It was a dark，moonless night.

His dark expression showed his mood.

2) black：一般强调颜色是黑的，与白色形成对比。

e. g. He bought a black T-shirt.

3) dense：指液体、蒸汽等不易透视的或指人物密集的。

e. g. dense smoke 浓烟

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

a dense fog 浓雾

a dense crowd 拥挤的人群

4) bold:指人大胆的、勇敢的,同时也指轮廓清楚的、醒目的及文字印刷中的黑体。

e.g. It is the bold outline of a mountain.

Please print this part in bold type.

5) tan:指黄褐色,皮肤黑的颜色。

e.g. How can you get such a good tan?

6) dim:指光线不足导致模糊不清,难以辨别。

e.g. The room was too dim for me to read.

6. It is raining again. 天又在下雨了。I'm coming to see you. 我这就来看你。

● 此两句都用到了现在进行时。

7. Dear me! 天啊!

● 感叹词是用来表示说话时表达的喜怒哀乐等情感的词。它不构成后面句子的一个语法成分,在意义上却与后面的句子有关连,后面的句子一般说明这种情绪的性质、原因。感叹词是英语口语中最富于表现力的词语之一,用途甚广。英语中常用的感叹词如下:

1) oh 表示惊讶、指责、痛苦、称赞、懊恼等,可译为"哦、哎呀、噢、啊、呀"等。

e.g. "Oh, how blind you are!" he cried. "哎呀,你们真瞎!"他大声道。

2) ah 表示惊奇、高兴、讨厌、懊悔、藐视、威胁等,可译为"呀、啊"等。

e.g. "Ah, yes, Jeanne married a man with a lot of money." "啊,对了,让娜嫁给了一个很有钱的人。"

3) come 表示鼓励、不耐烦、引起注意,安慰等,可译为"喂、好吧、说吧、得啦"等。

e.g. Come, come, get him his change. Tod. 好吧,好吧,托德,快把钱找给他。

4) dear 表示后悔、难过、怜悯、同情、吃惊、盼望等,可译为"哎呀、天哪"等。

e.g. Dear me! What awful weather! 哎呀! 多糟的天气!

5) well 表示快慰、让步、期望、讥讽、解释、责备、犹豫等,可译为"好吧、不过、好啦、嗯"等。

e.g. Well, your father has found him in the garage. 好了,你父亲在车库里找到他了。

6) now 表示警告、命令、请求、说明、安慰等,可译为"喂、喏、好了"等,有时也可不必译出。

e.g. Now, now, my boy! It's all right! There's no need to cry! 好了,好了,孩子,没事了,别哭了。

7) there 表示得意、鼓励、同情、悲哀、不耐烦、失望、安慰、挑衅、引起注意等,可译为"哟、瞧、好啦、得啦"等。

e.g. There, there, you said too much. 得啦,得啦,你说的太多了。

8) man 表示兴奋、轻蔑、不耐烦、引起注意,可译为"啊、嗨"等。

e.g. "Use your knife, man!" ordered the British officer nearby. "嗨,用刀子割!"旁边的英国军官命令道。

9) boy 表示高兴、兴奋、惊奇等,可译为"嘿、哇、哼、怎么样"等。

e.g. Boy! This soup is good, Mama! 嘿! 妈妈,这汤好得很。

10) 此外还有:

ha (惊奇、疑惑、鄙视) aha(得意、惊奇、嘲弄、满意) hey (喜悦、打招呼) hell (喜悦、惊奇、打招呼) sh (制止、引起注意) why (吃惊、抗议) nonsense (胡说) Good heavens (惊异、不高兴)

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

语法精析

一、比较一般现在时与现在进行时

(一)一般现在时

其用法如下：

1. 表习惯性动作或职业，常与频度副词连用：never，always，often，usually，sometimes，seldom，frequently，occasionally，rarely，everyday 等。

I always take a walk after supper.

He rarely goes to the cinema.

2. 表现在的事实、状态或动作。

Dogs are our best friends.

Mike likes playing basketball.

3. 表客观真理、格言、警句或事实。

The sun rises in the east.

One and one makes two.

4. 一般现在时还可与时间、条件、让步等状语从句连用。

If it rains tomorrow，I will stay at home.

As soon as she comes back，I will tell her the news.

(二)现在进行时

其结构为：am/is/are+doing，其用法如下：

1. 表示现在或者现阶段正在进行的动作，常与时间状语：now，at present，these days 等连用。

He is listening to the radio now.

Mary is learning English in New Oriental School these days.

2. 表示即将发生的动作，常与 go，come，leave，arrive，land，meet，die，start 等动词连用。

The old man is seriously ill，and he is dying.

Tom is leaving for Shanghai.

3. 表示说话人带有赞扬或讨厌的感情色彩，常与 always，forever，constantly 等副词连用。

My sister is always helping the poor.

Mary is constantly talking loudly in class.

二、感叹句的结构

1. what+a(n)+*adj.*+*n.*+主+谓语（主语和谓语通常被省略）

What a lazy boy (he is)!

What a beautiful girl (she is)!

注：如果省略形容词，则表示批评或不喜欢。

What a table!

What a day!

2. How+*adj.*/*adv.*+主+谓语（在上下文中主语和谓语也可以省略）

How hard (he works)!

How interesting (the film is)!

how+*adj.*+a(n)+单数名词+主谓

How lovely a boy he is!

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 3 Please send me a card

本课重点和难点

- 一般过去时
- 双宾语结构

本课词汇

send [send] *v.* 1. 送,寄 2. 派遣,打发

postcard ['pəustkɑːd] *n.* 明信片

spoil [spɔil] *v.* 搞糟,损坏,宠坏,溺爱

museum [mjuː'ziəm] *n.* 博物馆,展览馆

public ['pʌblik] *adj.* 公共的,公众的,公用的,公开的,公然的 *n.* 公众,民众

【词组】in public 公开的;in the public eyes 众人瞩目的;go public上市,挂牌

public garden 公园

friendly ['frendli] *adj.* 友好的

waiter ['weitə] *n.* 侍者,服务员

lend [lend](lent[lent],lent)*v.* 把……借给,出借,贷与

【词组】lend oneself to 帮助,屈从

decision [di'siʒən] *n.* 决定,果断

【词组】make a decision 作出决定

whole [həul] *n./adj.* 全部,全体,完整

【词组】as a whole 整个地,总体上;on the whole 总的来说,大体上,基本上

single ['siŋgl] *adj.* 1. 单一的,单个的 2. 单人的 3. 未婚的,独身的

【词组】single ticket 单程票

【辨析】single 意为"唯一的,单一的",是 a number of,several 的反义词,常用在表示否定意义的句子中,与"a"连用;alone 意为"单独的",修饰名词、代词时要放在它们之后,而 only 修饰名词时,要放在名词之前;only"唯一的",是普通用语,常与 the、形容词性物主代词连用。only 作副词修饰名词或代词时意为"仅仅",可后置,与 alone 同义。

课文详解

1. Last summer, I went to Italy. 去年夏天,我去了意大利。

● 本句及文中的其他句子几乎全都运用了一般过去时,而上一课我们了解到一般现在时表示习惯和经常性动作。

2. A friendly waiter taught me a few words of Italian, then he lent me a book. 一位好意的服务员教了我几句意大利语,之后还借给我一本书。

● 像 teach,lend,send,give,offer,pass,buy,make 等动词都可以接两个宾语。一般表示动作结果的叫直接宾语,如原文中的 a few words 和 a book;表示动作目标的叫间接宾语,如原文中的 me,通常是间接宾语位于直接宾语的前面。如果直接宾语在前,那间接宾语前必须加介词"to"(表示动作对某人而言)或"for"(表示动作为某人而做)。

e.g. He lent me a book. = He lent a book to me.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

He taught me a few words. = He taught a few words to me.

She sent me a card. = She sent a card to me.

She passed me the doll. = She passed the doll to me.

● a few 与可数名词的复数连用，表示肯定含义，作"有一些"讲，相当于 some，a small number of 等。

e. g. He asked me a few questions.

few 与可数名词的复数连用，则表示否定，意为几乎没有。

e. g. There were few people in the zoo last Monday.

类似的还有：a little，与不可数名词连用，表示肯定，意为有一点，相当于 some。

e. g. There is a little water in the glass.

little：与不可数名词连用，则表示否定，几乎没有之意。

e. g. I have little money left.

3. but I did not understand a word. 但我一个字也不懂。

● not...a 强调一个也没有，课文最后一句用 not...a single 比 not...a 语气更强烈。

e. g. He did not speak a word at the party. 他在晚会上一个字都没有说。

He did not speak a single word at the party. 他在晚会上竟然连一个字都没有说。

4. Everyday I thought about postcards. 我每天都想着明信片的事。

★ 重要考点短语：think about，think of，think sth. over，think sth. up

1) think about：表示考虑、审查、计划等是否可行。

e. g. Please think about my advice and tell me your views tomorrow.

2) think of：考虑到，想到，还有打算做或记起、想起等意思。

e. g. He thought of everything except the weather.

3) think sth. over：强调反复思考。

e. g. Please think over what I said.

4) think sth. up：意为"想出、设计出"。

e. g. He thought up a plan to encourage saving.

5. On the last day, I made a big decision. 到了最后一天，我作了个重大的决定。

● on the last day：在最后一天，表示具体某个日子，用"on"。

e. g. on Monday

on Wednesday evening

● make a decision to do sth. 作出决定，通常接不定式 to do sth.

近义表达法有：

take a decision to do sth.
make up one's mind to do sth.
decide to do sth.
be determined to do

e. g. I made a big decision to stay here.

He is determined to immigrate to Canada.

6. I spent the whole day in my room. 我在房间里待了一整天。

● spend 可指花时间，也可指花钱。

常用搭配：

spend time(in) doing sth.
spend money on sth.

www.TopSage.com

e. g. I always spend two hours learning English.

He spent all his money on this car.

★ 近义词辨析：spend，cost，take，pay

1）cost 指花费，开支，常构成 sth. costs sb. money；作名词指价钱、成本、费用、代价。

e. g. The dress cost me ＄100.

He saved the boy from drowning at the cost of his life.

2）take：一般指某事需要或花费某人多长时间来完成。

e. g. The work took us four hours.

It took me a month to finish the book.

3）pay：指付款给某人，可用 pay sb. /pay for sth.；pay sb. sth. 等。

e. g. You must pay for my dinner today.

He paid the shopkeeper ＄200.

语法精析

一、一般过去时

(一)一般过去时的两种用法

用法 1：常表示过去时间所发生的动作或存在的状态，常和过去特定的时间状语连用。

I bought this computer three years ago. 我三年前买了这台电脑。

用法 2：表示过去某一段时间一直持续或反复发生的动作，此时可与表示频度的时间副词连用。

I lived in the country for ten years. 我在农村生活过十年。(我现在不在农村了。)

(二)一般过去时和一般现在时的用法比较

1. 一般过去时表示在过去某个特定时间或某一段时间中发生而现在已经结束的事件、动作或情况，因此过去时和表示过去何时发生的时间状语要用 last summer，last week，four days ago，in 2001 等。

I settled down in Wuhan ten years ago.

He went boating last weekend.

2. 一般过去时还可用于时间、条件、原因等状语从句之中。

She did not attend the meeting because she was ill yesterday.

He would not leave until she came back.

3. 一般过去时与一般现在时意义上的差别。

{ He was a manager.（以前是）
  He is a manager.（现在是）

{ It was so nice to see you.（分别时用）
  It is so nice to see you.（见面时用）

{ That's all I had to say.（话已说完）
  That's all I have to say.（言之未尽）

二、双宾语结构

这类句型主要有两种：

(一)主语＋双宾动词＋名词或代词＋名词

1. 某些动词引起的间接宾语可改为由 to 引起的短语：

She *gave* me a pen (a pen to each of us). 她给我一支钢笔(我们每人一支钢笔)。

大家网 TopSage.com
www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

He *passed* her the bread (the bread to her). 他把在包递给她。

2. 某些动词引起的间接宾语可改为 for 引起的短语：

She was *singing* her child a lullaby(a lullaby for her child). 她正在给孩子唱摇篮曲。

Could you run and *fetch* me a doctor? 你能跑去给我请一个医生吗？

3. 有些动词后的间接宾语不能改为 to 或 for 引起的短语：

He has *played* e a mean trick(a mean trick on me). 他给我开了一个恶劣的玩笑。

She *flung* him a scornful look(a scornful look at him) 她鄙夷地望了他一眼。

(二)主语＋双宾动词＋名词或代词＋从句

1. 这类句子中的从句可以是由 that 引起的：

I'll call Tom and *remind* him that we are going to meet at 7 o'clock tomorrow morning. 我将给汤姆打电话，提醒他我们明早七点钟碰头。

She was able to *assure* herself that nothing had been taken from her purse. 她确信钱包里什么东西都没被拿走。

2. 有些这类从句由连接代词或副词或连词 whether 或 if 引起：

It's impossible to *tell* you who will win the next election. 下届选举谁能获胜还无法告诉你。

Can you *inform* me where our headmasster works? 你可否告诉我我们的校长在哪里工作？

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 4 An exciting trip

本课重点和难点

● 现在完成时的用法

本课词汇

exciting [ik'saitiŋ] *adj.* 令人兴奋的，令人激动的

receive [ri'si:v] *vt.* 1. 收到，接到 2. 遭受，受到 3. 接待，接见

【词组】receive sth. from sb. 接到某人给予的东西；receive sb. with sth. /as sth. 用某物招待客人；be at/on the receiving end (of sth.) 接受不愉快事物

firm [fə:m] *adj.* 1. 坚定的，坚实的 2. 结实的，牢固的 *n.* 公司，商号

【辨析】firm 指牢固而不动摇；steady 指稳定而不动摇。

different ['difrənt] *adj.* 不同的，各种的

centre ['sentə] *n.* 中心，中央

abroad [ə'brɔ:d] *adv.* 1. 到国外，在国外 2. 传开

【词组】at home and abroad 在国内外；be all abroad 茫然不解，离题太远；go abroad 到国外，外出，传开；from abroad 从国外，从海外

课文详解

1. I have just received a letter from my brother, Tim. 我刚刚收到弟弟蒂姆的来信。

● 此句用到了本课的重要语法点——现在完成时。

● my brother, Tim，"Tim"对"my brother"进行解释，补充说明，指的是同一个人。

英语中一个名词(或短语等)与另一个名词(或短语)并列而对其进行补充、说明被称为同位语结构。同位语与它所补充说明的名词(或短语)之间用逗号隔开。

e. g. He has gone to Alice Springs, a small town in the center of Australia. 他去了澳大利亚中部的小镇艾利斯斯普林斯。

Mr. Smith, my neighbour, has immigrated to Canada. 我的邻居史密斯先生移民加拿大了。(my neighbour 是对 Mr. Smith 的解释，说明我与他的关系。)

● receive a letter from sb. 收到某人的来信

常用的说法还有：

get a letter from sb.
have a letter from sb.
hear from sb.

★ 近义词辨析：receive, accept, take

1) receive：只表示被动地接到或收到某东西，不涉及是否接受。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

e.g. Mary received a bunch of roses today.

2) accept：表示经过慎重考虑之后接受某人的东西、好意、批评等。

e.g. She asked me to go to the party and I accepted her invitation.

3) take：作为接受讲，相当于强调言出必行；另外，还有把某人、某物从说话人所在地拿走、带走之意。

e.g. Do you take this man to be your lawful wedded husband?

I take an umbrella with me every day.

2. He is working for a big firm. 他在一家大公司工作。

● work for 指"在……上班/任职"。

e.g. My father works for a business company.

表达"上班"还可用 work at/in。

e.g. Tony worked in a lawyer's office last year, but now he is working at a bank.

托尼去年在一家律师事务所工作，但现在他在一家银行上班。

3. And he has already visited a great number of different places in Australia. 他已经去过澳大利亚的不少地方了。

● a number of＋可数名词的复数，number 前一般可用 large, great, small, certain 等形容词来强调其数量的大小。

e.g. A large number of people are learning English in New Oritental School.

There are a small number of mistakes in your homework.

与可数名词连用表数量较多的还有：a great many, quite a few, many a(许多), a lot of, lots of 等。

4. He will soon visit Darwin, from there, he will fly to Perth. 他不久还将到达尔文去，从那里，他再飞往珀斯。

● will 表示将要发生的事，是一般将来时的结构，助动词，将在第 12 课详细讲解。

5. So he is finding this trip very exciting. 因此他觉得这次旅行非常激动人心。

●find 作"发觉、发现"讲时，宾语后常带补足语(一般是形容词、介词短语和名词等)，用于说明宾语的状况等。

e.g. She found herself lying in hospital when she woke up.

I found Tom's room very dirty.

语法精析

现在完成时的用法

结构为：have/has＋过去分词

用法如下：

1. 表示过去所发生的动作对现在的影响或产生的结果。常与表示时间的副词连用，如 yet, just, before, recently, lately, ever, never 等。

We have just won the match.

I have never been to Australia before.

2. 表示从过去开始延续到现在的动作或状态，常与表示一段时间的时间状语连用，如 so far, up till now/up to present, since, for a long time, in the past few years, these days 等。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

So far, he has broken two world records.

I have worked here for four years.

3. **短暂性动词在现在完成时中不能与表示一段时间的状语连用，常见的动词有：die, arrive, leave, go, refuse, finish, marry, buy 等。**

His grandfather has died for three years. (×)

His grandfather has been dead for three years. (√)

I have bought the car for half a year. (×)

I have got the car for half a year. (√)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 5 No wrong numbers

本课重点和难点

● 现在完成时与一般过去时的区别

本课词汇

pigeon ['pidʒin] *n.* 鸽子

【词组】carrier pigeon(=homing pigeon) 通信鸽,传信鸽

message ['mesidʒ] *n.* 通信,消息,音信

【词组】give sb. a message 给某人捎个口信;a New Year message 新年贺卡

cover ['kʌvə] *vt.* 走完,行过(路程)

【词组】be covered with... 被……覆盖

distance ['distəns] *n.* 距离,间距

【词组】at a distance 有些距离;in the distance 在远处;keep sb. at a distance 疏远某人

request [ri'kwest] *v.* 要求 *n.* 请求

【词组】request from 向……请求;request of sb. 要求于某人;at the request of 根据……的请求;by request 应……请求;in request 有需求;on request 按要求

spare part [ˌspεə-'pɑːt] *n.* 条件

service ['səːvis] *n.* 业务,[*pl.*]公用设施

【词组】as occasion service 一有机会;serve on 担任;serve sb. right (某人)活该

课文详解

1. **Pinhurst is only five miles from Silbury, but Mr. Scott can not get a telephone for his new garage, so he has just bought twelve pigeons. Yesterday, a pigeon carried the first message from Pinhurst to Silbury. 平赫斯特离锡尔伯里只有5公里,但斯科特先生未能为他新的汽车修理部搞到一部电话机,所以他买了12只鸽子。昨天,一只鸽子把第一封信从平赫斯特带到了锡尔伯里。**

● 前一句话由三个部分组成。but引导的句子与前面的句子为并列关系,so引导的部分强调现在的结果,因此用现在完成时。而第二句话强调昨天发生了一件事,所以用一般过去时。

2. **The bird covered the distance in three minutes. 这只鸟只用了三分钟就完成了全程。**

● in three minutes:介词in在这里表示用多长时间或多长时间之内做完了某事。

e.g. He ran 100 meters in eleven secnds.

I finished this book in three months.

3. **Up to now, Mr. Scott has sent a great many requests for spare parts and other urgent messages from one garage to the other. 到目前为止,斯科特先生从一个汽车修理部向另外一个发送了大量索取备件的信件和其他紧急函件。**

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

● a great many：大量的、许多的，类似于我们第 4 课学的 a large number of。

e. g. A great many young people are learning English in New Oriental School.

★ 近义词、形近词辨析：request，require，acquire，inquire，plea，appeal（黄金考点）

1) request：指有礼貌或客气地要求、请求，常用 for 来补充、说明，正式用语，不用于亲人之间。

e. g. He turned a deaf ear to my request.

She made a request for help.

2) require：指权利、义务或已规定的条款提出需达到的要求，但语气较缓和，常用 require sb. to do sth. 或 require sth. for sb.

e. g. The border police required the traveler to unlock his luggage.

I'm willing to do whatever my country requires of me.

3) acquire：指通过自己的努力而逐渐地获得智力、才能等。

e. g. They have aquired many skills in these few years.

He acquired some knowledge of English by hard study.

4) inquire：指深入打听某事，询问某事的确切消息或情况，正式用语。

e. g. Did you inquire about the trains to London?

I inquired of him what he wanted.

5) plea：多指急切或庄重的恳求或呼吁，与介词 for 连用，正式用语。

e. g. She wouldn't listen to his plea for forgiveness.

Their plea for aid went unanswered.

6) appeal：指情感强烈的呼吁，以求获得帮助、支持或怜悯等。

e. g. The judge rejected the prisoner's appeal for a new trial.

The President made an appeal to the country for calm during the crisis.

● another 与 other

1) another：

A. 常用于可数名词，指“再一，另一”。

e. g. Tony wants another apple.

This glass is broken. Get me another.

B. 可用于数量词修饰的复数名词前。

e. g. He will have to stay in hospital for another two weeks.

I need another five dollars.

C. 常与 another 搭配的短语有：

one after another 相继的

one another 相互

2) other：

A. 既可用于修饰可数名词，也可用于修饰不可数名词，表示其余的、其他的。

e. g. The bread seems stale, is there any other?

I prefer coffee to other drinks.

B. 与数词连用时的语序。

e. g. Give me two other books. (不能说 other two books)给我两本别的书。

Give me the two other books(＝the other two books) 给我其他两本书。

C. some，any，no，every 与 other 连用时，若是接可数名词，则一般用单数。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

e. g. He told me to come some other time.

No other book has had a greater influence on my life.

Please write on every other line.

D. 常与 other 搭配使用的短语有：

one...the other...（两个中）一个……另一个

the others＝the other＋名词复数，指已提到过的其余部分。

other than 除……以外

none other than 不是别人，正是

eahc other 相互（有时可与 one anther 替换）

e. g. There was nothing you could do other than wait.

The man was none other than our general manager.

4. In this way, he has begun his own private telephone service. 就这样，他开始了自己的私人电话业务。

● 介词与 way 构成的常用短语：

1) in this way：用这种方法（指前面所提到的事）

e. g. He saves old envelopes. In this way, he has collected a great many stamps.

2) in the way：挡路；后接定语从句，表示用……的方法。

e. g. Please move the chair. It is in the way.

Cook this in the way I have shown you.

3) in a way：在某种意义上

e. g. In a way, he is very successful.

4) on the way：在去……路上

e. g. I met an old friend on the way to school.

5) by the way：顺便说一声

e. g. By the way, where is my coat?

语法精析

现在完成时与一般过去时的区别

1. 意义上的区别

两种时态的动作都发生在过去，现在完成时强调动作对现在的影响或结果；过去时则着眼过去的动作或本身状态。

I have seen the film.（说明我了解电影的内容）
I saw a film yesterday.（叙述昨天做了什么，与现在无关）

She has taught English for ten years.（说明她现在是位有经验的教师）
She taught English for ten years.（叙述她的经历，与现在她做什么无联系）

2. 时间状语的区别

与过去时连用的时间状语通常为：two days ago, last week, yesterday 等时间，而与现在完成时连用的时间状语则为：since＋时间，for＋时间，so far, up till now 等。

He died ten days ago.
He has been dead for ten days.

She has gone abroad. She left last week.
We haven't met each other since she left last week.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

3. 特殊句型

(1)在"This/It is the first time＋句子"后面只能用现在完成时。

This is the first time I have traveled by air.

(2) 在"It is/has been a long time since＋句子",后面常用一般过去时。

It has been a long time since we parted.

(3)在"It/This is＋最高级形容词＋名词＋从句",从句中只能用现在完成时。

He is the most interesting person I have ever met.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 6 Percy Buttons

本课重点和难点

- 冠词
- 物质名词的数

本课词汇

beggar ['begə] *n.* 乞丐，穷人
food [fuːd] *n.* 食物，食品
pocket ['pɔkit] *n.* 衣袋，小袋 *adj.* 袖珍的，小袋的 *vt.* 把……装入袋内
【词组】be in(out of)pocket 赚(赔)钱
call at 访问，拜访

课文详解

1. I have just moved to a house in Bridge Street. 我刚刚搬进了大桥街的一所房子。

● move：作移动、挪动为及物动词，但在此处为搬家之意，作不及物动词。

常用词组：
- move to somewhere 搬入
- move into somewhere 搬进
- move out of somewhere 搬出
- move away 搬走
- move in 搬进来了

2. Yesterday, a begger knocked at my door. 昨天一个乞丐来敲我的门。

● knock：敲击，碰撞，打

常用搭配如下：

1）knock at/on sth. 敲某东西
knock sb. down 击倒在地，打倒
e. g. He was knocked down by a car.

2）knock off(work) 下班，停工
e. g. It's time to knock off for tea.

3）knock sth. off sth. 打折，撞掉
e. g. The shop keeper knocks 20% off the bill.
The boy knocked my pencil-box off the desk.

4）knock sb. /sth. out 打晕，淘汰，出局
e. g. He was knocked out of the game.

5）knock sb. /sth. over：撞翻，撞碎
e. g. He knocked over the tea pot and it is broken now.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

3. He asked me for a meal and a glass of beer. 他向我要一顿饭和一杯啤酒。

● ask sb. for sth. 向某人要求某物

e. g. He asked me for a lift.

ask sb. sth. 向某人问题

e. g. The boy asked me a strange question.

ask sb. about sth. 打听，询问

e. g. We must ask him about it.

4. In return for this, the beggar stood on his head and sang songs. 作为回报，乞丐头顶地倒立起来，嘴里还唱着歌。

● in return(for sth.)：作为报答，相当于 as reward

e. g. He gave me a book in return for my help.

●stand on one's head 倒立，类似的词组有：

stand on one's knees 跪下

lie on one's back 仰卧

lie on one's side 侧卧

lie on one's stomach 趴下

5. Everybody knows him. 大家都认识他。

● everybody 是不定代词，谓语动词常用第三人称单数，类似的单词还有：everything, nothing, anything, something, somebody, nobody, anybody, etc.

e. g. Everything is all right.

Nobody knows me here.

6. He called at every house in the street once a month and always asks for a meal and a glass of beer. 他每月对这条街上的住户光顾一次，总是请求给他一顿饭和一杯啤酒。

● call 表示光顾，拜访，叫唤，打电话等意思。

★ 黄金考点词组：

1) call at somewhere：光顾某地

e. g. The train calls at the large stations only.

He called at the post office on the way home.

2) call on sb.：拜访某人

e. g. Mary calls on her grandmother every Sunday.

3) call sb./sth. up：打电话给某人；唤起记忆，使回忆起

e. g. The trip to the village called up scenes of my childhood.

I will call you up this evening.

4) call for sth.：需要，要求

e. g. The occasion calls for prompt action.

The task called for great care and patience.

5) call sth. in：下令收回

e. g. The librarian has called in all books.

The government called in gold coins.

6) call of：取消

e. g. Because of the bad weather, they decided to call off the sport meeting.

●once a month 每月一次，这是一个表示频率的时间状语。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

通常用 How often...? 提问，还可以说：

twice a week 一周两次

three times a week 一周三次

语法精析

一、冠词

(一)不定冠词 a, an 的位置

不定冠词 a 用在以辅音音素(并非辅音字母)开头的名词前；不定冠词 an 用在以元音音素开头的名词前。例如：

a boy 一个男孩　　a student 一个学生

an hour 一小时　　an honor 一个荣誉

an 还用在发音以元音开头的单个字母前面。例如：an SOS sign。

An L letter is in the word "letter". 在单词"信"中有一个字母"L"。

(二)名词与冠词使用的重要技巧

从名词角度来看，冠词的使用以下几条是核心：

1. 单数可数名词：单数可数名词不能单独使用，必须与冠词或其他限定词连用。

2. 复数名词和不可数名词：对于复数名词和不可数名词，不能与不定冠词 a(n)连用。

The writer is writing a book about the life of blacks in America.

(特指)这位作家正在写一本关于美国黑人生活的书。

(三)冠词的用法

1. 第一次提到的单数可数名词前用不定冠词 a 或 an，这一名词再次出现时则要用定冠词 the。

I had a banana and an apple. I ate the banana and gave the apple to Clint.

我有一根香蕉和一个苹果。我吃了那根香蕉，把苹果给了克林特。

2. 在谈到说话人和听话人双方都知道的事物时，要用 the。若在自己家的房间里，要说：the light, the floor, the door, the window, the carpet 等。

Shut the door, please!（听话的人知道指的是哪扇门，比如卧室的门。）

3. 表示世界上独一无二的事物，如：the earth, the sky, the equator, the moon, the world, the universe 等。

4. 形容词或副词最高级、序数词以及 only 用作形容词加名词连用时，它们前面一般要用 the，如：

the only/best way to cope with the problem 唯一的/最好的解决这问题的方法

5. 在乐器、乐团、合唱团及流行音乐团体前加 the，如：

the Beatles 甲壳虫乐队

注意：运动项目前不用 the，如：play chess。

(四)何时不用冠词

1. 表示独一无二的身份前一般不用冠词，如：

Elizabeth Ⅱ, Queen of England 英国女王伊丽莎白二世

2. 表示球类、棋类运动项目时不加冠词，如：

play football/chess/tennis 玩足球/象棋/网球

3. 下列这些限定词彼此排斥，不能同时出现在名词前面：

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(1) 冠词：the，an，a

(2) 物主形容词：my，your，his，her，our，their

(3) 指示形容词：this，that，these，those

(4) 名词属格：Tom's，John's

4. the 在一些特殊的名词前省略：

(1) nature：泛指自然界(动、植物及无生命物质的世界)。例如：in nature

(2) society：泛指我们在其中生活的这个社会，一般不用冠词。例如：in society

(3) space：泛指星球之间的空间，不用冠词。例如：in space

(4) man：泛指整个人类时，不用冠词。例如：Man can conquer nature. 人定胜天。

(5) history：泛指人类整个历史时，不用冠词。例如：History may repeat itself. 历史将重演。

5. 在一日三餐名词前不用冠词，如：

have something for breakfast/lunch/supper/dinner 吃些东西做早饭/午饭/晚饭

invite somebody to dinner 邀请某人吃晚餐

若在三餐名词前有形容词时，则一般加不定冠词。

6. 交通工具名词前不用冠词，如：

by bicycle/boat/bus/car/plane/train/metro(subway，tube)

但若用介词 on，则需用冠词。on the train/plane/boat（特别注意：on foot 步行，不加冠词。）

7. 在一些固定介词搭配中不用冠词：

face to face，arm in arm，hand in hand，shoulder to shoulder，side by side，inch by inch，day after day，dentist after dentist

二、物质名词的数

物质名词通常不可数：

液体：beer，blood，coffee，cream，gasoline，honey，juice，milk，oil，tea，water，wine，etc.

固体：bread，butter，cheese，ice，ice-cream，meat，beef(牛肉)，chicken(鸡肉)，fish(鱼肉)；chalk，copper，cotton，glass，gold，iron，paper，etc.

气体：air，fog，oxygen，smoke，etc.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 7 Too late

本课重点和难点

- 过去进行时的用法

本课词汇

detective [di'tektiv] *n.* 侦探

airport ['ɛəpɔːt] *n.* 机场，航空站，航空港

expect [ik'spekt] *v.* 1. 预期 2. 期望，指望

【用法】expect 期待，预料：指某人有一定根据，坚信某种事情必定要发生。

valuable ['væljuəbl] *adj.* 贵重的，有价值的

parcel ['pɑːsl] *n.* 小包，包装

【词组】part and parcel 主要部分；必要部分

【用法】parcel 包裹，小包：指把一件或几件东西整齐地包扎在一起以便携带。

diamond ['daiəmənd] *n.* 1. 金刚石，钻石 2. 菱形

【词组】a rough diamond 心地善良但缺乏教养、粗俗的人；diamond wedding 钻石婚（结婚 60 周年纪念）

steal [stiːl] *v.* 1. 偷，窃取 2. 偷偷去做，巧取

【用法】steal＋被偷物＋from ＋人或地方，如：He stole money from her. 而 rob＋人或地方＋of ＋被抢物。如：He robbed her of her money.

main [mein] *adj.* 主要的，总的 *n.* 1. 总管道 2. 干线

airfield ['ɛəfiːld] *n.* 机场

guard [gɑːd] *v.* 保守，保卫，提防 *n.* 1. 警卫，哨兵 2. 守卫，保卫

【词组】on guard 警惕，防范

【用法】guard 看守，保卫：指小心看护某人或某物，不让危险发生，使其确保安全。

precious ['preʃəs] *adj.* 珍贵的，贵重的

stone [stəun] *n.* 石，石料

【用法】stone 宝石，钻石：指稀少和值钱的矿物。

sand [sænd] *n.* 1. 沙 2. 沙滩，沙地

【词组】on the sand 在沙滩上

课文详解

1. too late 为时太晚

- too：太，也之意，常构成："too…to…"的短语，表示："太……而不能"。

e.g. Never too old to learn. 活到老，学到老。

Never too late to mend. 改过永远不会晚。

2. …detectives were waiting at the airport all morning. 侦探们在机场等了整整一上午。

- were waiting 是过去进行时态，其结构为：

was/were＋现在分词，表示过去某一时刻或阶段正在发生的动作，常与时间状语从句

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

或过去的某个时间连用，比如：at 8：00 yesterday evening，this morning，etc.。

e. g. He was watching TV at 8：00 yesterday evening.

She was working in the lab all morning.

3. When the plane arrived, some of the detectives were waiting inside the main building while others were waiting on the airfield. 当飞机到达时，一些侦探等候在主楼内，另一些侦探则守候在停机坪上。

● some…others… 表示"一些人……另外一些人……"

e. g. Some people are dancing in the park, others are taking a walk.

Some of the films are interesting, others are not.

● 此句由三个大部分组成，when 引导整个句子的时间状语从句，some of…building 为主句，while 引导的动作是与主句的动作同时进行的时间状语从句。而与过去进行时搭配的时间状语连接词常见的有：when，while，as，just as 等。

1）when 通常既可以引导短暂性的动作，也可以引导延续性的动作。

2）while 一般只能引导延续性动作，而且主句和从句可以同时用过去进行时，但 when 和 as 一般不这么用。

3）as 也引导延续性动作，但持续时间没有 while 那么长。

e. g. When/While/As we were having a party, the light went out.

John was watching TV while his wife was cooking.

I was having dinner when the telephone rang.

The postman arrived just as I was leaving.

4）当表示过去两个动作同时发生，都持续较短时，我们常用 as 或 when。

e. g. When/As I left the house, I remembered the key.

When/As Andy Liu passed, we cheered.

4. Two men took the parcel off the plane and carried it into the Customs House. 有两个人把包裹拿下了飞机，进了海关。

● take 取下，拿下，带领。所以 take sth. off sth. 是"把……从……取下"。

e. g. take the book off the shelf.

但是很多动词加上介词或副词构成短语之后，词义便会改变，判断一个动词后接的是介词还是副词，关键看宾语的位置。有宾语的是介词，无宾语的是副词，对比如下：

take off my coat（√）	look for my coat（√）
take my coat off（√）	look my coat for（×）
take off it（×）	look for it（√）
take it off（√）	look it for（×）

由此可见：

vt. + *adv.* + *n.* 或 *vt.* + *n.* / *pron.* + *adv.*

vi. + *prep.* + *n.* / *pron.*

e. g. He put out the fire. → He put the fire/it out.

He gave all his books away. → He gave all his books/them away.

I'm looking at the picture/it.

5. While two detectives were keeping guard at the door, two others opened the parcel. 这时两个侦探把住门口，另外两个侦探打开了包裹。

● keep guard 守卫，守望，站岗，相当于 stand guard。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

e.g. Two thieves kept guard around the house while the others entered it.

● at the door 在门口。at 常指在某地方附近。

e.g. Someone is at the door.

6. to their surprise. 令他们吃惊的是.

● 这个短语中的所有格 their 可用其他人称来替代，名词也可以换成其他表示反应或情态的名词。

(much) to one's surprise/joy/disappointment/sadness, etc.

使某人(大为)吃惊/高兴/失望/难过的是……

语法精析

过去进行时的用法

用法 1:

用来描述一个过去特定的时刻正在发生的事情。

I was discussing my thesis with my director at this time last night.(特定时刻)

用法 2:

过去进行时还常常和一般过去时配合使用。此时，过去进行时通常表示一个历时较长的体现"背景"的动作或状态；而一般过去时则表示此"背景"下发生的、短暂的动作或状态。过去进行时动作先发生，一般过去时动作后发生。

I cut my finger when I was cooking the dinner last night. 昨晚做饭时我割到了手指。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 8 The best and the worst

本课重点和难点

- 形容词和副词的比较级和最高级
- 表示时间的介词 at, in, on, during
- 不定代词

本课词汇

best [best] *adj.* 最好的 *adv.* 最好地

【词组】best of all 最喜欢; at the best 充其量，至多; at one's best 兴盛到极点; make the best of 尽量利用

worst [wəːst] *adj.* /*adv.* 最坏的（地），最差的（地）

competition [ˌkɔmpiˈtiʃən] *n.* 1. 竞争 2. 比赛

neat [niːt] *adj.* 整洁的，整齐的，简洁的

path [pɑːθ] *n.* 1. 小路，小径 2. 路线，路途，途径

【辨析】path, way, road, lane 这几个词都有"路"的意思。path 通常指田野、林间被人或动物踩成的小路；way 是"道路"最普通的和最常用的用语，可引申为"方式"，如：I'll do the experiment in a new way. 我将用一种新的方法做这项实验。road 常常指通车辆的广阔平坦的大路，还可作比喻用，如：There is no royal road to science. 在科学上是没有平坦的大路可走的。lane 通常指小巷、胡同、弄堂。

wooden [ˈwuːdən] *adj.* 1. 木制的 2. 木头似的，呆笨的

pool [puːl] *n.* 1. 水池 2. （池塘等的）一滩，一片 3. 共用物，共用人员 *vt.* 把……集中在一起，共用

课文详解

1. Nearly everybody enters for "the Nicest Garden Competition" each year. 几乎每个人都参加每年举办的"最佳花园竞赛"。

● nearly 和 almost 都有"几乎"、"差不多"的意思，在肯定句中可以相互替换，与否定词连用时通常用 almost。

e. g. He nearly/almost fell into the river.

Almost no one believed her.

● enter for sth. : 报名参加（活动、比赛等）

enter＋地点：进入，走进

e. g. Mary entered for the test.

A stranger entered the building ten minutes ago.

2. but Joe wins every time. 但是乔每次都赢。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

● win：赢，获胜，一般不接人，对应的反义词为 lose，我们常用 beat sb. 或 defeat sb. 表示打败某人。

e. g. win the race/match/a battle/a prize, etc.

He always beats me at chess.

★ 近义词辨析：win, obtain, gain, earn, acquire

1) win：着重指经过努力或占有优势而得到，可与 gain 换用。

e. g. By her hard work she won a place for herself.

He won a Lady's hand in marriage.

The teacher quickly won/gained experience.

2) obtain：指力争得到自己所渴望的东西或达到如意的目的，比 get 正式。

e. g. He obtained a large sum of money by buying and selling houses.

3) earn：指通过自身的劳动而获得报酬或因自身功劳而得到荣誉、赞赏等。

e. g. She earned reputation for honesty.

He earns his living by playing the piano.

4) acquire：指通过努力而逐渐获得智力、才能等。

e. g. They have acquired many skills in these few years.

3. He has made neat paths and built a wooden bridge over a pool. 他修筑了一条条整洁的小路，并在一个水池上架了一座小木桥。

● built a wooden bridge 中的 wooden 表材料。类似的有 woolen（羊毛的），plastic（塑料的），silk（丝绸的），metal（金属的）等。

e. g. a pair of woolen trousers/a silk scarf

● over 作介词，在……上方，有腾空之意，不接触。

e. g. fly over the mountain/cook a meal over the open fire

语法精析

一、形容词和副词的比较级和最高级

（一）单音节词和少数双音节词在词尾加-er，-est

hard—harder—hardest　small—smaller—smallest

（二）以-e 结尾的单音节词直接加-r 和-st

large—larger—largest

（三）以辅音字母＋-y 结尾的双音节词要改-y 为-i；再加-er 和-est

busy—busier—busiest　heavy—heavier—heaviest

（四）本身重读闭音节的单音节词要双写最后一个辅音字母，然后再加-er 和-est

big—bigger—biggest　thin—thinner—thinnest

（五）少数双音节词及多音节词通常在前面加 more 和 most 构成比较级和最高级

beautiful—more beautiful—most beautiful

interesting—more interesting—most interesting

（六）一些不规则形容词的比较级和最高级

good/well—better—best　bad/ill—worse—worst

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

many/much—more—most　　little—less—least

far—farther/further—farthest/furthest

(七) 在比较级中，如果把所比较的两项都提到，比较级后需用介词 than

Bill works harder than Joe.

He has more books than I (me).

(八) 最高级限定范围一般用 of, among, in 等介词短语

He is the tallest of the three boys.

She has the most beautiful garden in our town.

二、表示时间的介词 at, in, on, during

(一) at (主要表示时间点)

1. 用来表示在特定的某一时刻。例如：

at nine a. m. 在九点钟，at nine after ten 在十点零九分

2. 用来表示不确定的某一时刻。例如：

at Easter 在复活节期间

3. 用来表示年龄段。例如：

at the age of eight/at eight 在 8 岁时

(二) in(主要表示时间段)

1. 一般指在相对较长的一段时间内。例如：

① in the morning/afternoon/evening

② in spring/summer/autumn/winter

③ a man in his thirties 一个三十几岁的男子

2. in 还可表示"在……时间之内/之后"，通常用于将来时态中。例如：

He said he would come back in a month. 他说他将在一个月内回来。

3. in＋动名词：in doing sth.

这一用法的意思相当于：during the course of doing sth.，即"在做……过程当中"，例如：

In working, we can learn a lot. 在工作中，我们可以学到很多。

(三) on(主要表示具体的某一天)

1. 表示具体的日期和星期。例如：

① on Monday

② on my birthday

2. 表示特定某一天的上午、下午、凌晨或半夜等。例如：

on the night/morning/afternoon of December 31, 1999

3. 表示"在第几天"。例如：

on his first day to school 去学校的第一天

4. on＋动名词或名词：on doing sth.

这一用法的意思相当于：when somebody does sth. or as soon as somebody does，即"在做……的时候"或"一……就……"。

(四) during(主要表示"在……期间内"，强调在什么时间过程中发生了什么事)

表示事件发生的过程，不表示在此过程中事件发生的起止时间。for 则表示这件事延续时间的长短，指出了事件发生的开始时间。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

My father was in hospital for six weeks during the summer.

夏天，我父亲住了六个星期的医院。

during 可接表示事件延续一段时间的名词，如 stay, visit, travel 等；for 一般不能这样用。如：

during his childhood 在童年

三、不定代词

(一)both 的用法

both 意为"两者都"，指两个人或物，句中谓语动词用复数。both 可用作主语、宾语、定语和同位语。

考题：If you can't decide which of the two books to borrow, why don't you take ________? I won't read them this week.

A. all　　B. any　　C. either　　D. both

答案解析：D。与句子中的"two books"对应，应使用 both。

(二)each 和 every 的用法

each 和 every 都有"每一个，每个"的意思，可以表示人或物，但有一些区别。①each 是把人或物一个个地加以考虑，强调个别情况；every 则强调整体或共同性，相当于汉语的"每个都，人人都"。②each 可以作名词或形容词，在句中充当主语、定语、宾语、同位语等，而 every 只能作定语。each 和 every 的共同特点是：二者都只能修饰单数可数名词，句中谓语动词要用单数。

(三)all 的用法

all 意为"全体，所有，一切，所有的"，既是名词，也是形容词，在句中作主语、宾语、定语、状语或同位语。all 可以指人，也可以指物或情况。指人时表示两个以上的人，如果作主语，谓语动词要用复数。指事物或情况时，表示"所有，一切"，作主语时，谓语动词用单数。all 作定语时，可以修饰可数名词，也可以修饰不可数名词。

(四)either 和 neither 的用法

either 指"两个人或物中的任何一个"，表示肯定意义。neither 指"两个人或物中一个也不，哪一个都不"，表示否定意义。either 和 neither 在句中可作主语、宾语、定语。作主语时，谓语动词要用单数。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 9 A cold welcome

本课重点和难点

- 介词的用法
- 时间的表达方法

本课词汇

welcome [ˈwelkəm] *vt./n./int.* 欢迎 *adj.* 受欢迎的

【词组】welcome back 欢迎……回来；welcome to 欢迎到(某地)；welcome with 以……欢迎；You are welcome. 不用谢，别客气。

crowd [kraud] *n.* 1. 人群 2. 一群，一伙 *v.* 1. 聚集，群集 2. 拥挤，挤满

【词组】a crowd of 相当于 crowds of 许多(人或物)；be crowded with 挤满，充满；follow/move with the crowd 随大流

【辨析】crowd 指集(合)在一个地方的一群人；throng 指一起向前挤的一群人(或一大批人)；mob 指一群暴徒，指有破坏性或用暴力的一群人。

a large crowd of people 一大群人

gather [ˈgæðə] *vi.* 聚集，聚拢 *vt.* 1. 收集，采集 2. 逐渐增加 3. 猜想，猜测

hand [hænd] *n.* 1. 手，人手，雇员，劳力 2. 指针 *vt.* 提交，递，给

【词组】at hand 在手边，在附近，即将到来；by hand 用手；hand down 留下来，传给，往下传；hand in 交上，递交；hand in hand 手拉手，携手，联合；hand out 分发；hand over 交出，移交，让与；in hand 在控制中；on one hand...，on the other(hand) 一方面……另一方面……；out of hand 无法控制，不可收拾

shout [ʃaut] *v./n.* 呼喊，呼叫

【词组】shout at 冲着……大嚷；shout to 朝……大声喊话

【辨析】shout 叫喊：指表示喜悦、惊奇或赞扬时所发出的叫喊。其语意比 scream 强，通常表示苦恼、突然的恐怖等。

refuse [riˈfjuːz] *v.* 拒绝，谢绝

【用法】refuse 拒绝，不愿：语气较强，指既坚决又果断地回绝他人的要求(如金钱、物品等)。有时指不愿干某事。

at that moment 那时

laugh [lɑːf] *v.* 笑，讥笑 *n.* 笑，笑声

【辨析】smile 微笑，指由于高兴、愉快而在面部流露表情而发出声音的微笑，多指好意，表示亲切、愉快，但有时也指恶意的讥笑；laugh 是出声的大笑，不仅有面部表情，而且有动作和声音，以示高兴、快乐，也可以表示轻蔑；grin 指“露齿而笑”表示有兴趣、满意的笑，也指鄙视的笑；sneer 为冷笑。

课文详解

1. A cold welcome 冷遇

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

cold 冷的，寒冷的，冷淡的→warm 温暖的，热情的

e.g. give sb. a warm welcome 热情的欢迎某人

My brother is a cold fish. 我哥哥是个冷漠的人。

2. On Wednesday evening,... 在周三晚上

需要注意的是类似 in the morning/afternoon 的短语，只要 morning/afternoon 前面有形容词修饰，介词必须改为 on，例如 on fine afternoons。

3. ...we went to the Town Hall. 我们去了市政厅。

Town Hall 或者 City Council(市政厅)的概念和中国的政府机关完全不一样，西方人不但要在市政厅交纳超速罚款、进行公益游行登记，就连登记结婚这样的事情也要在那里进行。在 Town Hall 进行的婚礼一般被称为 civil wedding(平民/公证婚礼)，而在教堂举办的 church wedding 不用多说就是教堂婚礼了。2005 年，贵为英国王储的 Prince Charles 与其心上人 Camilla 像普遍老百姓一样在 Windsor Town Hall(温莎市政厅)举行了一场 civil wedding，这可以算做是英国王室传统上的第一次了。

4. ...a large crowd of people had gathered... 一大群人聚集在市政厅的大钟下面……

★ 四级词汇辨析：gather，accumulate，assemble，collect

1) gather：指人自发或有意地集合在一起，也指把分散的东西聚集起来。

2) accumulate：指经成年累月，长时间的积累。

e.g. accumulate great wealth by hard work

3) assemble：指为一定的目的，把零散的东西或人收集或集合在一起。

e.g. Assemble your papers and put them in this file.

4) collect：强调收集。e.g. collect stamps.

● a large crowd of 一大群(较拥挤)

crowds of 成群的→crowded *adj.* 拥挤的

5. It would strike twelve in twenty minutes' time. 再过 20 分钟，大钟将敲响 12 下。

★ 四级词汇辨析：strike，hit，beat，knock，crack

这些动词均含有“敲、打”之意：

1) knock 和其他四个单词在用法上有着本质的区别，knock 是个不及物动词，往往和介词搭配使用，如：knock at/on the door。

2) beat 通常指反复地、连续地敲打，如 My heart beat fast with joy.

3) hit 则指有目标地击中某人或物，侧重“打中、击中”，如：Hit the ball.

4) strike 强调急速地、用力地敲打(用手、拳头或其他器物突然用力猛打一下)。如：strike the clock 敲钟/clock strike 钟自己响；Strike while the iron is hot. 趁热打铁。

5) crack 指突然的重击，往往暗示伴有响声。如 The boy fell and cracked his head against the wall.

● in twenty minutes' time 20 分钟之后

in 表示在一段时间以后，minutes' 名词所有格。

in twenty(minutes' time)名词所有格用来表达时间可省略。

e.g. an hour's time

6. We waited and waited, but nothing happened. 我们等啊等啊，可是情况没有变化。

● waited and waited 等啊等，强调动作的重复。

e.g. walked and walked 走啊走

run and run 跑啊跑

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

● happen *vi.* 事情发生，主语是物。

e. g. What happened to you?

7. ...and then, at five to twelve, the clock stopped. 接着，11 点 55 分，钟停了。

介词短语 at five to twelve 在此句中充当了插入语的成分。插入语是一种独立成分，与句子中的其他成分一般没有语法上的关系，大都是对一句话作一些附加说明或解释。它可以是一个词、一个短语或一个句子，位置也相对灵活，可置于句首、句中或句末，一般用逗号或破折号与句子隔开。

插入语能够使作者更加灵活地表达自己的意思，但是插入语过长或是过多却反而容易使读者找不到阅读的重点。因此在读句子时，先不要理会插入语，先把主句的意思看完，然后再看插人部分。

8. The big clock refused to welcome the New Year. 那座大钟不愿意迎接新年。

● refuse to do sth. 拒绝去做某事

e. g. I refuse to leave. 我拒绝离开。

I refuse to move. 我拒绝移动。

9. At that moment, everybody began to laugh and sing. 就在那时候，大家开始有唱有笑的。

● 人们聚在大钟底下，一起倒数计时，这被称之为 New Year's Countdown. 西方人还有一个习俗，那就是当大钟在 12 点钟敲响时，人们便相互拥抱和亲吻，并互道"新年快乐！"虽然除夕之夜伴随着香槟、礼花、狂欢，但当新年第一天来临的时候，人们一定会制定新年的计划。这些计划往往与身体健康有关联，如戒烟、戒酒、多锻炼、减肥等。也有一些人在如何提高生活品质上做计划，如花更多的时间与家人在一起，多学点新东西，或把债还掉。只是不知道有多少人会将新年决心进行到底呢？

●at that moment; just then 就在那时(at 表时刻)

at the moment; now 现在，此刻，在此时

语法精析

一、复习表示时间的介词 at, in, on, during (参见 Lesson 8)

二、时间表达方式归纳

英语中时间的表达方式主要有直接法和借用介词法等。

1. 直接法。

上午 8 点 eight AM (a. m.)

下午 9 点 nine PM (p. m.)

6 点 6 分 six six

6 点 32 分 six thirty two

2. 借用介词法。

8 点 45 分 a quarter to nine

7 点零 5 分 five past seven

7 点 54 分 six to eight

6 点半 half past six

3. 表示整点的用法。

11 点整 at 11 o'clock sharp/all 11 o'clock on the hour/at 11 o'olock on the strike

正午 12 点 at noon

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

午夜 12 点 at midnight

13 点 thirteen hundred hours

22 点 twenty-two hundred hours

注：12 点 22 分可读作：twelve twenty-two；twenty-two past twelve（英式说法）；twenty-two after twelve（美式说法）

1 点 15 分可读作：one fifteen；a quarter past one（英式说法）；a quarter after one（美英说法）

8 点 50 分可读作：eight fifty；ten to nine（英式说法）；ten before nine（美式说法）

1 点 40 分可读作：one forty；twenty to two（英式说法）；twenty before two（美式说法）

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 10 Not for jazz

本课重点和难点

- 被动语态
- 名词的属格

本课词汇

jazz [dʒæz] *n.* 爵士音乐

musical ['mjuːzikəl] *adj.* 1. 音乐的 2. 悦耳的 3. 有音乐才能的，喜欢音乐的 *n.* 1. 音乐片 2. 音乐喜剧

instrument ['instrumənt] *n.* 1. 仪器，器械，工具 2. 乐器

【用法】instrument 器具，工具：指从事科学、医疗、音乐等工作所需要的比较精密的器具，也用于比喻用以达到某种目的的手段。

clavichord ['klævikɔːd] *n.* 古钢琴

recently ['riːsəntly] *adv.* 近来，最近

【辨析】recently 可被 very，just，quite，so，too 等词前置修饰，并可以有比较级，而 lately 通常则不能，如：He moved into a new apartment more recently. 他搬进新居的时间离现在更近。英国人倾向于把 recently 用于肯定句，lately 用于否定句和疑问句。

【用法】recently 常用于完成时。

damage ['dæmidʒ] *n.* 1. 损害，损坏 2. [*pl.*]损害赔偿费 *v.* 损害，毁坏

【词组】do/cause damage to 损害，损坏

key [kiː] *n.* 1. 钥匙 2. 键，琴键 3. 答案，解答 4. 关键 *adj.* 主要的，关键的

【用法】表示"答案，图解，表解，题解，密码等的解释，(图例)说明"时，通常与 to 连用；与 to 连用时也可表示"关键，要害，线索，钥匙，途径"。表示"秘诀、法宝"时，后接 for。

string [striŋ] *n.* 弦，细绳

shock [ʃɔk] *n.* 1. 冲击，震动，震惊 2. 电击，触电 *v.* 使震动，使震惊

【词组】the shock of a fall 落地的冲击；be shocked at/by 对……很震惊

allow [ə'lau] *vt.* 1. 准许 2. 承认 *vi.* 容许

【词组】allow for 考虑到，估计到，连……算在内；allow me to(do) 让我做

touch [tʌtʃ] *vt.* 1. 触摸，碰到 2. 触动，感动 3. 涉及，论及 *vi.* 触摸，接触 *n.* 1. 接触，碰到 2. 少许，一点

【词组】touch down 登陆，着陆；touch off 使爆炸；引发，引起；touch on/upon 谈及，稍稍谈到；touch up 润色，修饰；touch with 着(某种颜色)

课文详解

1. It is called a clavichord. 它被称作古钢琴。

- call 在这里意为："把……称作，叫作"。本句采用了被动语态，本课中许多动词都是

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

被动语态，如："...is kept..." " ...was bought..." "...was damaged..."等。

2. It was made in Germany in 1681. 它是1681年德国造的。

● make：意为"生产，制造"，常用的搭配有：

1) be made in somewhere：产于某地

e. g. These desks were made in Shanghai.

2) be made by sb.：由某人制造

e. g. This cake was made by my sister.

3) be made of sth.：由某种材料而制（看得出材料）

e. g. The ring is made of gold.

4) be made from sth.：由多种材料混合制成（看不出单个材料）

e. g. The cake is made from sugar, flour, butter and eggs.

5) be made into sth.：被制作成了成品

e. g. This piece of cloth can be made into a dress.

6) be made up of sth.：由……组成，构成（机构、团体等）

e. g. The committee is made up of eleven members.

3. It has belonged to our family for a long time. 我们家有这件乐器已经很久了。

● belong to sb.：属于某人，belong 是不及物动词，不能用于被动态而且 belong 表示状态，所以也没有进行时态。它常用于一般现在时和一般过去时。

e. g. This house belongs to me and it belonged to my father ten years ago.

4. Recently it was damaged by a visitor. 它最近被一个客人弄坏了。

● damage：考试重点词汇，意为损坏，强调程度较轻。

e. g. The car was badly damaged in the accident.

The storm did great damage to the crops.

5. It is being repaired by a friend of my father's. 父亲的一个朋友正在修理这件乐器。

● "is being repaired"是现在进行时的被动语态，表示正在被修理。

● a friend of my father's 此短语中"-'s"结构的所有格用于"of"结构之后，构成了双重所有格。

1) 双重所有格用来表示的所有关系是人，不是物。

e. g. a friend of my father's = one of my father's friends.（表示父亲很多朋友中的一个）

some pictures of John's = some of John's pictures.（约翰的许多照片中的一部分）

a doll of hers = one of her dolls.（她的许多布娃娃中的一个）

2) 双重所有格还常用 this, that, these 和 those 修饰 of 短语前面的名词，表示爱、恨、褒、贬等情感。

e. g. this son of mine 我这个儿子

that dog of Robert's 罗伯特的那条狗

those dirty hands of yours 你那肮脏的手

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

语法精析

一、被动语态

被动语态结构为：**be+done.**

注意：1) 被动语态的时态由 be 的变化来表示。

2) 只有动作是及物动词才能构成被动语态。

3) 强调动作是由什么人或什么东西而发出时，常用介词"by+行为发出者"。

4) 被动语态没有将来进行时和各种完成进行时态。

● 常出现的被动语态的各种时态形式如下：

.	一般时态	进行时态	完成时态
现在	am / is / are } done	am / is / are } being done	have / has } been done
过去	was / were } done	was / were } being done	had been done
将来	shall / will } be done		shall / will } have been done
过去将来	should / would } be done		should / would } have been done

注：情态动词的被动语态我们将在第 21 课详细补充讲解。

例句：

Our milk is deliered every morning.（一般现在时）

A new bridge is being built outside my house by workers.（现在进行时）

The boy has been punished by the headmaster.（现在完成时）

二、名词的属格

（一）名词所有格的构成

1. 单数名词，在词尾加"'s"：

my sister's boyfriend（我姐姐的男朋友）

2. 复数名词：

1) 不以-s 或-es 结尾的特殊变化的复数名词，在词尾加"'s"：

the children's Day 儿童节

2) 以-s 结尾的复数名词，在词尾加"'"构成所有格：

her friends' money 她朋友们的钱

3. 复合名词在最后一个词的词尾加"'s"：

my father-in-law's company 我岳父的公司

4. 对于由 and 连接的并列名词，当表示共有的情况下，只需在最后一个名词词尾加"'s"；若表示各自所有，则需在每个名词词尾加"'s"。比如：

John and his wife's bank savings 约翰和他妻子的共同存款

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

(二)名词所有格的用法

1. 用于有生命的名词：

名词所有格"'s"主要用来表示有生命的名词的所属关系，如以上所述例子。所以它通常用在姓名、人称、不定代词、集体名词、国家和高等动物等这样的名词后面。如：

姓名：Mary's brother

人称：my brother's car

不定代词：nobody's fault

集体名词：the party's decision

国家：China's exports and imports in January

动物：the horse's mouth

2. 用于无生命名词：

名词所有格除了用于"有生命名词"，还可以用于"无生命名词"：

1）表示时间、距离：

a month's salary 一个月的薪水

2）表示重量、度量或价值等：

two pounds' weight 2 磅的重量

two dollars' worth of sugar 两美元的糖

3）表示国家、城市、国际组织、地理名词等：

China's industrial development 中国的工业发展

America's West Coast 美国西海岸

the world's seven wonders 世界七大奇迹

the sun's ray 太阳光线

4）用于交通工具及其部件的所属关系：

the plane's engine 飞机的发动机

3. 省去名词的所有格：

1）若名词所有格所修饰的名词已经出现，则在第二次出现的所有格后的名词可省去，以避免重复。例如：

This is my room and that is my sister's. 这是我的房间，那是我姐姐的。

2）在一些表示店铺或教堂的名词的所有格后面可省去名词，此时所有格表示相应的场所，且一般要在所有格名词前加定冠词 the。例如：

at the chemist's 在药店

at the dentist's 在牙医诊所

3）在人名后的所有格省去名词时，表示某人的住宅。例如：

go to my sister's 去我姐姐家

(三)of 属格的用法

一般来说，"of ＋名词"结构主要用于以下两种情形：

1. 表示无生命物体的名词的所有关系：

the leg of the table 桌子腿

2. 当有生命名词后面接短语或从句修饰时，也用 of 属格：

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

The mother of the boy in a red suit is president of our company.

那个男孩的妈妈穿着红色套装，是我们公司的总裁。

(四)所有格的意义

所有格除了表示所属关系，还可以表示其他关系。

1. 主谓关系：

the teacher's request 老师的要求

the arrival of the train 火车到达

2. 动宾关系：

the boy's punishment = (somebody) punished the boy 对孩子的惩罚

the criticism of the teacher 对老师的批评

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 11 One good turn deserves another

本课重点和难点

- 动词+sb. to do 结构的用法
- 并列连词 but, and, for
- 连接性副词 however, therefore, yet, so

本课词汇

turn [tə:n] *vi.*/*vt.* 1. 转动,旋转 2. 扭转,使转向 3. 使变化,使变成 *n.* 1. 转向,转动 2. 轮流,轮班

【词组】turn about 向后转;turn against 转而反对;turn away 转身不看;turn back 返回,折回;turn down 拒不接受;turn from 放弃,离开;turn in 上交,交还;turn off 关上;turn on 打开;turn over 移交,交给;take one's turn 轮班

deserve [di'zə:v] *v.* 应受,值得

【词组】deserve well/ill of sb. 应受到某人好的(坏的)待遇;one good turn deserves another 要以德报德,礼尚往来

【用法】1. He deserved praise. (= He deserved to be praised.)他值得称赞。2. 后接 to do 或 doing。3. 作不及物动词时,后接 of。

lawyer ['lɔ:jə] *n.* 律师,(尤指)事务所律师

bank [bæŋk] *n.* 1. 银行,银行办事处 2. (河流的)岸,堤

【用法】bank 岸:指邻接江河或湖泊的陆地。

salary ['sæləri] *n.* 薪金,薪水

【辨析】wage 多指体力劳动者所得的工钱,以时间或定额计算,一般按天或周发给;salary 多指脑力劳动者所得的工资,一般按月发给。

immediately [i'mi:diətli] *adv.* 立刻

【用法】immediately 立刻,马上:指某种动作一发生,另一动作就接着发生,中间没有任何插入时间。

pay for 负担……的费用

课文详解

1. I was having dinner at a restaurant when Tony Steele came in. 我正在一家饭馆吃饭,托尼·斯蒂尔走了进来。

● 此句复习了第 7 课的语法结构,过去进行时与时间状语连用,此处 when 引导的是突然的、瞬间的动作,不可替换成 while 或 as,但本句可以改写为:

When/While/As I was having dinner at a restaurant, Tony Steele came in.

● at a restaurant:强调在餐厅用餐一般用介词 at。

2. He gets a good salary. 他的薪水很高。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

● good 在此意为"相当多的、可观的"，尤其在口语中，good money/salary 就相当于 high salary。

e. g. He threw good money after bad. 他赔了夫人又折兵。

He made a good deal of money. 他赚了很多钱。

3. but he always borrows money from his friends and never pays it back. 但他却总是向朋友借钱，并且从来不还。

● borrow sth. from sb.：向某人借东西。

lend sb. sth. /lend sth. to sb.：把东西借给某人。

e. g. Tom borrowed a book from my sister.

I lend my laptop to him.

● pay：付、支付、偿还等，常出现的搭配有：

1) pay sth. /sb. back：归还，向某人报复。

e. g. He threatened to pay me back for what I said.

I will pay back the money next week.

2) pay sb. 或 pay for sb. /sth.：付款，付钱。

e. g. You must pay me what you owe.

You must pay for what you have eat and drink.

3) pay sth. off：全部还清

e. g. Tony paid off his debts last week.

4) pay sth. into sth.：将钱存入银行账户。

e. g. Please pay this sum into my wife's account.

4. While he was eating, I asked him to lend me twenty pounds. 当他吃饭时，我提出向他借 20 英镑。

● ask+*n.* /*pron.* +to do sth.：此外 to do sth. 为不定式作宾语补足语。

语法精析

一、动词+sb. to do 结构的用法

(一)作宾语补足语：动词+sb. to do sth.

1. 通常的结构是：动词+sb. to do sth.

Allow me to drink to your success. 让我为你的成功干杯！

2. 在 let，make，have，see，hear，feel，watch，notice，listen to 等动词后面，不定式作宾语补足语时，to 要省略；改为被动语态，则必须带 to。

(二)不定式作补语及不定式作宾语

对比如下：

不定式作宾语：(*vt.* +to do)	不定式作宾语补足语(*vt.* +*n.* /*pron.* +to do)
begin to do sth.	allow sb. to do sth.
decide to do sth.	ask sb. to do sth.
expect to do sth.	expect sb. to do sth.
hope to do sth.	order sb. to do sth.
tend to do sth.	tell sb. to do sth.
aim to do sth.	advise sb. to do sth.
want to do sth.	want sb. to do sth.

Ann wants *to wear* the new dress. 安妮想穿那条新裙子。

Ann wants *me to wear* the new dress. 安妮想要我穿那条新裙子。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

He expected *to be* back next Sunday. 他想在下个星期天回来。

He expected *me to be* back next Sunday. 他期待我下个星期天回来。

(三)在下列几种情况下不定式要省略 to

1. 一些动词的复合宾语中 to 省去。

1) 感官动词:see,hear,watch,notice,feel,observe

2)使役动词:let,make,have

The teacher let us write a composition every week. 老师让我们每周写一篇作文。

I saw a man enter the shop. 我看到一个男人进了商店。

2. 一些短语句型中 to 省去:had better,would rather,etc.

3. do nothing/anything/everything but do 句型中 to 省去。

He needs nothing but succeed. 他只需要成功。

二、并列连词 but,and,for

(一)并列句的定义

并列句是由并列连词把两个或两个以上的简单句连在一起构成的句子。并列句的结构为:简单句+并列连词+简单句。例如:

This is mine and that is hers. 这是我的,那是她的。

(二)并列连词的用法

1. and 表示并列。

Helen washed the clothes and then (she) listened to music.

海伦洗了衣服,然后就听音乐了。

2. but 表示对比或转折。

He sold the house,but (yet) he can't help regretting it.

他把房子卖了,但不免感到惋惜。

3. for 表示原因。

The days are getting warmer and warmer,for spring has come.

天越来越暖和了,因为春天到了。

4. and 和 or 可以表示条件。

and 和 or 可以连接两个分句,前一个分句表示条件,常为祈使句;and 前面的分句相当于 if 引导的肯定性从句,or 前面的分句相当于 if 引导的否定性从句。

三、连接性副词 however,therefore,yet,so

however,therefore 是连接性副词,yet,so 既可作并列连词,也可作连接性副词。并列连词连接两个并列分句时,其位置固定于所引导的分句句首。而连接性副词有的可与 and 等连词并用;有的可单独使用,连接两个独立分句,位置较灵活,用逗号隔开。

若用逗号","相隔则构成两个并列分句,要用连词连接。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 12 Goodbye and good luck

本课重点和难点

- 一般将来时
- 将来进行时

本课词汇

luck [lʌk] *n.* 幸运，运气，好运

【词组】by luck 侥幸的；rough luck 倒霉

captain [ˈkæptin] *n.* 船长

sail [seil] *n.* 1. 帆 2. 航行 *vi.* 航行 *vt.* 驾驶（船只）

【词组】sail for 起航，驶往……；set sail 扬帆，开船；sail against the wind 逆风航行；sail before the wind 顺风扬帆航行

harbour [ˈhɑːbə] *n.* 港口

【用法】harbour 港口，港湾：指海洋、江河、湖泊中天然或人工修建的港口，以防御大风大浪。有时用于比喻。

proud [praud] *adj.* 骄傲的，自豪的

【词组】be proud of 因……而自豪，以……为荣；be proud to be（或接 that 从句）因……而感到自豪（光荣）；be proud for sb. to do sth. 为某人做某事而自豪

important [imˈpɔːtənt] *adj.* 1. 重要的，重大的 2. 有权力的，有地位的

【用法】在"It is important that..."结构中，that 从句中要用虚拟语气，即用（should+）动词原形。

race [reis] *n.* 比赛

课文详解

1. Our neighbor, Captain Charles Alison, will sail from Portsmouth tomorrow. 我们的邻居查尔斯·艾利森船长明天就要从朴茨茅斯启航了。

● Our neighbor, Captain Charles Alison 为同位语关系，我们在第 4 课已经作了详细讲解，下文 He will be in his small boat, Topsail 中的 Topsail 也是同位语。

2. We'll meet him at the harbor early in the morning. 明天一大早我们将在码头为他送行。

● meet：在这里指"碰面"。还有迎接某人之意。

e.g. I met a friend in the street.

I will meet you at the station when you come back.

● 表示时间的短语 in the morning, in the afternoon 等之前可以加上 early, late 等副词，以表示更确切的时间。

e.g. late in the afternoon 傍晚，黄昏

3. It has sailed across the Atlantic many times. 它已经多次横渡大西洋。

★ 近义词辨析：across, through

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

1)across：常指对某细长物"横断、横跨、横渡"等尤其指河流、马路等。

e. g. He swam across the English Channel.

I walked across the street.

2)through：指从某个地方的一端走到另一端，表示贯穿、经过等。

e. g. The man went through the forest.

The thief came in through the window.

4. Captain Alison will set out at eight o'clock. 艾利森船长将在8点起航。

★ set组成的词组辨析：set out/off，set sth. up，set about doing sth. set sb./sth. down

1) set out/off：表示"动身，起程，出发"。

e. g. They set out/off at dawn.

2) set sth. up：常指"设立，建立，组建"。

e. g. Liu Xiang hopes to set up a new world record.

3) set about sth./doing sth.：表示"开始，善于"做某事。

e. g. I don't know how to set about the job.

4) set sth. down：常指"放下，卸下"重担等。

e. g. You just set down the load and take a rest.

5) set sb. down：指司机停车让乘客下车。

e. g. I will set you down at the corner of the street.

6) set back：推迟，延续，阻碍。

e. g. Her illness set her back in her school work.

7) set aside sth.：留出，拨出。

e. g. We should set aside some time for thinking every day.

5. He will be away for two months. 他要离开两个月。

● be away 表示离开不在，属于常见的 be+*adv.* 构成系表结构，表状态。

e. g. be away 离开，不在

be back 回来

be over 结束

be on 上映

be in 在家

be out 不在家

6. He will take part in an important part in the competition across Atlantic. 他将参加一个重大的横渡大西洋的比赛。

● take part in/join in/participate in 都表示参加各项活动。

e. g. We all took part in the competition.

★ 近义词辨析：enter，join，attend

1) enter：指参加别人的活动或参加团体组织的事务、为之服务。

enter for sth. 报名参加

e. g. He entered for the government service.

2) join：指加入某人的行列或者加入某个团体、组织，成为其一员。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

e. g. We joined the country club.

3) attend：指到场、出席，一般是以听众或观众的身份出现。

e. g. He attended the meeting last week.

语法精析

一、一般将来时

（一）一般将来时态的三种用法

从严格意义上来讲，英语中没有将来时态。这是因为表示将来的动作往往是与各种情态意图联系在一起的，比如：估计将发生某事；计划将来做某事；或表示愿意去做某事。因此，对于将来时态的学习，理解以下三个概念是至关重要的：

1. 预测：表示说话人认为将来会发生某件事。

2. 事先计划：说话人在头脑里已经作出决定将来要做某件事。

3. 意愿：说话人既不是预计某事将会发生，也不是预先经过考虑决定将做某事，而是在说话的时刻立即作出决断表明他将去做某事。

不仅如此，英文中还有其他各种可以表示一般将来动作的时态和结构。但为了方便起见，通常把 will/shall do 或 be going to do 称作一般将来时。

（二）一般将来时的结构：

1. 常用 shall/will＋动词原形构成。shall 用于第一人称，用于陈述句，可用 will 替代；用于疑问句，征询对方意见。will 在陈述句中用于各种人称，在征求意见时，常用于第二人称。

I shall/will go to the Great Wall tomorrow. 我们明天要去游长城。

You will have time for it. 你会有时间做这件事的。

She will be here in a minute. 她一会就来这儿。

Where shall we go for the May Day? 五一节我们去哪呢？

Will you be here at eight on Monday morning? 你星期一上午八点到这儿好吗？

2. be going to 结构，表示计划好、安排好、将要发生的事。

What are you going to do this weekend? 这个周末你打算干什么？

They are going to buy a new house next month. 他们下个月要买新房子。

Look at the dark clouds, there is going to be a storm. 看那些乌云，天要下雨了。

3. be＋不定式表将来，按计划或正式安排将发生的事。

We are to discuss the report next Friday. 下个星期五我们要讨论这个报告。

She is to be married next year. 她明年要结婚了。

Who is to play Victoria? 谁来扮演维多利亚？

4. be about ＋不定式，意为马上要做的事或马上要发生的事，此句式一般不跟明确表示将来的时间状语。

He is about to lock the door when he hears the telephone rings.

他正要锁门，这时电话铃响了。

They are about to start. 他们马上出发。

5. come, go, arrive, leave, start, begin, return 等动词的一般现在时可以表将来，主要用来表示在时间上已确定或安排好的事情。

The train leaves at half past six tomorrow morning. 火车明天早晨六点半开。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

When does the film begin? It begins at half past eight. 电影什么时候开演？八点半。

They have no classes tomorrow.

他们明天不上课。

在时间或条件状语从句中用一般现在时表将来。

If it rains tomorrow, we will not go to the Summer Palace.

如果明天下雨，我们就不去颐和园了。

I'll tell him as soon as he comes back. 他一回来我就告诉他。

6. 现在进行时可以表示将来，意为"意图"、"打算"、"安排"，常用于人。

常用词为 come，go，start，arrive，leave，stay 等。

I'm leaving for Paris the day after tomorrow. 后天我要动身去巴黎。

Are you staying here till next week? 你们要在这儿呆到下周么？

They are coming this Sunday. 他们这星期日要来。

7. be due to 结构可以表示将来，意为"定于……"。

Mary is due to leave at six tomorrow morning. 玛丽定于明天上午动身。

The new library is due to be completed in August. 新图书馆定于八月竣工。

8. be bound to 结构可以表示将来，意为"肯定的"。

It's bound to rain soon. 不久就会下雨的。

We are bound to win the game. 我们一定会赢得这场比赛的。

二、将来进行时

表示在将来某一特定时刻正在进行的活动。如：

I'll be lying on a beach in Sanya this time tomorrow. 明天这个时候我会躺在三亚的海滩上。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 13 The Greenwood Boys

本课重点和难点

- 复习一般将来时
- 将来进行时与一般将来时的区别

本课词汇

group [gru:p] *n.* 群，小组 *v.* 分组，积聚

pop singer [ˈpɔp-ˌsiŋə] *n.* 歌手，歌唱家

club [klʌb] *n.* 1. 俱乐部，夜总会 2. 棍棒，球棒 3. 社团

performance [pəˈfɔ:məns] *n.* 1. 执行，完成 2. 表现

occasion [əˈkeiʒən] *n.* 场合，时节，时刻

【词组】 give occasion to 引起；improve the occasion 因势利导；on occasion 间或，有时

课文详解

1. At present, they are visiting all parts of the country. 目前，他们正在全国各地巡回演出。

- at present：意为"now, nowadays"现在，如今

e. g. The manager is not busy at present, but he will be busy tomorrow afternoon.

- all 在这里是"各种的，各个，到处"的意思。

e. g. all parts of the country 全国各地

all parts of the world 世界各地

2. They will be arriving here tomorrow. 他们明天就要到达此地。

- will be arriving 是将来进行时。详见"语法精析"。

3. As usual, the police will have a difficult time. 同往常一样，警察的日子将不好过。

- as usual：像往常一样，照例

e. g. He is late, as usual.

- have a difficult time：日子不好过，指的是"工作难对付，很费力"。

have a hard time：指生活艰辛。

4. Tomorrow evening, they will be singing at the workers' club. 明晚他们将在工人俱乐部演出。

- the Workers' Club：工人俱乐部。本课出现了所有格，第 9 课中也出现了"twenty minutes' time"的表达法，在第 10 课中对所有格作了详细讲解，此处不再重复。

5. They will be trying to keep order. 他们将设法维持秩序。

- keep order：维持秩序。

order *n.*：1)次序，顺序

e. g. in order of size 按大小顺序

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

in good order 井然有序，不乱

out of order(指机器、身体器官等)有毛病，坏了

2) 命令

e. g. be under orders to do sth. 奉命做事

He is under orders to leave for Germany tomorrow.

3) 目的，意向

e. g. in order to do sth. 为了做某事

in order that... 以便

语法精析

一、复习一般将来时(参见 Lesson 12)

二、将来进行时与一般将来时的区别

将来进行时表示在将来某一特定时刻正在进行的活动。

结构为 will be doing；第一人称可用 shall be doing。

将来进行时与一般将来时的区别如下：

1. 将来进行时表示说话人已经安排好在最近或以后将正在进行的动作；不用一般将来时替换。

I'll be watching the football game at 8 o'clock tomorrow evening.

Tom will be decorating the house next month.

2. 将来进行时和一般将来时有时表达一致的含义，但一般将来时表示主语的意愿、决心、许诺等，而将来进行时表示说话人对将要发生的事情进行推测。

She will arrive in Shanghai tomorrow morning. (表示 100%的确信)

She will be arriving in Shanghai tomorrow morning. (说话人不那么肯定)

3. 将来进行时用于询问别人的计划、打算时比一般将来进行时更礼貌、委婉。

Will you be spending your holidays abroad this year? (不熟悉的人之间)

Will you spend your holidays abroad this year? (关系较好的人之间)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 14 Do you speak English?

本课重点和难点

- 过去完成时
- 方式状语从句
- 反身代词

本课词汇

amusing [ə'mjuːziŋ] *adj.* 有趣的，逗人笑的

experience [iks'piəriəns] *n.* 1. 经验，感受，体验 2. 经历 *vt.* 经历，体验

【用法】experience 经历，体验：指亲自见过，做过或遭受过某事，对其有深刻的感受。可用于褒义或贬义。

wave [weiv] *vi.* 招手，挥动

【词组】short-wave 短波

lift [lift] *n.* 搭车

reply [ri'plai] *n.* 回答 *v.* 以……作答

【词组】in reply to 回答；make a reply to 回答

language ['læŋgwidʒ] *n.* 语言

【用法】language 语言，口语：指构成一个民族或一个国家的有声语言或无声语言。有时指聋哑人的手势等。

journey ['dʒəːni] *n.* 旅行，行程 *vi.* 旅行

【用法】journey 旅行：指从一地直接到达目的地的旅行，特别指长途的陆上旅行。有时用于比喻。

reach [riːtʃ] *v.* 伸手触到，达到 *n.* 能达到的范围

【词组】reach out 伸出；beyond the reach of 无法到达；out of reach 无法拿到；within reach 能拿到

【辨析】reach 表示到达什么地点时是及物动词，后面直接跟表示地点的名词；get 表示到什么地点接 to(地点副词例外)，与 arrive 和 reach 相比，reach 比较口语化；arrive 表示到达什么地点时接 in 或 at；一般说，到达大地方用 in，到达较小的地方用 at，但这不是绝对的(地点副词例外)。

课文详解

1. After I had left a small village in the south of France, I drove on to the next town. 在离开法国南部的一个小村庄后，我继续驶往下一个城镇。

- in the south of France：在法国南部，常见的表示地点范围的介词如下：
  in：表示大范围中的某个地方(包含关系)。
  to：表示两个地方是相离的(不接壤)。
  on：表示紧紧相邻的两个地方(接壤)。

e. g. Beijing is in the north of China.
Japan is to the east of China.
Russia is on the north of China.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

● 副词 on 紧跟在动词后面时可以表示"向前"、"继续"的意思。

e. g. He talked on until everybody had gone.

How much longer will this cold weather go on?

● had left 在本句中为过去完成时。

2. I stopped and he asked me for a lift. 我把车停下来,他向我提出要求搭车。

● ask sb. for a lift:向某人要求搭便车去某地,相当于:thumb a lift to somewhere 或 hitchhike to somewhere。

3. Apart from a few words, I do not know any French at all. 除了个别几个单词外,我根本不会法语。

● apart from:除了……之外

★ 近义词考点辨析:apart from, except, except for, except that, but, other than, besides, in addition to

1) except 和 except for 的宾语都不包括在所论及的事物内,但 except 所除外的事物与非除外的属同一类,而 except for 中前后两事物不属同一类,但出现在句首时必须用 except for。

e. g. You can all go except Tom.

Except for Tom, you can all go.

I feel all right except for a slight headache.

2) except that+从句,表示"只是……","只不过……"。

e. g. I would like to go with you except that it is too far.

3) but, other than 与 except 含义相同,表示除去一部分,后面一般接名词、代词和不定式;but 最常用于 all, no, nobody, who 等词之后,但不能放于句首。

e. g. I had nothing left but ten dollars.

He had no choice but/other than to wait.

4) besides=in addition to,表示"除……以外,还有……",可放句首。

e. g. Besides/In addition to John, all of us passed the exam.

He can play football besides/in additions to tennis.

5) apart from:具有多种含义,既可以表示 except,可相当于 except for,还可以表示 besides,用法较广泛。

e. g. Apart from his face and hands, he broke both legs.

Apart from being a bit too long, the play was very good.

4. Neither of us spoke during the journey. 旅途中我们谁也没讲话。

1) neither of:两个都不做某事(完全否定),谓语动词用单数。

2) either of:两个中任意一个去做某事,谓语动词用单数。

3) both of:两个都做某事,谓语动词用复数。

4) which of:两个或更多选择之中更偏爱哪一个,谓语动词用单数。

e. g. Either of you answers the question.

Both of the films are interesting.

语法精析

一、过去完成时

结构:had+done(过去分词)

过去完成时的具体用法如下:

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

1. 表示过去某时或某动作发生之前就已经完成的动作或者状态，常与 after, before, when, as, as soon as, not...until, by 等引导的时间状语连用。(黄金考点)

As soon as the sun had set, the old man returned to the hotel.

When he had finished the lunch, he asked for a glass of water.

2. 没有时间状语时，时间先后由上下文表示。

I didn't know he had moved out. They returned earlier than we had expected.

3. 用于下列特殊句型之中(黄金考点)

① 在"It was the first time..."后面。

It was the first time he had gone abroad.

It was the first time Tom had broken a world record.

②在"no sooner...than..., hardly/scarcely...when..."的结构之中。

He had no sooner returned than he bought a house.

We had hardly begun when we were told to stop.

二、方式状语从句

方式状语从句表示动作的方式，引导词有：as, like, as if, as though, the way 等。

Do it the way you were taught. 用你被教过的方法去做。

考题：Eliza remembers everything exactly as if it ________ yesterday.

A. was happening B. happens C. has happened D. happened

答案解析：D。as if 后的谓语动词应采用一般过去时的形式与状语 yesterday 搭配，表示对现在真实情况的虚拟。

三、反身代词

(一)反身代词的形式

反身代词有：myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves

(二)反身代词用作宾语

一般来说，若动词所表示的行为施加到施动者自己身上时，也就是说主语和宾语为同一人时，我们用反身代词作动词的宾语。

Take good care of yourself. 请多保重。

(三)反身代词起强调作用

反身代词可强调主语和宾语。此时 self 要重读。

1. 强调主语

反身代词通常是用来强调句子的主语，此时反身代词常位于主语之后。

Stress itself is not an illness, but prolonged stress can lead to sickness and absence from work. 压力本身不是什么疾病，但长期的压力就会导致疾病，从而影响到工作。

2. 强调宾语

强调宾语的反身代词只能紧跟在宾语后边。例如：

He saw Tom himself. 他看到汤姆本人了。

(四)介词+反身代词

1. by oneself：独自一人

I went there by myself. 我自己一人去了那儿。

2. of oneself：自动地，自然而然地

The door opened of itself. 门自动地开了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 15 Good news

本课重点和难点

- 间接引语
- 过去将来时

本课词汇

secretary ['sekrətri] *n.* 1. 秘书 2. 书记 3. 部长 4. 大臣

【词组】secretary to the minister

【用法】1. He is secretary to the president. 他是董事长的秘书。后接介词to,前面不用冠词。后接 of 前可用冠词,如:He is the secretary of the association. 他是该协会的干事。2. 美国的各部部长都叫 secretary。

nervous ['nə:vəs] *adj.* 神经的,神经紧张的,神经过敏的

【词组】be nervous of 害怕……,对……胆怯;be/feel nervous about/at sth. 因某事而紧张不安

afford [ə'fɔ:d] *vt.* 负担得起(的费用、损失等)

【用法】afford 给予:指为了一定的目的,满足他人的需要。

weak [wi:k] *adj.* 1. 虚弱的,软弱的 2. 差的,不够标准的 3. 稀的,淡薄的

interrupt [ˌintə'rʌpt] *v.* 1. 打断,打扰 2. 中断,断绝

课文详解

1. The secretary told me that Mr. Harmsworth would see me. 秘书告诉我哈姆斯沃斯先生要见我。

- would 在这里起双重作用,既表示过去将来,又表示"想……"、"要……"的含义。
- 本句用到了我们这一课要讲的重点语法,间接引语,详见"语法精析"。

2. I knew that my turn had come. 我知道这次该轮到我了。

- turn 作名词,意为"轮流"、"轮班"等。

e. g. It is your turn to read now, John.

Mary and Helen took turns at sitting up with their sick mother.

3. Then he smiled and told me I would receive an extra thousand pounds a year. 然后他微笑了一下告诉我说,我每年将得到1000英镑的额外收入。

- extra:额外的、外加的

e. g. On Sundays, I usually get some extra sleep.

Extra work deserves extra pay.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

语法精析

一、间接引语

间接引语，既把某人说过的话转述给另外一个人。间接的陈述句往往用 say 或 tell sb. that 来引导。其具体用法如下：

1. 如果间接引语中的引述动词是现在时，那么引语从句的时态则不变，维持原时态。

He says that he is busy now.

Mary tells me that she will leave for Paris tomorrow.

2. 如果间接引语中的引述动词是过去时，那么引语从句的时态要相应地往过去推移，如下表：

直接引语	间接引语
I do	He did
I am doing	He was doing
I was doing/I have been doing/I had been doing	He had been doing
I shall/will do/I should/would do	He would do
I shall/will be doing/I should/would be doing	He would be doing
I shall/will have been doing	He would have been doing
I should/would have been doing	He would have been doing

He said that he had lost his keys.

Mary told me that she had been waiting for ages.

3. 引语为普遍真理或不影响句子意义时，引语中的时态可改可不改。

He said, "The earth is round."

He said that the earth is/was round.

二、过去将来时

(一)构成

would/should＋动词原形(would 通用于所有人称，should 只用于第一人称；should 和 would 可缩写为"'d"，should not 和 would not 的缩写形式分别为 shouldn't 和 wouldn't。

(二)用法

1. 从过去看将来。

表示从过去某一时间来看将要发生的动作或存在的状态，常用于宾语从句中。如：

He said he would go to the north for the holiday. 他曾说他将去北方度假。

2. "was/were going to＋动词原形"所表示的过去将来时。

这种结构表示过去曾经打算或计划将要做什么。例如：

She said she was going to buy a new bike. 她说她打算买一辆新自行车。

3. "was/were＋动词不定式"所表示的过去将来时。

这种结构表示过去计划或安排将要做某事。例如：

She told me that she was to plant some trees in the yard.

她告诉过我说她要在院子里种些树。

4. "was/were＋about＋动词不定式"所表示的过去将来时。

这种结构表示"即将"要发生的动作。例如：

The bus was about to start. 公共汽车马上就要开了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 16 A polite request

本课重点和难点

- 名词主语与谓语动词单复数形式、人称的一致性
- 条件状语从句

本课词汇

park [pɑːk] *vt.* 停放(车辆、飞机等)

traffic ['træfik] *n.* 1. 交通 2. 交通(客运)量

【词组】traffic circle 环形交叉路口;traffic light 红绿灯,交通信号灯;traffic island (街心)安全岛

traffic policeman 交通警察

lucky ['lʌki] *adj.* 幸运的,吉祥的

【词组】by a lucky chance 幸而;touch lucky 交好运

ticket ['tikit] *n.* (给违反交通规则者的)传票

note [nəut] *n.* 便条

area ['ɛəriə] *n.* 1. 面积 2. 地区,区域 3. 领域,范围

sign [sain] *n.* 记号,标记

【用法】sign 标志,迹象;指将要发生某种情况时的预兆。有时指人们公认事物的记号。

reminder [ri'maində] *n.* 提醒物,暗示

fail [feil] *vi.* 失败,不能

【词组】fail in a match/an exam 比赛(考试)失败;fail to do sth. 未能做某事

obey [ə'bei] *v.* 1. 服从,听从 2. 听由,听从摆布

课文详解

1. If you park your car in the wrong place, a traffic policeman will soon find it. 一旦你把汽车停错了地方,交通警察很快就会发现的。

● 本句及课文中的大多数句子都是由"if"引导的条件状语从句。而条件句分为真实条件句和非真实条件句,本课的重点是真实条件句,真实条件句表示能够发生或可能发生的事情。具体内容参见本课的"语法精析"。

2. You will be very lucky if he lets you go without a ticket. 如果他没有给你罚款单就放你走了,算你幸运。

● let(sb./sth.) go=let go of sb./sth.:放开,释放、使自由等。

e.g. Don't let the rope go.

Let go of her, or I'll kill you.

● without+*n.*/doing 在句中常作伴随或条件状语。

e.g. Fish can not live without water.

He always goes home without catching any fish.

3. You will enjoy your stay here if you pay attention to our street signs. 如果您对我们街上的标

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

牌稍加注意,您在此会过得很愉快的。

★ 近义词组辨析:pay attention to sb./sth.,notice

1) pay attention to sb./sth.:指用大脑或集中注意力去注意某事,专心于某事。

e.g. Pay attention to what you are doing.

No one paid attention to my advice.

2) notice:指用眼睛有意或无意地看到某人、某事。

e.g. I notice that he left early.

Did you notice his hand shaking?

★近义词组辨析:sign,signal,signature,symbol

1) sign:①作名词,指记号、符号、告示牌、指示牌等。

②作动词,指签字于文件,其名词形式为 signature。

e.g. I am a stranger here,so I must pay much attention to the traffic signs.

Please sign on the paper./Please put your signature to the paper.

2) signal:着重指声、色、光等传递的信号、信息等,也指手势。

e.g. A red light is usually a signal of danger.

3) signature:签名。

e.g. Petitions bearing nearly a half-million signatures were sent to the White House.

4) symbol:强调某符号是一种象征或代表物、标志。

e.g. Red is a symbol of danger.

The cross is a symbol of Christianity.

4. If you receive a request like this,you can not fail to obey it. 如果你收到这样的恳求,你是不会不遵照执行的。

● fail 与 refuse,forget 等相似,是具有否定意义的动词,与否定副词 not,never 等一起构成双重否定来表示肯定意义,语气较强烈,通常翻译成:"一定会……"

e.g. He never fails to write to his mother every week.

You must not refuse me.

语法精析

一、名词主语与谓语动词单复数形式、人称的一致性

主谓一致即指主语和谓语在人称和数上需保持一致的关系。即主语是单数,谓语动词用单数形式;主语是复数,谓语动词用复数形式。说起来非常简单,但在实际应用当中却是相当复杂的。本课将对这一问题进行总结,以便大家能准确地使用。

(一)单数形式的名词作主语与谓语动词形式的关系

一般来说,单数名词作主语,谓语动词用单数形式,这符合英语中的语法上一致原则。但此种情况也有例外。现详细归纳如下:

1. many a+名词单数,虽为复数概念,但谓语用单数。

Many a boy and girl has made such a funny experience.

许多男孩和女孩有这样一次可笑的经历。

There is many an error that he has neglected. 他忽略了许多错误。

2. more than one+可数名词单数,是复数概念,但谓语用单数。

More than one topic has been discussed at the meeting. 会议中不止一个题目被讨论。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

与此类似的另外一个结构：more＋复数名词＋than one，谓语用复数。

More topics than one have been discussed at the meeting. 会议中不止一个题目被讨论。

3. a＋单数名词＋or two 作主语，谓语用单数；one or two＋复数名词，谓语用复数。

A word or two is misused in the sentence. 这个句子中有一两个词用错了。

One or two words are misused in the sentence. 这个句子中有一两个词用错了。

4. 对于集体名词，如：party，crowd，class，team，family，crew，government，committee，audience，public 等，则需视情况而定：

若集体名词被看成一个整体，则谓语用单数。

若集体名词被看成是由具体若干成员组成的，则谓语用复数。

试比较：
- The committee was made up of ten members. 这个委员会由 10 名成员组成。
- The committee were unanimous in their opinion. 这个委员会成员的意见都一致。
- The committee are not of one opinion. 这个委员会没有统一的意见。

5. 定冠词 the＋*adj*. 或过去分词。

(1)若表示抽象概念，谓语用单数。

(2)表示一类人，则为复数概念，谓语用复数。

(3)有时需根据上下文来判断。

The good in him overweighs the bad.（抽象概念）他身上的优点比缺点多。

The blind are unfortunate. 盲人是不幸的。

The deceased was his mother.（表示单个人）那个已故的人是他的母亲。

考题：The father as well as his three children ________ skating on the frozen river every Sunday afternoon in winter.

A. is going　　B. go　　C. goes　　D. are going

答案解析：C。下画线处与单数形式的主语 the father 搭配，不受 as well as his three children 的影响，因此应排除选项 B、D。根据状语“every Sunday afternoon in winter”提供的信息，下画线处应该用一般现在时表示与现在相关的经常性活动，因此应进一步排除 A 而选出 C。

(二)复数形式的名词作主语与谓语动词形式的关系

这种情况下，谓语动词形式不能一概而论。不过基本原则是：(1)若复数形式的名词表示的是复数概念，则显然要接复数谓语；(2)若复数形式的名词表示的是单数概念，或将其看成一个整体部分，则用单数谓语。

主要采用意义一致的原则来判断主谓一致。

1. 常见的表示成对概念的复数名词，如：pants，trousers，scissors，scales（天平），glasses，binoculars（双筒望远镜），spectacles（护目镜），bifocals（双光眼镜），谓语动词用复数。

Where are my glasses?

2. 形式上是复数（词尾加 s），但表示单数概念的词，谓语用单数。如：Works（工厂），gallows（绞刑架），politics，statistics，measles，diabetes。

Politics is often a popular topic among people. 政治经常是一个在人群中流行的话题。

但若 politics 不表示学科，而表示“政治观点”时，则需用复数。

As far as I am concerned, his politics are rather conservative compared with other politicians'. 在我看来，相比其他的政治家他的政治观点相当保守。

3. 表示时间、重量、数额的复数名词作主语，通常将它们看成一个整体，谓语用单数。

Ten years is a moment in history. 十年只是历史的一个瞬间。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

值得注意的是，若"数词"单用，表示人或物，谓语动词一般用复数。

Ten were killed and five were missing and several were severely wounded in that accident. 在事故中，五人死亡，五人失踪，一些人严重受伤。

4. 复数的专有名词后面都接复数谓语动词。

The Himalayas are the roof of the world. 喜马拉雅是世界的屋顶。

不过较特殊的有：the United Nations，the United States 均看作一个整体，故用单数谓语动词。

考题： A survey of the opinions of experts ________ that three hours of outdoor exercise a week ________ good for one's health.

A. show; are B. shows; is C. show; is D. shows; are

答案解析： B。第一个下画线处对应的主语为单数形式的"a survey"，其后面定语"of the opinions"包含的复数名词对其谓语动词的形式不构成影响；第二个下画线处对应的主语"three hours of outdoor exercise a week"为复数形式单数含义，根据"意义一致原则"，第二个下画线处谓语动词应为单数形式。

(三)并列主语与谓语动词形式的关系

1. 由 and 连接的多个成分，若表示一种事物或一种概念时，用单数动词；若表示的是多个不同的概念时，则用复数动词。

The writer and translator is delivering a speech in our college tonight.（writer 和 translator 是指同一个人）一个作家兼译者今晚将在我们的大学发表一次演讲。

The writer and the translator are delivering a speech in our college tonight.（此处指两个人）一个作家和一个译者今晚将在我们的大学发表演讲。

2. 若 and 连接两个并列主语，且 and 后面的名词有相关的副词（not，perhaps，particularly，even，too，likewise，as well 等）修饰，则谓语动词形式与 and 前面的名词保持一致。因为此时句子真正的主语应是 and 前面的名词，此时 and 与前面的名词之间常有逗号隔开。

Jack，and particularly his parents，is fond of this music.

杰克，尤其是他的父母喜爱这种音乐。

His parents，and particularly Jack，are fond of this music.

杰克的父母，尤其是他自己喜爱这种音乐。

3. 两个表示不同物质的名词，虽由 and 连接，但习惯上此两样东西常常被同时使用，这时我们将二者看作是一整体，故谓语动词仍用单数。常见的这样的名词有：

Bread and butter is my favorite breakfast. 面包和黄油是我最喜欢的早餐。

The fork and knife is hard for me to use. 餐叉和餐刀对于我来说很难使。

4. or 连接的并列主语，动词形式与 or 最靠近的主语保持一致。

Her sisters or his brother has a hobby of collecting stamps.

她的姐姐或他的哥哥有集邮的爱好。

John，Mike，or Noriko drives Paula to work each morning.

约翰、迈克或诺瑞克每天早上开着 Paula 车去上班。

5. every... and (every)...，each... and (each)...，any... and (any)...，no... and (no)...，many a... and (many a)... 连接的并列主语，用单数谓语动词。

Every hour and every minute is important. 每一小时、每一分钟都是重要的。

Many a man and (many a) woman has wished he or she had had a better education.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

许多男人和女人都希望自己拥有更好的教育。

考题: —Did you go to the show last night?

—Yeah. Every boy and girl in the area ________ invited.

A. were　　B. have been　　C. had been　　D. was

答案解析: D。由 and 连接的两个名词同时被 every, each, no 修饰时,谓语动词用单数,加之题干中的 last night 暗示了下画线处应采用过去式,四个选项中只有 D 适合填入下画线处。

6. either... or..., not only... but also..., neither... nor...,谓语动词单复数与 or, but (also), nor 后面的词一致。

Not only the students but also their teacher is required to attend the meeting.

不仅学生而且他们的老师都要参加会议。

Not only their teacher but also the students are required to attend the meeting.

不仅老师而且他们的学生都要参加会议。

7. 与第 6 点形成对照的是,在主语+with, together with, along with, as well as, as much as, including, in addition to, added to, except, besides, rather than, accompanied by+另一主语的结构中,谓语动词形式与第一个主语保持人称和数的一致。

Mary, along with her sisters, attends the sessions regularly.

玛丽和她的姐姐们定期参加会议。

I, as well as they, am ready to help you. 我和他们准备帮助你。

(四)在 of 结构中谓语动词的单复数

这类情况较为复杂,且不总是那么具有规律性。基本可归纳如下:

1. 像 kind, type, sort, class, species, breed, variety, form, brand, make 等表示类别的名词,总的规律是:句子谓语动词单复数与 of 前面的名词形式保持一致。

What kind of rice is served in that restaurant? 这个餐厅提供什么种类的米饭?

What kinds of rice are served in that restaurant? 这个餐厅提供哪些种类的米饭?

2. A pair of+复数名词,看作整体,用单数谓语动词。

A pair of gloves/glasses is on the table. 一副手套/眼镜在桌子上。

Five pairs of gloves are on sale. 五副手套在出售。

3. the+最高级+of+*n.* 复数+单数谓语……

The most elaborate of all bird nests is the large, doomed communal structure built by social weaverbirds.

由群居的织布鸟建造的大的、固定的共同结构的巢是所有鸟巢中最精巧的。

4. a number of / an average of / a total of } +名词复数,用复数谓语,强调数量。

the number/average/total of+名词复数,用单数动词,强调整体。

A total of ten thousand dollars were donated last month. 上月总共一万美元被捐献。

The total of 10 thousand dollars donated last month was sent to the flood-stricken areas.

上个月总共一万美元被捐往洪灾地区。

5. a part of+ { 单数名词→单数谓语 / 复数名词→复数谓语 }

与此类似的还有:the rest/remainder of, most of, plenty of, 分数(如 two-thirds)+of, 百分数+of 等。它们的谓语动词用单数还是用复数依 of 后名词而定,名词是单数,则谓语动

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

词为单数；名词若是复数，谓语动词亦为复数。

A part of the apples are bad. 这些苹果中的一部分坏了。

Three-fourths of the surface of the earth is covered with water.

地球表面的四分之三被水覆盖。

考题： ________ of the land in that district ________ covered with trees and grass.

A. Two fifth; is　　　　B. Two fifth; are

C. Two fifths; is　　　　D. Two fifths; are

答案解析：C。分数的分子在英语中用基数词表示，分母用序数词表示，在分子大于 1 时序数词后要加-s，所在应以 two fifths 的形式表示五分之二（中间常加连字符）；在分数、百分数做主语时，谓语动词的形式取决于其本身的含义，本题中 two fifths 后面的 of the land in that district 属于单数含义，因此题干中的谓语部分采用单数形式。

考题： Nowadays, a large number of women, especially those from the countryside, ________ in the clothing industry.

A. is working　　B. works　　C. work　　D. worked

答案解析：C。表示"大量的……"的"a number of＋可数名词复数"结构做主语时，谓语动词应采用复数形式，题干中的 nowadays 又注定了整体语境与现在相关而不是单纯描述过去，因此下画线处应填入一般现在时谓语动词的复数形式。

二、条件状语从句

1）条件状语从句主要由以下连词引导：if, unless＝if not, so/as long as（只要）, in case, etc.

2）如果将来的事情很可能会发生，那么 if 从句要用一般现在时或现在进行时（强调从句动作在进行之中）等，主句则用一般将来时，即："主将从现"。

If it is fine tomorrow, I will go swimming.

If he is doing his homework now, I will call him later.

3）如果对主句中的动作要发生的程度不那么确信，或者想表达建议、命令等其他含义，就可以用情态动词来代替 will。

If you come late, you must apologize to me.

If you don't like the soup, you can leave it.

4）如果想加强命令、建议等，主句还可以用祈使句。

If you don't like the soup, don't drink it.

If he can't come, let me know.

5）主句还可以用 had better＋动词或一般现在时，表示建议。

If you don't feel well, you'd better go to see a doctor.

If she likes the film, why doesn't she go with us?

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 17 Always young

本课重点和难点

- 情态动词 must 和 have to
- 不定代词 one, another, the other, others 的用法
- 复合形容词

本课词汇

appear [ə'piə] *vi.* 出场，出现

【辨析】appear; look

appear 指外表上给人某种印象，但实际并非如此。look 指凭一个人的印象作出的判断，但含有较多的真实性。

stage [steidʒ] *n.* 1. 阶段，时期 2. 舞台，戏剧

【词组】(go) on the stage 当演员；at an initial stage of a disease 在发病初期

bright [brait] *adj.* 1. 明亮的，晴朗的 2. 聪明的，机灵的 3. 欢乐的

【词组】bright and early 大清早；look on/at the bright side (of things) 对事物持乐观态度

【用法】bright 聪明的，伶俐的：常用于口语，指某人的头脑灵光，反应快，能迅速适应事物的变化。一般用来形容年轻人或小孩。

stocking ['stɔkiŋ] *n.* 长袜

sock [sɔk] *n.* 短袜

【辨析】socks 指不到膝盖的短袜子；stockings 长袜，指到膝盖以上的袜子。

课文详解

1. She must be at least thirty-five years old. 她至少有 35 岁了。

- at least：至少。反义为 at most 至多。

e.g. He has at least 1000 books.

The bike will cost at most 100 pounds.

- must 是情态动词，must + 动词原形往往表示对现在或将来情况的肯定推测。具体内容见本课“语法精析”。

2. In spite of this, she often appears on the stage as a young girl. 尽管如此，她却常在舞台上扮演小姑娘。

- in spite of = despite：不管，不顾，尽管。后面常接名词或代词充当让步状语。

e.g. In spite of the bad weather, they decided not to put off their trip.

In spite of/Despite what you have said about her, I still love her.

- appear on the stage as sb. 登台扮演某角色。

1) as 作为介词，意思是“作为”，“以……身份”等。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

e. g. He will appear on the stage as Hamlet/the king.

I work as a teacher.

2)as 作连词可以表示时间、原因、方式等引导不同的状语从句。

e. g. Do it as I told you.

As we were having a party, the light went out.

3. In the play, she must appear in a bright red dress and long black stocking. 演出时她必须穿一条鲜红的裙子和黑色长筒袜。

● in:在这里表示穿着、戴着,相当于 be dressed in/wear,而我们常说的 put on 则表示穿衣的动作。

e. g. The girl in red is my sister.

She wears a T-shirt and jeans today.

4. Darling, it must be terrible to be grown up. 亲爱的,长大成人真可怕啊。

● must 在这里表示推测,言外之意是她觉得自己还是一个小姑娘,还没有成年呢。

● grow up:长成,成熟。

be grown up:表示长大成人。

e. g. When I grow up, I want to be a pilot.

Trees take a long time to grow up.

grow:单独使用则表示生长、发育、成长。

e. g. The trees are growing taller every day.

Children grow quickly.

语法精析

一、情态动词 must 和 have to

(一)must, have to, have got to 的区别列表如下

must:必须。 have to:不得不。	All applicants must take an entrance exam. 所有的申请者都必须参加一次入学考试。 All applicants have to take an entrance exam. 所有的申请者都不得不参加一次入学考试。
have got to 主要用于口语中,不是很正式。 got to 口语中连读成:gotta	I have got to go now. I have a class in ten minutes. 现在我不得不走了。十分钟后我有一节课。
要表示过去必须,我们要用 had to。 must, have got to 没有过去时形式。	I had to study last Sunday. 上周六我不得不学习。
注意否定意思: don't have to:不必要。 mustn't 或 must not:千万不要,表示禁止。	Tomorrow is Saturday. We don't have to go to school. 明天是周六,我们不必上学。 You must not tell anyone my secret. Do you promise? 你千万别告诉任何人我的秘密,你能答应我吗?

(二)must 表示"必须,应该,一定要",可用于一般现在时或一般将来时

主语是第一人称 I 或 we 时,表示说话人认为有必要或有义务做某事;主语是第二、第三人称 you, they, he, she 等时,表示说话人要求或命令别人做某事。例如:

Time is up. We must leave now. 时间到了,我们必须离开了。(有必要)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

You must study hard. 你必须努力学习。(I want you to study hard.)

He must return the dictionary tomorrow. 他明天必须归还那本辞典。

提示:①must 的过去式通常用 had to 表示,但在间接引语中也可用 must。例如:They had to work twelve hours a day at that time. 那时候,他们一天必须工作 12 个小时。He told me that he must(had to)walk through the forest. 他告诉我说,他必须步行穿过森林。

②在将来时态中,可以用 shall(will)have to 替代 must。

比较:
- We must go there next week. 我们下周必须到那里去。
- We shall have to go there next week. 我们下周必须到那里去。

③在一般现在时中,有时可用 have(has)to 替代 must。

比较:
- She says she must go now. 她说她现在必须走了。
- She says she has to go now. 她说她现在必须走了。

④表示"不必要,不需要"时,用 need not 或 don't have to 表示。

比较:
- You must leave for Nanjing tomorrow. 你必须明天动身去南京。
- You need not leave for Nanjing tomorrow. 你不必明天动身去南京。
- You don't have to leave for Nanjing tomorrow. 你不必明天动身去南京。

(三)must 可以表示推断或揣测,指极有可能或不可避免,意为"一定会,准会,一定要,一定是"。

must+动词原形表示对现在情况的推测;must+be+现在分词表示对现在正在发生或将来正在发生的事情的推测,意为"一定正在";must+动词完成式表示对过去情况的推测,意为"一定已经",例如:

It must be true. 这一定是真的。

It must be raining outside. 外面一定在下雨。(推测正在发生的情况)

According to the radio, it must be snowing tomorrow. 据广播,明天将要下雪。(推测将来正在发生的情况)

You must have got the letter. 你一定收到那封信了。(推测已经完成的情况)

(四)must not 的含义

must not 意为"不准,不许",表示断然拒绝或否定,语气较强。例如:

Children must not play with fire. 儿童不准玩火。

You must not do it that way. 不许你那样做。

提示:must 作"必须"解时,其否定式为 need not,不是 must not,参见上文。比较:

- Must I read the book again? 我必须把这本书再读一遍吗?
- No, you needn't. 你不必再读。(或 No, you don't need to/you don't have to.)

- Must we leave now? 我们必须现在离开吗?
- No, you needn't. 不必。(没有必要)
- No, you mustn't. 不准。(不允许,含命令口气)

考题:In crowded places like airports and railway stations, you ________ take care of your luggage.

A. can　　B. may　　C. must　　D. will

答案解析:C。下画线处应表示"必须(在机场、火车站等人多的场合看管好行李)",四个选项中只有 must 表示这一含义。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

二、不定代词 one，another，the other，others 的用法

(一)one 的用法

one 可以指人或物，表示"一个人"或"某一个"。one 既可作名词，也可作形容词，在句中作主语、表语、定语、宾语等。one 的所有格形式是 one's，反身代词是 oneself，复数形式是 ones。

1. 泛指人，表示"人，人人"。
2. 表示"一个人或物"。
3. 代替句中或上文已出现过的泛指名词，以避免重复。
4. 用 one 还是用 it：

one 和 ones 是泛指，表示同类中的任何一个或几个。it 是特指，指代上文已出现过的带有定冠词的特指名词。

5. the one 和 the ones 表示特指。the one 相当于 that，the ones 相当于 those。例如：

No dictionary is as useful as the one(=that) I bought last year.

我去年买的那本词典最有用。

The children from the United States are different from the ones(=those) from China.

从美国来的孩子同从中国来的孩子不一样。

6. ones 一般不能同 these 或 those 连用，但如果 ones 另有形容词修饰，则又可以。如：

These pens are white，but those are black.

这些钢笔是白色的，而那些钢笔是黑色的。(不说 those ones)

This pair of shoes are too small for me. I want large ones.

这双鞋太小，我想要大一些的。

7. one 和 ones 前面不可加 my，your 等形容词性物主代词，不能说 my one，their ones 等，应该用名词性物主代词，如 mine，yours 等。

比较：
- He put his pen on the desk and I put my ones in the school-bag. (误)
- He put his pen on the desk and I put mine in the school-bag. (正)
- 他把钢笔放在桌子上，我把钢笔放在书包里。

考题：—Why don't we take a little break?

—Didn't we just have ________?

A. it　　B. that　　C. one　　D. this

答案解析：C。one 在这里替代前面的单数可数名词 break(休息)。不选 B 是因为下画线没有接定语，不能用 that。

(二)other 的用法

other 表示"(两个中的)另一个"，"另一些，其他的，另外的"，可用作名词或形容词，在句中作主语、宾语、定语等。the other 表示"两者中的另一个"，the others 表示"其余几个"，others 表示"别人，别的东西"。other 和 others 是泛指，the other 和 the others 是特指，均可表示人或物。例如：

Have you any other pens? 你还有别的钢笔吗？(作定语)

There are two girls in the room. One is writing and the other is drawing a picture.

房间里有两个女孩，一个在写字，另一个在画画。(作主语)

I don't want these. Have you any others? 我不要这些，你有没有其他的呢？(作宾语)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

考题： Both sides have accused of ________ breaking the contract.

A. another　　B. the other　　C. neither　　D. each

答案解析：B。题干中的 both 表明该句意思是：双方都控告另一方违约。another 泛指不确定的另一个，the other 表示两者中的另一方，each 指每一个，neither 指两者都不，只有 B 选项最符合题意。

（三）another 的用法

another 等于"an＋other"意为"另一个，又一个"，指三者或三者以上中的另一个。another 可以用作名词或形容词。作名词用时，another 为单数名词，谓语动词用单数。作形容词用时，修饰单数可数名词，但可以用在"another＋数词＋复数可数名词"结构中，表示时间、金钱、距离等。另外，another 前面不可加 the，也不可加 an。another 在句中可以作宾语和定语。例如：

This pen is too expensive. Please show me another.

这支钢笔太贵了，请拿另外一支给我看看。（作宾语）

Would you like to have another cup of tea? 你想再喝一杯茶吗？（作定语）

提示：①the other 指两个人或两个物中的"另一个"，而 another 指不定数目中的"另一个"；the other 可以修饰单数名词或复数名词，而 another 只能修饰单数名词。

②other，the other 和 another 可用作形容词，而 others 只能用作代词。例如：

Here are some books. Three of them are science books. The others are story books.

这里有一些书，其中三本是科技书，其余的就是故事书。

He is warm-hearted. He often helps other people.

他非常热心，经常帮助别人。

I don't like this jacket. Will you please show me another one?

我不喜欢这件夹克，请你再给我拿一件看看。

③one... the other 指两个人或物中的"一个……，另一个"，为特指。例如：

Here are two pencils. One is Tom's, the other is Mary's.

这里有两支铅笔，一支是汤姆的，另一支是玛丽的。

④one... another 表示泛指的"一个……，另一个"。例如：

One man may like to drink tea while another man may like to drink coffee.

一个可能想喝茶，而另一个可能想喝咖啡。

考题： The manager believes prices will not rise by more than ________ four percent.

A. any other　　B. the other　　C. another　　D. other

答案解析：C。another 常放在数词前面表示"另外，又"，题干的意思是：价格不会再增长超过 4%。

考题： —Could we see each other at 3 o'clock this afternoon?

—Sorry, let's make it ________ time.

A. other's　　B. the other　　C. another　　D. other

答案解析：C。根据上下文，应选用 another time 表示"下次（改个时间）"。

三、复合形容词

根据复合形容词的构词特征，共可归纳为 8 类：

1. *n.* ＋*v.* -ed（名词与动词间含逻辑主谓关系）：hand-made ware 手工艺品；sun-tanned skin 晒黑的皮肤；market-driven economy 市场经济

www.TopSage.com

2. *n.* +*v.* -ing(名词与动词间含逻辑动宾关系)：mouthwatering food 让人垂涎的食品；time-wasting searches 耗时的搜寻

3. *adj.* /*adv.* +*v.* -ing：high-achieving students 优等生；easygoing professor 随和的教授

4. *adj.* /*adv.* +*v.* -ed：well-meant action 善意之举；new-born babies 新生儿

5. *adj.* +*n.* -ed：orange-colored dress 桔红色的裙子；absentminded person 心不在焉者

6. *adj.* +*adj.* ：bitter-sweet memories 苦乐参半的回忆；deafmute people 聋哑人

7. *n.* +*adj.* ：sky-blue wall 天蓝色的墙壁；duty-free goods 免税商品

8. *num.* +*n.* 单数：a five-year plan 5 年计划

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 18 He often does this!

本课重点和难点

- 指示代词 this，that，these，those 的用法
- 表示方位的介词
- 完全动词 have 的用法

本课词汇

pub [pʌb] *n.* 小酒店
landlord [ˈlændlɔːd] *n.* 店主
bill [bil] *n.* 1. 发票 2. 招贴，海报，广告 3. 议案
pay the bill 付账

课文详解

1. After I had had lunch at a village pub, I looked for my bag. 我在一家乡村小酒店吃过午饭之后，就找我的提包。

● at a village pub：在酒店吃饭常用介词"at"。

pub 是 public house（酒吧）的缩略形式，在英国英语的口语中较常用。

e. g. We drink at the pub every Saturday night.

After he finished his work，he went to the pub for a drink.

● have lunch：吃午饭，在本句中与 had 助动词连用，构成了过去完成时。have 是本课的重点词汇，其用法详见"语法精析"。

2. I had left it on a chair beside the door and now it wasn't there. 我曾把它放在门边的椅子上，可这会儿它不见了。

● leave

1）离开，出发。

e. g. He left at 7 p. m..

2）把……留下，遗留，丢下，听任其在某处。

e. g. Leave the books on the desk.

Don't leave her waiting outside in the rain.

3）作名词，请假，准假。

e. g. He went home on leave.

Tom asked for leave of sickness.

3. In a few minutes he returned with my bag and gave it back to me. 一会儿工夫他拿着我的提包回来了，他还给了我。

★give 构成的近义词组辨析：

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

1)give sth. back:归还,送还。

e. g. He gave back my books last Sunday.

2)give in sth.:上交,呈交,相当与 hand in。

e. g. You must give in your term paper in two weeks.

3)give in to sb.:向某人屈服,让步。

e. g. He has given in to my views.

4)give sb./oneself up to sb.:投降,自首,把……交给。

e. g. We must give the thief up to the police.

5)give up:放弃做某事。

e. g. He gave up smoking last month.

6)give sth. away:赠送,分配,泄露等。

e. g. I gave away all my toys to my neighbour's son.

7)give sth. off:放出烟、气味。

e. g. The house is giving off heavy smoke,so it must be on fire.

4. He often does this! 他常干这种事!

● He 在文中指 the dog,动物常用 it 来代替,但是西方人对待自己的宠物、家畜时,常把它们人格化,用 he or she 等来表示亲切或者喜爱之意。

语法精析

一、指示代词 this,that,these,those 的用法

(一)this,that,these,those 的用法(这些词通常指物,也可指人)

1. 作主语。例如:

This is a map. 这是一张地图。

Whose pens are those? 那些是谁的钢笔?

2. 作宾语。例如:

Have you read this? 你读过这个吗?

I like these but she likes those. 我喜欢这些,而她喜欢那些。

3. 作表语。例如:

Her plan is this. 她的计划是这样的。

His worries are those. 他的烦恼就是那些。

4. 作定语。例如:

I don't like that man. 我不喜欢那个人。

She is fond of those books. 她喜欢那些书。

考题: The information on the Internet gets around much more rapidly than ________ in the newspaper.

A. it B. those C. one D. that

答案解析: D。题干中不可数名词 information 的替代词应采用 that。

考题: Little joy can equal ________ of a surprising ending when you read stories.

A. that B. those C. any D. some

答案解析: A。下画线处是前面出现的不可数名词 joy 的替代词,表示"(阅读小说时令人意外的故事结局所带来的)乐趣"。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

（二）指示代词的用法区别

1. this 和 these 一般指在空间和时间上较近的事物，that 和 those 一般指在空间和时间上较远的事物。例如：

This is a map of China and that is map of the world.

这是一张中国地图，那是一张世界地图。

They are living together in these days. 这些日子里他们生活在一起。

In those years they led a hard life. 在那些岁月里，他们生活很艰难。

2. this 和 these 常指后面将要讲到的事物，有启下的作用，that 和 those 常指前面已经讲到过的事物，起承上的作用。例如：

I shall say this to you: he is an honest man. 我将对你说这点：他是一个诚实的人。

Please remember these words: we want peace, but we are not afraid of war.

请记住这些话：我们热爱和平，但是我们不害怕战争。

He felt ill. That is why he didn't come. 他病了，那就是他没来的原因。

3. 在电话中，this 表示打电话者，that 表示接电话的对方。例如：

A: Hello! This is John Smith(speaking).

B: Who's that please? （美国用 Who's is it? 或 Who's is this?）

4. that 和 those 可以代替名词，以避免重复。例如：

This book is as interesting as that you read last month.

这本书与你上个月读的那本书同样有趣。

The cars made in this city are more expensive than those made in that city.

这个城市造的汽车比那个城市造的汽车贵。

二、表示方位的介词

主要有：at, in; on, over, above; under, below, beneath; before, in front of; after, behind; about, around, round; out, out of, outside, outside of

1. at, in

1）在表示地点或场所时，一般来讲，in 表示较大的地方，at 表示较小的地方。如：

①at home, at the office, at school, at the bridge, at the crossroads, at the bus-stop, at the doctor's, at the hairdresser's 等。

②in a country, in a town, in a village, in the street, in the forest, in a field, in a desert 等。

③此外，常用 in 的情形：

in a line/in a row/in a queue　　in a photo/in a picture

in a mirror　　in the sky/in the world

in a book/in a newspaper/in a magazine/in a letter

in the front/back row(at the front/back)

in the front/back of the car

at the front/back of the building/cinema/classroom

2）可以用 in 或 at 来谈论建筑物，in 强调“在建筑物里面”，而 at 则笼统地指“在这个地点”，包括建筑物的里面及周围。例如：

at the restaurant：可以是在餐馆里面，也可以是在餐馆附近的某个地方。

in the restaurant：强调在餐馆里面。

at the cinema：在电影院（不一定是电影院里面）

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

in the cinema：则强调在电影院里面。

I enjoyed the film but it was very cold in the cinema. 我很喜欢那部电影，但电影院里很冷。

There were a lot of people in the shop. It was very crowded.

商店里很多人，很挤。

Go along this road, then turn left at the shop.

沿着这条路直走，然后在商店那儿左转。

2. on, over, above

三个词均有"在……之上"的含义，但意思有区别。

1) on 表示两事物表面接触。

Put away the books on the desk. 把桌上的书收好。

There is a notice on the door. It says"Do not disturb".

门上有个标志牌，上面写着"请勿打扰"。

此外，常用 on 的情形：

on the left/on the right 在左边/在右边　　on the first/second floor(在一/二楼)

on a map 在地图上

on the page/on page seven(但说：at the top/bottom of the page)在……页/在第 7 页

on the menu 在菜单上　　on the way to school 在上学路上

on the list 在目录上　　on a farm 在农场里

on the corner of the street 在街道转角处　　in the corner of the room 在屋子的角落里

考题： Fred, who had expected how it would go with his daughter, had a great worry ________ his mind.

A. on　　B. in　　C. with　　D. at

答案解析： A。on one's mind 为固定短语，意为"担忧"，in one's mind 则指"记住，挂在心上"。

2) over 表示两事物表面不仅有接触，而且有覆盖的含义。

Spread the cloth over the table. 在桌上铺开了衣服。

Mom put a rug over me when I was asleep.

我睡着的时候，妈妈在我身上盖了一块小毛毯。

over 还可表示"正上方"，如：

There is a bridge over the river. 河上有一座桥。

There is a lamp over the desk. 桌子正上方有个电灯。

3) above 仅表示上下方位关系，且事物表面不接触，也不是"正上方"。

The sun rose above the horizon. 太阳升出地平线。

There is a bridge above the river. 河上有一座桥。

4) 用于抽象概念表示职位高低时，over 和 above 的差别：

He is over me. = He is my immediate superior. 他是我的顶头上司。

He is above me. 他是我的上司。(一般不是直接上司)

3. below, under, beneath

1) under 表示"在……下方"，两物体可以接触，也可以间隔一定的距离。

I put the money under the mattress. 我把钱放在了床垫底下。

The dog is groveling under the table. 狗趴在桌下。

2) below 则一般表示在两个表面之间间隔一定的距离。

They live below us. 他们住在我们楼下。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

3)beneath 可用来替换 under，但在表示抽象含义时，最好用 beneath。

He would think it beneath him to tell a lie. 他认为说谎有失他的身份。

She married beneath her. 她嫁给了一个比她社会地位低的人。

三、完全动词 have 的用法

have 其常用法归纳如下：

1)have 可以作为助动词，构成各种完成时及完成进行时。

Have you seen John recently?

After he had had lunch, he went to the cinema.

2)have 作完全动词可以表示"具有，拥有"，常与 have got 互换，通常没有进行时态或被动语态，其疑问句形式既可以直接将 have 提前(英国英语语法)，也可以用助动词 do, did 等与 have 一起构成疑问句和否定句(美国英语语法)。

Has the house a good garden? (英式)

或 Does the house have a good garden? (美式)

I have got/have a lot of money.

① have 作完全动词还可以表示吃(eat)，喝(drink)，接受(take)，享受(enjoy)等，不能用 have got 替换。

have a bath＝take a bath

have lunch＝eat one's lunch

have a good time＝enjoy oneself

② have 作完全动词还可以与一名词连用，等于与该名词相当的动词含义(详见第 42 课)，不能用 have got 替换。

have a look＝look

have a try＝try

have a sleep ＝ sleep

③ have 还作使动词来用，近义于 cause sb. to do sth.。

常用 have sth. done 让/使某人做某事；蒙受；遭遇(详见第 66 课)

have sb. do sth. 要某人做某事

You'd better have that bad tooth pulled out.

I must have the wall printed.

He had his pocket picked.

What would you have me do?

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 19 Sold out

本课重点和难点

- 情态动词 can, could, may, might 的用法

本课词汇

hurry ['hʌri] *vi.* 匆忙走

【词组】Hurry up! 快点！ in a hurry 匆匆忙忙地，很快地

ticket-office *n.* 售票处

pity ['piti] *n.* 憾事，怜悯

What a pity! 真可惜！

exclaim [iks'kleim] *vi.* 呼喊，惊叫

【用法】exclaim 叫喊：因感觉"突然的喜悦或悲伤"而高声叫喊，又指用较高的调子发出 Oh, Ah 等感叹词。

return [ri'təːn] *v.* 退回

return tickets 退票

sadly ['sædli] *adv.* 沮丧地

课文详解

1. The play may begin at any moment. 剧马上就要开演了。

It may have begun already. 也许已经开演了呢。
May I have two tickets please? 我可以买两张票吗？

原文中的三句话分别用到了情态动词"may"，但却各有差异。本课对情态助动词 can/could 与 may/might 的用法进行比较，具体内容见本课的"语法精析"。

2. I'm sorry, we've sold out. 对不起，票已售完。

- I'm = I am, we've = we have。两个主语都用到了缩写形式，这种缩写形式只可用于口语和非正式文体中。
- sell out 含义较灵活，可以说"店主售完（某货）"，也可以说"货被售完"。

e.g. They have sold out of the books you want.
Tickets for tonight's film are sold out.

3. What apity! 真可惜！

- 这是个常用的表示可惜、遗憾的感叹句，相当与我们说：It is a pity that...

e.g. It is a pity that you can't come to my wedding.
What a pity(it is)you can't come to my wedding!

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

语法精析

情态动词 can,could,may,might 的用法

1. can/could 通常表示"能够"或"会"做某事。

may/might 则通常表示推测,其中 may 比 might 可能性大一些,而我们在第 17 课讲的 must 表推测时是可能性最大的。

He couldn't come yesterday and I can't come tomorrow.

昨天他没能来而明天我也来不了。

Tom may arrive at any moment. 汤姆很可能随时会到。

Tom might arrive at any moment. 汤姆也许随时会到吧。

2. may + have done/might + have done 表示对过去某动作的推测。(黄金考点)

must + have done 表示可能性最大。(参见 Lesson 17)

I can't find my sunglasses. I may/might have left them at the restaurant yesterday.

我找不到我的太阳镜。我很可能/也许昨天把它丢在饭店了。

否定形式:

may not + have done/might not + have done 过去也许没发生。

can not/could not + have done 过去肯定没发生。(黄金考点)

She may not have seen you at the party. 她当时可能没看到你。

She can not have finished the work so soon. 她不可能这么早就完工了。

3. can,could,may, might 都可以在口语中表示"请求,要求"征询"许可,但却有区别:

Can / Could / May / Might } I borrow your pen, please?

从 can 到 might 依次变得更加正式,更加客气、恭敬;其中 might 显得最犹豫,一般极少用到。对别人的要求,常见的回答有:

肯定:Of course/Sure/Certainly/No problem, etc.

否定:No/Sorry, you can't/may not, etc.

4)may as well/might as well + *v.* 表示"还不如……","还是做……得好"。(四级考点)

The cinema is a little far, so we may as well take a taxi there.

I have only one yuan left, so I may as well go home on foot.

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 20 One man in a boat

本课重点和难点

● 非谓语结构——动名词的用法

本课词汇

catch [kætʃ] *v.* 抓到
fisherman ['fiʃəmən] *n.* 钓鱼人，渔夫
boot [buːt] *n.* 靴子
waste [weist] *adj.* 废弃的，没用的 *v.* 浪费，消耗 *n.* 1. 废物 2. 浪费
realize ['riəlaiz] (= realise) *vt.* 认识到，体会到，实现

课文详解

1. Fishing is my favorite sport. I often fish for hours without catching anything. 钓鱼是我最喜爱的一项运动，我经常一钓几小时却一无所获。

● 这两句话中的 fishing 和 catching 都是动名词。下文的句子中大量地出现了动名词，动名词在英语中使用极其广泛，其具体用法参见“语法精析”。

2. Instead of catching fish, they catch old boots and rubbish. 他们往往鱼钓不到，却钓上来些旧靴子和垃圾。

● instead of：代替，反而，有时可与 in place of 替换。

instead：单独使用一般放在句尾。

e. g. Instead of shoes, she bought a dress.

If you don't like fish, you can have some meat instead.

3. I always go home with an empty bag. 我总是空着袋子回家。

● with：表示“有，具有，持有”，“随身带着……”等。

e. g. The girl with long hair is good at knitting.

Who is the man with a scar on the face.

4. It is a waste of time. 这是在浪费时间。

● It is a waste of time doing sth. 表示做某事就是在浪费时间。

e. g. It is a waste of time trying to persuade him.

语法精析

非谓语结构——动名词

英语中非谓语结构有：动名词、不定式、现在分词、过去分词及独立主格。这类结构在句

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

中不可单独充当谓语，不受主语人称和数的限制，但可充当其他句子成分。

(一)动名词的构成形式

	主动形式	被动形式
一般式	doing	being done
完成式	having done	having been done

(二)动名词的特征

动名词 v-ing 既具有动词特征，后面可以接宾语、状语等，也具有名词特征，前面可以带冠词或被形容词、代词及名词所有格修饰。

He enjoys playing basketball.（动词特征，带有宾语）

Do you mind my smoking here?（名词特征，带所有格）

(三)动名词的用法

1. 动名词可作主语。

Sleeping late is a bad habit.

Watching TV is my favorite pastime.

2. 动名词可作主语补足语。

My job is teaching English.

His favorite sport is playing football.

3. 动名词可作宾语。

She is afraid of staying in that house alone.

Tom is used to getting up late.

4. 介词＋动名词组合在句中作各种状语：伴随状语、时间原因、方式状语等。常用的可带动名词的介词有 without，instead of，before，after，for，by，on 等。（黄金考点）

He will be punished without passing the test.（条件）

He sat there without saying anything.（伴随）

Tom always knocks before entering a room.（时间）

John apologized to me for coming late.（原因）

(四)强调动名词部分的动作在主语动作之前先发生，便可用到动名词的完成式

John apologized for having interrupted you.

He congratulated me on having won the speech contest.

(五)动名词的否定式是在动名词的前面直接加"not"

He was punished for not having finished his homework.

Tom was angry at not being told the truth.

(六)一些动词后只能用动名词作宾语

其后只能用动名词作宾语的动词有：appreciate，avoid，consider，delay，dislike，enjoy，escape，feel like，finish，can't help，involve，overlook，permit，postpone，practise，risk，can't stand，suggest，tolerate，understand 等。例如：

I will overlook your being so rude to my sister this time but don't let it happen again.

这次我可以宽恕你对我姐姐的无礼，但不要再发生这样的事。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

考题: The parents suggested ________ in the hotel room but their kids were anxious to camp out during the trip.

A. sleep　　B. to sleep

C. sleeping　　D. having slept

答案解析:C。suggest 后应接名词性成分作宾语,不能接表示人的间接宾语。

(七)接动名词和接动词不定式有区别的动词

1. 表示喜好的 like, love, prefer, hate, dislike 等词汇后接动名词作宾语时侧重表示抽象的、经常性的动作,接不定式作宾语时侧重表示具体的、临时性的动作。

2. begin, start 后接动名词通常表示有意识地开始某动作,后接不定式通常指动作自动或者突然开始。

3. forget, remember 后接动名词表示已做过的事(动作已经完成),后接不定式表示未做的事(动作尚未发生)。

4. regret 后接动名词指"懊恼或后悔做了某事"(事情已发生),后接不定式表示"遗憾要做某事"(不定式中的动词通常是"tell, say, inform" 等)。

5. stop 后接动名词表示停止正在做的事,后接不定式表示停下正在做的事去做别的事。

6. try 后接动名词表示"试着做某事",后接不定式表示"设法做成某事"(不一定成功)。

7. mean 后接动名词表示"意味着",后接不定式表示"企图,打算"。

8. 动词 allow, permit, advise, forbid 之后如果没有明确地指出允许、建议或禁止谁做什么事情时其后跟动名词(动名词在这里充当宾语),假如说明了允许、建议或禁止谁做什么事情时其后跟不定式(不定式在这里充当宾补)。

(八)其他用动名词的结构

1. have { difficulty / trouble / problem / (a lot of) fun / (lots of) pleasure / a hard time / a good time / a difficult time } + (in) doing sth.

2. can't help doing, can't resist doing, can't keep from doing, can't hold back from doing, can't keep back from doing,这些短语均表示"情不自禁……,不得不……"。

不过注意下列短语要接不定式:can't help but do, can't but do, can't choose but do, etc.

No one can help liking Tom, he is such a cute boy. 没有人不喜欢汤姆,他是一个如此可爱的男孩。

3. be worth doing,"值得做……"。主动形式表示被动的意思。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 21 Mad or not?

本课重点和难点

- few, a few, little, a little 的用法
- 数的表示法
- 情态动词的被动用法

本课词汇

mad [mæd] *adj*. 1. 发疯的 2. 恼火的，生气的 3. 狂热的，着迷的

【词组】be mad at sb./sth. 对某人某事恼火；be mad for/about/on 对……着迷

【辨析】crazy 和 mad 均表示"疯狂"。mad 着重指疯狂的状态，有愚蠢、轻率或失去理智而不能自控的意思。crazy 比 mad 更口语化，有人迷的、疯狂的意义，也指古怪荒诞的行为或事情，也可指由于年迈、疾病或强烈刺激等而引起的神经紊乱，但程度较前者轻。

reason [riːzn] *n*. 理由；理智 *v*. 推理，说服

【词组】by reason of 由于……；beyond/out of all reason 毫无道理；reason out 分析，推断；reason out of 力劝，说服

for some reason 由于某种原因

come into use 开始被使用

drive away 驱赶

knock down 撞倒，击倒

sum [sʌm] *n*. 1. 总数，和 2. 金额 3. 算术题 *vi*. 合计，总计

【词组】in sum 总而言之；sum up 总结，概括

【辨析】sum, total, amount 均有"总数，总和"的意思。sum 有指把几个简单数相加之和；total 指各项累加数之总和，含有包罗无遗之意；amount 与 sum 相近似，但指一种分项开支的累加数，有时指一笔钱。

a large sum of money 一大笔钱

determine [di'təːmin] *v*. 1. 确定，限定 2. 决定，决心

【词组】determine on/upon 决心，决定

课文详解

1. Aeroplanes are slowly driving me mad. 飞机正在逐渐把我逼疯。

- drive：除了有"驾驶"之意外，还有"赶，逼"等意思。

  e.g. drive sb. mad 把某人逼疯

  The thief was driven to the wall and gave in to the police.

  drive sb./sth. away 赶走

  drive sb./sth. into/out of sth. 把……赶进/出某地方

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. I live near an airport and passing planes can be heard night and day. 我住在一个机场附近，过往飞机日夜不绝于耳。

● passing：是现在分词作前置定语，表示“经过的，路过的”。

e. g. The ball went towards a passing boat.

He stopped a passing car.

● night and day：日日夜夜，夜以继日，还可以说 all night and all day。

● can be heard：是情态动词 can 构成的被动语态，属本课的语法重点。在第 10 课中，我们已经详细讲了其他基本时态的被动语态用法。

3. ...but for some reason it could not be used then. 但是由于某种原因当时未能启用。

● for some reason：由于某种原因。some 在这里不是指“一些”，而是“某个，某种”的意思。

这时只能接可数名词单数形式，相当于 a certain＋单数可数名词。

e. g. Some/A certain doctor is waiting for you outside.

The woman is inquiring about some/a certain patient.

4. ...it came into use...机场开始使用。

● come into use：是固定短语，表示“开始被使用”。

e. g. The bridge came into use last month.

When did your car come into use.

5. I am one of the few people left. 我是少数留下来的人中的一个。

● left 是过去分词作形容词用，通常只作后置定语，意为“剩余的，留下的”。

e. g. I am the only passenger left on the bus.

There is nothing left in the fridge.

6. I think this house will be knocked down by a passing plane. 有时我觉得这房子就要被一架飞过的飞机撞到。

● knock sb. /sth. down 击倒，打倒（knock 短语详解见第 6 课）

e. g. He was knocked down by a bus.

The boxer knocked his opponent down.

语法精析

一、few，a few，little，a little 的用法

(一)与名词搭配

a few，few 后面只能接可数名词复数；而 a little，little 后面只能接不可数名词。例如：

a few days，few boys

a little water，little money

(二)肯定/否定之别

a few，a little 意思是肯定的，相当于 some，表示“有一些”。而 few，little 意思是否定的，表示“很少，几乎没有”。例如：

① His theory is rather difficult, few people understand it. = Almost no people understand it. 他的理论很深奥，没什么人能够理解。

② His theory is rather difficult, but a few people understand it.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

他的理论很深奥,但却有一些人能够理解。

③I have little interest in English, so I am very poor at it.

我对英文没什么兴趣,所以学得很不好。

④ I have a little interest in English, so I like learning it.

我对英文有些兴趣,所以我喜欢学。

(三)与 only 或 very 搭配

我们只能说:only a little, only a few;而不能说:only few, only little。但为了强调否定意义,我们可说: very few, very little。

His theory is rather difficult and only a few students can understand it.

他的学说相当难,只有几个学生可以理解它。

考题: I hear ________ boys in your school like playing football in their spare time, though others prefer basketball.

A. quite a lot　　B. quite a few　　C. quite a bit　　D. quite a little

答案解析: B。a lot, a bit 后面需要加 of 再接名词,a little 可直接修饰不可数名词,四个选项中可以不加 of 直接修饰可数名词的只有 quite a few 了。

考题: —Are the new rules working?

—Yes. ________ books are stolen.

A. Few　　B. More　　C. Some　　D. None

答案解析: A。根据题干中"Yes"的提示,应选修饰可数名词的 few,表示"很少有书被偷"。

二、数的表示法

(一)基数词的构成和用法

数词是表示数目和顺序的词,分为基数词和序数词两种。基数词表示数量,序数词表示顺序。

1. 1～20 应逐个记忆,21～99 则先说"几十",加上连字符"-",再说"几"。

若是几百几十几,则第一个数后加百,后跟 and,再加上后面的一位(两位)数。

2. ten, hundred, thousand, million, billion 后面加 s 的用法。

上述几个单词前面有具体数字时,本身不加 s;但表示不定数目时单词后需加 s,且和 of 连用,即成 hundreds of, thousands of, millions of 及 billions of。tens of students 数十个学生, hundreds of people 数百人, thousands of stars 成千上万的星星, millions of years 数百万年等。基数词表示确切数目时不能加 s。

3. 年龄表示法。基数词表示年龄一般有以下几种方法:

①基数词(+years old)

②at (或 under) the age of+基数词

③a+基数词-year-old+名词

④of+基数词(+years)

4. 在与基数词合成的复合形容词作定语时,其中名词用单数。如:two-thousand-word, eighteen-year-old

5. 当基数词和序数词同时修饰一个名词时,序数词一般放在基数词前;但如果序数词充当描绘性修饰语时,则放在基数词后。

the first five students 前五名学生

He won three first prizes. 他三次获得第一名。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

6. 基数词在句中可作主语、宾语、定语、表语和同位语。

7. 基数词表顺序，置于名词之后；序数词表顺序，置于名词之前。

基数词与序数词都可表示顺序，但基数词往往放在名词之后，而序数词却放在名词之前，且与 the 连用。例如：

part one＝the first part 第一部分

(二)数词的其他表示法和用法

1. 分数表达法。

1)分数表达，分子用基数词，分母用序数词，且该序数词是可数的，即分子大于 1 时，序数词使用复数形式。

A hundredth means one percent. 百分之一就是一个百分点。

2) 复杂的分数的读法为“分子＋over＋分母”，分子和分母都用基数词。

125/6789 one hundred and twenty-five over six thousand seven hundred and eighty-nine

考题： He did it ________ it took me.

A. one-third a time B. one-third time

C. the one-third time D. one-third the time

答案解析： D。表示倍数的 time 用于前后比较时习惯上要与定冠词连用，并且在定冠词和 time 的前面加上表示倍数的数词。

2. 小数。

小数点读 point，零读 zero 或 nought。小数点后的数字按个位基数词依次读出。

2.5—two point five，0.3—zero(nought) point three，0.03—zero point zero three

3. 百分数。

读法为基数词＋percent 来表示(常常和 by 连用，表示“百分之……”之意，作状语)，写法用基数词＋%表示。

95%—ninety-five percent，0.06%—zero point zero six percent

Forty percent of the students have come already. 百分之四十的学生已经来了。

4. 加、减、乘、除、乘方的表示法。

1)加法的表达。如表达几加几是多少，可用“What/How much＋is＋基数词＋and＋基数词?”；如表达“几加几等于几”可用“基数词＋and＋基数词＋is＋基数词”。

2)减法的表达。如表达几减几是多少，可用“What/How much＋is＋基数词＋minus＋基数词?”；如表达“几减几等于几”可用“基数词＋minus＋基数词＋is＋基数词”。

3)乘法的表达。如表达几乘几是多少，可用“What/How much＋is＋基数词＋times＋基数词?”；如表达“几乘几等于几”可用“基数词＋times＋基数词＋is＋基数词”。

4)除法的表达。如表达几除几是多少，可用“What/How much＋is＋基数词＋divided by＋基数词”；如表达“几除几等于几”可用“基数词＋divided by＋基数词＋is＋基数词”。

5)乘方。3^2—the second power of three，6^5—the fifth power of six

5. 某人“几十岁”的表示法。

表示某人“几十岁”，要用基数词的复数形式。例如：

二十几岁—in one's twenties(指 20 岁至 29 岁)

四十来岁—in one's early forties

快四十岁—in one's late thirties(be close to 40)

五十多岁—in one's fifties

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

考题： The hero of the story is an artist in his ________.

A. thirtieth　　B. thirty　　C. thirty's　　D. thirties

答案解析：D。表示"有三十多岁"的意思，应用"in sb.'s thirties"的形式。

6. "每隔……天"的表达法。

每隔一天—every two days/every other day/every second day

每隔几天—every few days

7. 倍数的句型。

1)倍数＋as＋形容词(副词)＋as

Tom runs three times as fast as I. 汤姆比我跑得快三倍。

2)倍数＋形容词(副词)比较级＋than

This room is twice larger than that one. 这个房间比那个房间大两倍。

考题： I like this jacket better than that one, but it costs almost three times ________.

A. as much　　B. as many　　C. so much　　D. so many

答案解析：A。题干的句意是：我更喜欢这件上衣而不喜欢那件，但这件上衣的价钱几乎是那件的三倍。表示"A是B的多少倍"可以用A＋谓语动词＋倍数＋as＋形容词原级(＋as＋B)"结构来表示，如果上文已经提到将A、B相比较，那么在两者比较时可以将该结构中的第二个as和比较对象B省略掉。

三、情态动词的被动用法

1. 情态动词 ＋ be done，指动作发生在现在或未来，常见用法有：

can / could / may / might / must / have to / should ＋ be done

The letter has to be written again.

Your car can be repaired.

2. 情态动词＋have been done，表示动作发生在过去，常见用法有：

must / can't / may / might / should / needn't / shouldn't ＋ have been done

I can't find my bag. It must have been stolen.

Your compositions should have been handed in yesterday.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 22 A glass envelope

本课重点和难点

- 介词的固定搭配用法

本课词汇

dream [driːm] *vi.* 梦想

dream of 梦见

age [eidʒ] *n.* 年龄

channel [ˈtʃænəl] *n.* 1. 海峡，水道 2. 波道，信道 3. 路线 4. 频道

【辨析】tunnel 隧道，地道；canal 运河，人工河

the Channel 英吉利海峡

throw [θrəu] *vt.* 抛

【词组】throw at 向……扔去；throw away 扔掉；throw off 扔掉，摆脱，匆匆脱掉（衣服）；throw sb. into prison 把某人投入监狱；throw up 呕吐，吐出（食物）

课文详解

1. My daughter, Jane, never dreamed of receving a letter from a girl of her own age in Holland. 我的女儿简从未想过会接到荷兰一位同龄姑娘的来信。

- dream of/about doing sth. 梦想着做某事

e. g. He dreams of settling down in New York.

I dream of going abroad.

- of one's own age 同龄人

e. g. Tom was one of the most famous writers of his own age.

2. Last year, we were traveling across the Channel and Jane put a piece of paper with her name and address on it into a bottle. 去年，当我们横渡英吉利海峡时，简把写有她姓名和住址的一张纸条装进了一只瓶子。

- across 表示横渡，横穿，the Channel = the English Channel。Channel 大写且单词前有定冠词 the，表示英吉利海峡。
- with 在这里表示“带有，具有”等意思。

e. g. A woman with an umbrella came in.

3. She never thought of it again. 此后她就再也没去想那只瓶子。

- think of 考虑，想，想起等。

e. g. I will think of you.

He often thinks of the girl he met at the party.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

4. Both girls write to each other now. 现在这两位姑娘定期通信了。

● each other：彼此，相互，一般指两者之间。

one another：相互，常用于三者以上之间，有时可互换。

e. g. Students should help each other/one another.

5. Letters will cost a little more, but they will certainly travel faster. 这样会稍微多花点钱，但肯定快得多了。

● cost：花费，价钱为……

★ 近义词辨析：cost，spend，take，pay

1)cost：指花费，主语通常为某物。

e. g. The book cost me 30 yuan.

It costs a lot to buy a house.

2)spend：作花费，既可指花时间做某事，也可指花钱，主语常常是人。

e. g. Jane spends half an hour learning English every day.

I spent all my savings on the car.

3)take：一般只指花掉某人多长时间，主语是事物或用"it"作形式主语。

e. g. It took him two hours to finish the exercises.

These things will take me two weeks.

4)pay：指付钱，付账，主语通常是人。

e. g. I will pay for your dinner.

I paid the shopkeeper ＄200.

语法精析

介词的固定搭配用法

与介词连用的词主要有动词、名词和形容词。因此，我们也将常见的介词短语按此分类。

(一)与动词搭配的短语

1. 动词＋介词：此类结构相当于一个及物动词，可用于被动语态。

The hunter aimed at the lion and fired, but missd.

猎人对准狮子开了枪，但是没有打中。

2. 动词＋副词：这类动词短语有的可用作不及物动词，有的可用作及物动词，需要具体情况具体分析。在高考中用作及物动词的情况相对来说更多，当后面的宾语是名词时，作宾语的名词既可以置于动词短语之后，也可以置于动词短语之中，但作宾语的代词只能置于动词短语之中。

Don't talk back when I'm speaking to you. 我和你说话的时候不要还嘴。

3. 动词＋名词＋介词：此类动词短语只能用作及物动词，动词短语中的名词之前可以有形容词修饰，作定语。

Please pay attention to what the teacher says. 请注意老师说的话。

4. 动词＋副词＋介词：此类动词短词只能用作及物动词。

The money their son spent in French added up to 5,000 dollars. 他们的儿子在法国总共花了 5000 美元。

考题： I don't ________ rock'n'roll. It's much too noisy for my taste.

www.TopSage.com

A. go after B. go away with C. go into D. go in for

答案解析:D。go after 的基本含义是"追逐,追求",go away with 的基本含义是"跟……走开",go into 的基本含义是"进入;加入;探究",go in for 的基本含义是"参加(比赛等),爱好;沉迷于(音乐、跳舞等)"。本题应用 go in for 表示"爱好,欣赏(摇滚)"之意,注意题干中的 go in for 属于"动词+副词+介词"结构的动词短语,类似的例句还有:I don't go in for sports. 我不喜欢体育运动。/ She goes in for stamp collecting. 她爱好集邮。

(二)与形容词搭配的短语

1. 常与 to 连用的形容词:

equal, favorable, faithful, familiar, good, hostile, loyal, parallel, opposite, responsible, sensible, useful, similar, used

2. 常与 about 连用的形容词:

anxious, careful, careless, certain, considerate, enthusiastic, guilty, happy, mad, sad, sure

3. 常与 for 连用的形容词:

available, bad, convenient, eager, eligible, good, grateful, homesick, famous, hungry, necessary, noted, ready, responsible, sorry, suitable

4. 常与 with 连用的形容词:

angry, acquainted, bored, careful, ill, popular, strict, busy, familiar, impatient, sympathetic

5. 常与 of 连用的形容词:

恐惧:afraid/frightened/terrified/seared of

好恶:ashamed/envious/fond/jealous/proud/tired of

态度:suspicious/critical/tolerant/ignorant of

意识:aware/conscious of

其他:capable/incapable, full, guilty, hopeful, independent

6. 常与 at 连用的形容词:

angry, bad, clever, disappointed, disgusted, good, marvelous, quick, skillful, useless, weak

对于上述与介词搭配的形容词,我们注意到,同一个形容词有的可与不同的介词进行搭配使用,此时构成的短语一般在意思和使用上均有所不同。例如:

- sth. be familiar to sb. 某事为某人所熟悉
- sb. be familiar with sth. 某人对某事熟悉

- good at 擅长于
- good to 对……友好
- good for 对……有益

因此,在熟悉使用这些短语的同时,还要注意区分和比较同一形容词与不同介词搭配在意义上的差别。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 23 A new house

本课重点和难点

- 形容词作修饰词时的位置
- 存在句 there be

本课词汇

complete [kəm'pliːt] *adj*. 完整的，完全的，完成的 *vt*. 完成，使完整

【辨析】complete 指由许多部分组成的整体，着重各个部分都能完整充足；whole 指一件东西的一切重要部分完好无缺或数量、面积没有减少。

modern ['mɔdən] *adj*. 现代的，新式的，近代的

strange [streindʒ] *adj*. 1. 古怪的，奇怪的 2. 陌生的，生疏的

【辨析】strange 是指对从未见过或听过的、不寻常的、新颖的事而感到奇怪，强调生疏、陌生；queer 强调不正常，暗示古怪的和几分可笑的，因此有"古怪的，怪僻的"意思；odd 强调违反正常情况，有"稀奇"的含义，还暗示怪僻的意义，因而令人有一种困惑的奇异感觉；curious 是从有好奇心转义为奇异的。

district ['distrikt] *n*. 1. 区，行政区 2. 地区，区域

课文详解

1. I had a letter from my sister yesterday. 昨天我收到姐姐的一封信。

● have a letter from sb.：收到某人来信，相当于我们在第 4 课学的：receive/get a letter from sb./hear from sb.。

2. In her letter, she said that she would come to England next year. 在信中她说明年将到英国来。

● "she said that..."及下文中"I told her that..."都是间接引语，详见第 15 课"语法精析"。

3. Work on it had begun before my sister left. 这栋房子在我姐姐离开之前就已动工了。

● work：工作，作业，是抽象的不可数名词，前面可以不加冠词。

e. g. Music is everything to me. (music 作抽象不可数名词)

Life is short. (life 是抽象不可数名词)

● 本句用 before 引导时间状语从句，had done 过去完成时强调动作在此之前先发生，详见第 14 课"语法精析"。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

4. There is a lovely garden. It is a very modern house, so it looks strange to some people. 这个房子有一个漂亮的花园，是一栋非常现代化的住宅，因此在有些人看来很古怪。

● There be 句型结构表示说明人或物的存在，时态较灵活，而且 be 的单复数取决于紧跟在后面的第一个名词的单复数形式，即就近原则。

e. g. There is a purse and two pens in the drawer.

There were many people at the party last night.

● It 可以为避免重复某个名词或事情，而用来指代；也可以指时间、距离、天气，作形式主语、形式宾语等，不可以用 there be 句型代替（详见第 2 课"课文详解"）。

e. g. It is sunday today.

It is raining again.

语法精析

一、形容词作修饰词时的位置

（一）单个形容词在句中的位置

在一个名词短语中，形容词作定语修饰一个名词时，位置是：限定词＋形容词＋名词。

限定词	形容词	名词
an	interesting	book
a	beautiful	smile
my	best	friend

I am reading an interesting book. 我在读一本有趣的书。

He has a beautiful smile. 他的微笑很漂亮。

注意：修饰 something, anything, nothing, everything, somebody, someone, anybody, anyone, nobody, no one, everybody, everyone 等不定代词的形容词要后置。

例如：

I have something important to say. 我有重要的话要说。

There is something wrong with my computer. 我的电脑出了一些毛病。

（二）多个形容词修饰名词的词序问题

一个中心名词若有多个形容词修饰，此时这些形容词前后位置关系要遵循一定的规则。这个规则一般是：观点形容词（opinion adjective）＋描绘形容词（descriptive adjective）

观点形容词：即完全表述个人主观上对事物的看法的形容词。如：good, lovely, beautiful, handsome, comfortable 等。

描绘形容词：有人又称之为描述事实形容词（fact adjective），即用来描述事物本身固有的特征的形容词，是对事物进行客观上的表述。如事物的颜色：blue, yellow, dark, white；事物的形状：round, square 等。

	观点形容词＋描绘形容词
观点形容词：beautiful, good	a beautiful white table a good red apple
描绘形容词：white, red, old	The beautiful old table was my grandmother's. 那张好看的旧桌子曾是我祖母的。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

由于事物的客观上的属性可以有多种，因此，描绘形容词又有以下进一步分类：

描绘形容词的分类及词序					
尺寸大小 (size)	形状 (shape)	新旧 (age)	颜色 (colour)	国籍、出处 (origin)	质地材料 (material)
large, big, small, long	wide, round, square	new, old, ancient	white, red, yellow	Chinese, American	wood, stone, gold

综合上述，在名词短语中，名词前面修饰语的排序大体是：

限定词→描绘性形容词→尺寸大小→形状→新旧→颜色→国籍、出处→质地材料→中心名词

① This beautiful big old red Chinese wooden table was my grandmother's. 这张红色的、中国式的旧木桌曾是我奶奶的，它又大又漂亮。

② There was a large round wooden table in the room. 房间里有一张大圆木桌。

③ The man was carrying a small black plastic bag. 那男人提着一个小黑塑料袋。

二、存在句 there be

there be 结构在英语中是一种常见的句子结构。there 本身无词义，其后的动词 be 具有"存在"意义，可用于各种时态。

1. 基本句型是：There＋be＋主语＋其他(状语等)。

there 在这样的结构中是引导词，本身无词义，应弱读。动词 be 是谓语，有时态变化，也可与情态动词和助动词连用。动词 be 要和后面的主语在数方面一致。

There is a small village at the foot of the mountain. 山脚下有一个小村庄。

2. 当有两个或两个以上的主语时，动词 be 常和最近的那个主语一致，但实际使用上也可以不这样。

There was (were) a cow, three horses and several sheep on the small farm.

这个小农场里有一头牛、三匹马和几只羊。

3. there be 结构的疑问式，只需将 be 移到 there 之前，回答用 yes 或 no，后接简略答语。如：

Is there a computer in your room? 你房间里有电脑吗？

Yes, there is. 是的，有。

No, there isn't. 不，没有。

4. there be 结构的否定式，只需将 not 加在 be 之后或在主语前加否定词 no。如：

There isn't a computer in the room. 房间里没有电脑。

除动词 be 以外，谓语动词还可以是情态动词。如：

There must be something wrong. 一定出什么毛病了。

某些状态动词如：remain, lie, exist, live 以及表示位置转移的动词如：arrive, come, enter, follow, rise 等也可以用 there... 结构。如：

There remain some problems to be solved. 这些问题有待解决。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 24 It could be worse

本课重点和难点

- 复习感叹句的结构
- 复习直接引语、间接引语

本课词汇

manager [ˈmænidʒə] *n.* 经理

upset [ʌpˈset] *v.* 1. 弄翻，打翻 2. 扰乱，使不安

【词组】upset a truck 弄翻卡车；make sb. upset 使某人心烦意乱

sympathetic [simpəˈθetik] *adj.* 同情的，共鸣的

complain [kəmˈplein] *vi.* /*vt.* 1. 抱怨，诉苦 2. 申诉，控告

【用法】complain 抱怨，叫屈：一般用语，指某人心中对某人或某物不满并对另外的人诉说某人不对。

wicked [ˈwikid] *adj.* 坏的，不道德的，居心不良的

contain [kənˈtein] *v.* 1. 包含，容纳 2. 等于

【用法】contain 容纳，包含：一般用语，指某物所容纳的东西是其组成的一部分，有时指一个大物体容纳着许多小物体。

honesty [ˈɔnisti] *n.* 诚实，老实

【用法】honesty 诚实，正直：一般用语，指与人相处时公正，不欺骗、不说谎、不偷窃，遵守道德标准。

课文详解

1. I had just lost £50 and I felt very upset. 我刚刚丢了 50 英镑，我感到非常苦恼。

- lose：丢失，遗失，失去，丧失等，用法较广泛。

e. g. lose one's balance 跌倒
lose heart 灰心，缺信心
lose one's heart to sb. 爱上某人
lose face 丢脸，感到羞愧
lose oneself in doing sth. 全神贯注的做某事

- feel upset：感到苦恼，feel 作系动词，后面接形容词表示心情或感觉。

e. g. I feel happy/excited.
She feels hungry/angry.

2. Everyone's losing money these days. 现在大家都在丢钱。

- 这句话用了现在进行时，表示动作的频繁性，说明世道很乱，随时会有人丢钱（详见第 2 课“语法精析”）。

3. He started to complain about this wicked world but was interrupted by a knock at the door. 他

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

开始抱怨这个邪恶的世界，却被一阵敲门声打断了。

● 1)start to do/doing sth.：开始做、着手做某事。

e. g. It started to rain/raining.

Workers started to build/building the new road.

2)start out/off：动身，出发。

e. g. They started out at 6 a. m..

4. Well, I said to the manager. 是啊，我对那位经理说。

● Well 在这里是感叹词，表示惊讶，让步等多种感情，此处表示作者松了一口气。

语法精析

复习感叹句的结构（参见 Lesson 2）

复习直接引语、间接引语（参见 Lesson 15，39）

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 25 Do the English speak English?

本课重点和难点

- 并列句

本课词汇

railway ['reilwei] *n.* 铁路
porter ['pɔːtə] *n.* 搬运工,门房
several ['sevərəl] *adj.* 几个,若干,数个
foreigner ['fɔrinə] *n.* 外国人
wonder ['wʌndə] *n.* 1. 惊奇,惊异 2. 奇事,奇迹 *v.* 1. 诧异 2. 纳闷,想知道
【词组】no wonder 难怪,怪不得

课文详解

1. Do the English speak English? 英国人讲英语吗?

● English:作名词时指"英语",也作形容词"英国的,英国人的"。与定冠词连用构成 the English=the English people,谓语动词必须用复数形式,类似的还有:the Chinese 中国人,the French 法国人,the Japanese 日本人等。

e. g. The English often talk about the weather.
The Chinese are very hospitable.

2. I not only spoke English very carefully, but very clearly as well. 我英语不但讲得非常认真,而且还很清楚。

● 本句话是由 not only...but...as well 所连接的并列句。并列句通常由并列连词将两个或两个以上的几个分句连接到一起,从而省略重复的成分,使句子整齐而简练。

3. I did not know the way to my hotel, so I asked a porter. 我不知道去饭店的路怎么走,于是向一个搬运工打听。

● the way to somewhere:通往,前往……的路。(介词 to 表示目的)

e. g. I know I have a long way to success.
He stood at the entrance to the cave.

● my hotel:不是作者拥有的酒店,而是指他要去住的那家酒店。

4. My teacher never spoke English like that! 我的老师从来不那样讲英语。

●like that:像那样。like 是介词,表示"像……一样",其反义词为 unlike。

e. g. I've never seen a man like you.
My son is unlike me in every respect.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

语法精析

并列句

(一)and,but,for,so 连接的并列句(参见 Lesson 11)

(二)or,weather... or,not only... but(also),not only... but... as well,either... or,neither/not... nor,both... and...的用法

1. or:或者;否则(=if not,otherwise);也不(=and neither)。

You may stay at home,or(you may)go with us. 你可以待在家里,或者和我们一同去。

2. whether... or...:无论……还是……。

Whether at work or at home,she always looks very cheerful.

无论在家还是在工作,她都显得兴致勃勃。

3. either... or...:要么……要么,不是……就是。

Either you are mad or I am. 不是你疯了就是我疯了。

4. neither/not... nor...:既不……也不……。

He answered me,but he spoke neither/did not speak slowly nor clearly.

他回答了我,但他说得既不慢也不清楚。

5. not only/just... but(also),not only/just... but... as well:不仅……而且……。

I not only/just spoke English very carefully,but(also) very clearly as well. 我说英语不仅仔细而且清晰。

6. both... and...:……与……(二者)都。

Both he and his mother teach English. 他和他母亲都教英语。

(三)并列连词 as well as,as much as,rather than 的用法

1. as well as:而且,以及。

the whole as well as the parts(... as well as...强调前项)
the whole and the parts as well(... and... as well 强调后项)
not only the whole but(also) the parts(not only... but also... 强调后项)
both the whole and the parts(both... and... 前后项均强调)

2. as much as:也,同样。

The film is suitable for adults as much as for children. 该电影对成人与孩子都适合。

3. rather than:而不是。例如:

Many college students read purely for information rather than for deep thought and pleasure. 许多大学生阅读纯粹是为了获取信息,而非为了深思与消遣。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 26 The best art critic

本课重点和难点

- 复习一般现在时、现在进行时、一般过去时
- 疑问代词

本课词汇

art [ɑːt] *n.* 1. 美术，艺术 2. 技艺，技术 3. 文科，人文科学

【词组】a work of art 一件美术品；the fine arts 美术；art ware 工艺品；by art 用诡计，以人工；art gallery 美术馆，画廊

【用法】art 技艺，本领：指某人完成某项工作的能力。有时指操作技巧。

critic ['kritik] *n.* 批评家，评论家

paint [peint] *vt.* (用颜料等)画，油漆

pretend [pri'tend] *v.* 假装，装作

【词组】pretend to do sth. 假装做某事

【用法】pretend 佯装，伪装：指某人已经知道某事的实情，但为了欺骗他人，故意装做不知。有时指以假当真。

pattern ['pætən] *n.* 1. 型，模式，样式 2. 花样，图案

in the same way 同样地

curtain ['kəːtn] *n.* 窗帘，门帘，幕(布)

material [mə'tiəriəl] *n.* 材料，原料，资料 *adj.* 物质的，实质的，具体的

appreciate [ə'priːʃieit] *vt.* 评价，欣赏

【用法】1. appreciate 表示"感激"时，其后直接跟(动)名词。

2. appreciate 重视，赏识：指某人因较深入理解某人或某物从而获得享受而对其产生好感。

else [els] *adj.* 别的

notice ['nəutis] *n.* 1. 通知，通告 2. 注意 3. 认识 *v.* 注意到，注意

【词组】take no notice of sth. 不注意，不理；take notice of sth. 注意；without notice 没有预先通知；come into notice 引起注意；give notice 通知

whether ['(h)weðə] *conj.* 1. 是否，会不会 2. 不管，不论

hang [hæŋ](hanged[hæŋd]hanged) *vt.* 1. 悬挂，吊 2. 吊死，绞死 *vi.* (hung[hʌŋ] hung)悬挂，吊着

critically ['kritikəli] *adv.* 批评地，吹毛求疵地

moment ['məumənt] *n.* 片刻

all right 行，好，可以

upside down ['ʌpsaid daun] *adj.* 颠倒的，混乱的

课文详解

1. I am an art student and I paint a lot of pictures. 我是个学艺术的学生，画了很多画。

● 这两句话及下文中大多数句子都用了一般现在时(详见第 2 课"语法精析")。有些表示状态和感觉的动词常用于一般现在时，而不用于进行时，如：appear，appreciate，believe，

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

feel，look like，like，foreget，remember 等。

e. g. People appreciate working with him.

I believe that sugar can make us fat.

2. Many people pretend that they understand modern art. They always tell you what a picture is 'about'. 有很多人装成很懂现代艺术的样子，总是告诉你一幅画的"意思"是什么。

● pretend that...及 tell you what...都是宾语从句，that 及各种疑问句都可以引导宾语从句，其具体形式如下：

1)在及物动词后面作宾语。

e. g. Tom thinks that English is beautiful.

Do you know when he will arrive?

2)在双宾语动词后作直接宾语。

e. g. He told me where the post office is.

I assure you that such things will never happen again.

3)在介词后面作宾语。

e. g. That depends on how hard you work.

They reached agreement about when they should set out.

4)在某些形容词后面作宾语。

e. g. I'm afraid that I can't come.

I am sure that he will pass the test.

5)that 引导单个宾语从句时，一般可以省略。

e. g. I pretended I was reading.

He thinks the picture is good.

3. We like them in the same way that we like pretty curtain material. 我们喜爱它们就像我们喜爱漂亮的窗帘布一样。

● in the same way that/as：像……一样，正如……一样。用来表示比较。

e. g. I am crazy about American movies in the same way that you like baseball.

4. I think that young children often appreciated modern pictures better than anyone else. 我觉得小孩子们往往比任何人都更能欣赏现代绘画。

● 对比 else 和 other：

1)else 作为"其他的"讲时，往往只能紧跟在不定代词(anything，someone，etc.)或特殊疑问词后面使用。

e. g. What else do you want?

I want nothing else but this pen.

2)other 作为"其他的"讲时，往往修饰名词，放在名词前面。the others 指"已提到过的其余部分"。

e. g. He prefers this coffee to other kinds.

One of the children is reading，the others are doing exercises.

5. But she always tells me whether my pictures are good or not. 但她总能说出我的画是好还是坏。

● 连接词 whether... or not..."是否"，表示选择，在宾语从句中可以与 if... or not 替换。

e. g. I wonder if/whether you can help me or not.

I don't care if she will apologize to me or not.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

● whether 还可以引导主语从句、表语从句、介词宾语从句和同位语从句，但 if 不可以。whether 后面可以紧接 or not，if 后面不能紧接 or not，只能分开用。

e.g. I don't care whether or not she will apologize to me.

Whether he will come or not has nothing to do with me.

语法精析

一、复习一般现在时、现在进行时、一般过去时（参见 Lesson 2,3）

二、疑问代词

疑问代词用来引导特殊疑问句，常考的疑问代词有：

指人：who，whom，whose

指物：what

既可指人又可指物：which

疑问代词在高考中的具体用法可以分名词性疑问代词和形容词性疑问代词两个方面：

（一）名词性疑问代词在疑问句中作主语、表语或宾语

高考中常见的名词性疑问代词有：who，whom，whose，what，which，其具体用法如下：

（1）who，whom，whose 用于指人，分别在疑问句中充当主语、宾语、定语（疑问代词 whose 作定语时所修饰的名词或代词可以被省略，whose 单独出现，这时 whose 在形式上充当主语、表语或者宾语，属于名词性疑问代词的用法）。例如：

Who is to take the chair? 谁将做主席？

Whom do you wish to speak to? 你找谁接电话？

Whose is this car? 这是谁的车子？

注意：在口语中常用 who 代替 whom，但前面存在介词时只能用 whom。例如：

Who/Whom are you looking for? 你在找谁？

With whom did you go? 你和谁一起去的？

（2）what 意为"什么"时用于事物。例如：

What do you mean? 你是什么意思？

注意：what 可以用于问人的"职业，身份"。例如：

What's your father? 你父亲是做什么的？

（3）which 意指人或物中的"哪一个"，表示一定范围内的选择（如果没有明确的选择范围，则应使用 what）。例如：

Which film do you want to see? 你要看哪一部电影？（存在选择范围）

（二）形容词性疑问代词在疑问句中作定语

常考的形容词性疑问代词有：whose，what，which。whose 通常指人，what，which 通常指物。例如：

Whose umbrella is this? 这是谁的伞？

What job do you want to do? 你想做什么工作？

Which team won? 哪个队赢了？

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 27 A wet night

本课重点和难点

- 复习疑问代词
- 复习一般过去时
- 同源副词

本课词汇

tent [tent] *n.* 帐篷

field [fi:ld] *n.* 1. 田野 2. 运动场 3. 电场，磁场 4. 领域范围

【词组】hold(keep) the field 坚守阵地；lose the field 战败；take the field 开始战斗；win the field 战胜

smell [smel] *n.* 1. 气味 2. 嗅觉 *v.* 1. 嗅，闻 2. 闻起来

【词组】smell of 有……味；take/have a smell at (美国用 of) 闻一下

wonderful ['wʌndəful] *adj.* 极好的，奇妙的

camp [kæmp] *n.* 1. 野营，营地 2. 帐篷 3. 阵营 *vi.* 宿营，设营

【词组】go camping 去野营；be in the same camp 志同道合

the camp fire 营火

creep [kri:p] *vi.* 1. 爬(动)，爬行 2. 慢慢地走

【用法】creep 爬行：指短脚的昆虫、蜗牛、病人、老人、受伤的人、幼儿等爬行。也指植物的蔓延。

sleeping bag ['sli:piŋ bæg] *n.* 睡袋

comfortable ['kʌmfətəbl] *adj.* 舒适的，自在的

soundly ['saundli] *adv.* 酣睡地，完好地

leap [li:p] *vi./n.* 跃起，飞跃

【词组】look before you leap 三思而后行；a leap in the dark 冒险的行动

【辨析】leap 与 jump 的用法区别：jump 最普通用词，既可指往上跳，也可指往下跳，或从一处往另一处跳；leap 多指跳跃一段距离或一定的障碍(物)，有连跑带跳的含义。

heavily ['hevili] *adv.* 大量地，沉重地

stream [stri:m] *n.* 小河，溪流，流处

form [fɔ:m] *vt./vi.* 形成，组成

【用法】form 形状，形式：一般用语，用于具体指物体长、宽、高的外观或组织结构；用于抽象指人行动时所采取的方式。

wind[1] [waind] *v.* 绕，缠，弯曲

【词组】wind up 结束，停止；上发条

wind[2] [wind] *n.* 风

right [rait] *adv.* 正好

课文详解

1. Late in the afternoon, the boys put up their tent in the middle of a field. 傍晚时分，孩子们在田野中央搭起了帐篷。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

★ 有关 put 的短语归纳及辨析(黄金考点):put up(with),put out,put away,put down,put off,put forward

1)put up sth.:指"建立,竖立"、"为……提供食宿"、"公告"之意。

2)put up with sb.:表示"容忍,忍受"。

e.g. He put up a notice on the wall.

When they have put up the new building,it will spoil the view.

We can put you up in our spare room tonight.

I can not put up with the little boy.

3)put out:指"熄灭,扑灭……"、"生产"。

e.g. He put out the fire and went to sleep.

The firm put out 1000 cars this week.

4)put away:指"把……收起来,放好"。

e.g. The boy put away all his toys.

5)put down:指"放下""写下""镇压"等。

e.g. The soldiers have put down the rebellion.(反叛)

Put down the sentences on the blackboard,please.

6)put off:指"延迟,延期"。

e.g. We have put off the trip to HongKong.

7)put forward:指"提出,建议"等。

e.g. He put forward a better plan and it changed the situation.

● 对比 in the middle of 与 in the centre of

1)in the middle of:指"在……当中"、"在……中间",即可以表示地点,也可以表示时间和某个过程之中。

2)in the centre of:指"在……中部/中央",表示地理位置。

e.g. I was in the middle of reading when someone knocked at the door.

Hubei Province is in the center of China.

2. ...they cooked a meal over an open fire. 他们就在篝火上烧起了饭。

● open fire:指无遮盖的,没有围起来的火,如盆火等,而在火上烤食物用介词 over 来表示。

3. ...they told stories and sang songs by the campfire. 他们围在营火旁讲故事、唱歌。

● by:"旁边","附近",指距离,相当于 near。

e.g. I sat down at a table by the window.

4. The stream wound its way across the field and then flowed right under the tent. 那小溪弯弯曲曲穿过田野,然后正好从他们的帐篷底下流过。

● wind one's way across/through sth.:表示"蜿蜒穿过某地"。

类似的表达法有:fight one's way 冲出一条路,feel one's way 摸索着前进。

e.g. The river winds its way through this distinct.

She felt her way in the darkness.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

语法精析

一、复习疑问代词(参见 Lesson 26)

二、复习一般过去时(参见 Lesson 3)

三、同源副词

高考中某些副词有两种形式，一种形式与其形容词形式同形、另一种形式带后缀-ly，在使用中要特别留意两者在意思上的差异。高考中常见的类似的副词主要有以下几组：

与形容词同形的副词	"形容词+后缀-ly"形式的副词
hard(努力地)	hardly(几乎不)
near(临近)	nearly(几乎)
most(最)	mostly(大多数)
short(突然)	shortly(立刻，不久)
late(晚)	lately(最近)
wide(广阔地)	widely(广泛地，普遍地)
deep(表示空间深度)	deeply(表示感情等抽象意义上的深度)
high(空间高度)	highly(表示程度，相当于 much)
free(免费)	freely(无限制地)

请体会下列例句：

They tried hard to succeed. 他们努力工作以获得成功。
It was so dark that I could hardly see anything. 天那么黑，以至于我几乎什么都看不见。

You have come too late. 你来得太晚了。
What have you been doing lately? 你近来在干些什么？

He pushed the stick deep into the mud. 他把棍子深深插入泥土中。
Father was deeply moved by the film. 父亲被这部电影深深感动了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 28 No Parking

本课重点和难点

- 定语从句

本课词汇

rare [rɛə] *adj.* 稀有的，奇异的
ancient [ˈeinʃənt] *adj.* 古代的，古老的
myth [miθ] *n.* 神话
trouble [ˈtrʌbəl] *n.* 麻烦
effect [iˈfekt] *n.* 1. 影响，作用 2. 效果，效力 3. 结果 *v.* 产生，招致
【词组】in effect 实际上，有效；come/go into effect 生效，实施；bring/carry into effect 使生效；take effect 生效，起作用；put into effect 实行
Medusa [miˈdjuːzə] *n.*（希腊神话）美杜莎（三个蛇发女怪中的一个）
Gorgon [ˈgɔːgən] *n.* 戈根（希腊神话中三个蛇发女怪之一，人见其貌则化为石头）

课文详解

1. Jasper White is one of those rare people who believes in ancient myths. 贾斯珀·怀特是少有的相信古代神话的人之一。

● who believe in ancient myths 是一个关系从句，起定语作用，修饰 one of those rare people。具体内容参见本课的"语法精析"。

2. He has just bought a new house in the city, but ever since he moved in, he has had trouble with cars and their owners. 他刚在城里买下一所新房子，但自从他搬进去后，就和汽车及车主们发生了摩擦。

● has just bought 及 has had trouble 都是现在完成时。我们在第 4 课及第 5 课详细讲解了现在完成时与一般过去时的区别，并且强调了现在完成时表示对现在的影响或者表示过去发生并持续到现在的动作。

e. g. I have never seen such a good film before.
He had lived here for five years.

● have trouble with sb.：同某人闹纠纷，产生摩擦等。我们还常说：have trouble(in) doing sth. 做某事有困难。

e. g. He has trouble learning English grammar.

3. Because of this, he has not been able to get his own car into his garage even once. 为此，他甚至一次也没能把自己的车开进车库。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

● because of 与 because 辨析：

because of 是介词短语，后面只能跟名词或代词，可以置于句首，也可以置于句中。

because 是连词，后面只能跟句子，构成原因状语从句。

e. g. Because the weather was very hot, he had to sleep on the roof of the house.

Because of the hot weather, he had to sleep on the roof of the house.

4. Jasper has put up "No Parking" signs outside his gate, but these have not had any effect. 贾斯珀曾把几块"禁止停车"的牌子挂在大门外，但没有任何效果。

● put up：意为"竖起，挂起，建立"，见第 27 课的课文讲解中 put 的短语归纳。

★ 近义词辨析：effect, affect, influence

1)effect：指影响某人或某事使其发生变化，是意味强而严谨的用语，作名词时更常用。

e. g. A holiday at the seaside may effect his recovery.

This event effected a change in my opinion.

2)affect：指直接影响某人或某物。

e. g. The rain will affect our plans for a picnic.

My throat is always affected by bad weather.

3)influence：往往指通过劝说或作为行动、榜样来潜移默化地影响别人，使其思想、感情等发生变化。

e. g. Young people are quickly influenced by new ideas.

Don't be influenced by bad examples.

5. Jasper hopes he will turn cars and their owners to stone. 贾斯珀希望她把汽车和车主们都变成石头。

● turn sth. to sth. ：把……变成……

例如：Frost turns water into ice.

★ 近义词辨析：turn, change, convert, vary（四级考点）

1)turn：指性质，状态，颜色等发生变化。

e. g. Her hair has turned grey.

2)change：指本质或形态发生变更，产生与以前完全不同的状况。

e. g. During the night, the rain changed to snow.

3)convert：指把一种形式或用途改变或转变为另一种。

e. g. The seat convert easily into a bed.

4)vary：指发生不规则地或断断续续地变化，含有种类较多之意。

e. g. Customs vary with times.

语法精析

定语从句

(一)定语从句概述

1. 形容词作定语和从句作定语。

在英文中，很多时候我们可以用一个形容词作定语来修饰一个名词（见下表例句），但是若要表达更为复杂的意思，简单地用形容词作定语就无能为力了，我们就要借助于一个句子来修饰名词，对名词进行限制。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

两种定语	例 句	比 较
形容词作定语	I don't like lazy people. 我不喜欢懒惰的人。	形容词作定语置于名词前面。
完整句子作定语	I don't like the people who are lazy. 我不喜欢懒惰的人。 I don't like the people who are never on time. 我不喜欢从不守时的人。 I don't like the people who never keep their words. 我不喜欢从不守信用的人。	从句修饰名词要置于名词后边。从句往往表示更为复杂的意思。比如第二个句子和第三个句子就不便用形容词来作定语，而采用了句子作定语。

考题： All the people ________ at the party were his supporters.

A. present　　B. thankful　　C. interested　　D. important

答案解析：A。present 在题干中作后置定语，表示"出席的，在座的"。在高考中 present, proper, involved 等词既可作前置定语也可以作后置定语，但作前置定语与作后置定语存在意义上的差异。例如：the present situation 当前的形势，the students present 出席的学生，the proper order 适当的顺序，the dictionary proper 字典正文，the issues involved 被牵涉到的问题，the involved issues 复杂的问题。

2. 定语从句的两个重要概念：先行词和关系词。

1）先行词：被定语从句所修饰或限制的对象称为先行词。上句中 the people 即为先行词。

2）关系词：重复指代先行词、起连接主句和从句的作用并且在定语从句中充当一定成分的连词或代词。上句中的 who 即为关系词。因此关系词有两个作用：a）代词作用：重复指代先行词并且在定语从句中充当一定成分，上述例句中 who 作主语；b）连接作用：起连接主句和从句的作用。

3）主句和从句：上句中 I don't like the people 是独立主句；who are lazy/never on time/never keep their words 则是定语从句。

(二)关系代词的用法

关系分句即定语从句或形容词，若从引导词方面来划分可以分为关系代词类及关系副词类；从作用方面来划分可以分为限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句。

1）关系代词代人时常用 who(作主语和宾语)，whom(作宾语)，that (作主语和宾语)。

Those who/that do not work must not eat. (who/that 在从句中作主语)

He is the man who/whom/that we all admire. (who/whom/that 在从句中作宾语)

2)关系代词代物时常用 which/that (两者都既可作主语也可作宾语)。

Pumas are large, cat-like animals which/that are found in America. (which/that 在从句中作主语)

The taxi which/that I took broke down on the way. (which/that 在从句中作宾语)

3)关系代词在从句中作定语时常用 whose(所有格是有生命的也可以是无生命的名词)，of which(只指无生命名词的所有格)。

I bought a book { of which the author is a farmer. / whose author is a farmer. }

(书的作者属无生命的名词所有格，两者都可以用。)

Qiong Yao is a writer whose books are popular with young people. (whose 在从句中作定语，不能用 of which)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

4)关系代词在从句中作宾语时,通常省略。

The man you met yesterday is an actor.(省略 whom 或 that)

The book you lent me last week is very interesting.(省略 which 或 that)

5)介词+关系代词构成介宾时,通常只能用"介词+which"或"介词+whom"。不能用"介词+that/who"。(黄金考点)

The world in which we live is made up of matter.

He is the man on whom/can depend.

6)先行词被 any, only, all, every, no, some, much, little, 序数词,最高级,the only 等修饰时,关系代词一般用 that。(黄金考点)

The only thing that we can do is waiting.

He is the only man that can speak four foreign languages in our company.

7)先行词是不定代词 something, anything, nothing, everything 或为指物的代词 all, little, few, much, none, the first 时,一般用 that。

All that glitters is not gold.

Is there anything that I can do for you?

8)限制性定语从句与非限制性定语从句的区别:

a)限制性定语从句不用逗号将从句与先行词分开;而非限制性定语从句一定有逗号隔开从句与先行词。

The travelers who/that knew about the floods took another road.

知道涨大水的游客们走了另一条路。(指部分游客,限制性)

The travelers, who knew about the floods, took another road.

游客们都知道涨了大水,他们走了另一条路。(指全部游客,非限制性)

b) 非限制性定语从句不能用 that 引导,在含义上起补充说明的作用。

(三)that 引导定语从句和同位语从句的区别

1. that 是否作成分。

that 在定语从句中充当成分;在同位语从句中不作任何成分,仅起连词作用。

a. The rumor that he spread everywhere turned out to be untrue.
   他到处散播的谣言被证明是假的。

b. The rumor that Tom was a thief turned out to be untrue.
   汤姆是个小偷的谣言被证明是假的。

以上两句先行词都是 the rumor,连接词都是 that。

但 a 句中的 that 在从句 he spread everywhere 中作成分,充当 spread 的宾语。故为定语从句。b 句中的 that 在从句 Tom was a thief 中不作任何成分,因从句 Tom was a thief 是一完整的句子,不缺任何成分。故其为同位语从句,作 the rumor 的同位语,补充说明 the rumor 的具体内容。

2. 从句的作用。

定语从句相当于形容词,它对先行词起修饰、描述、限制的作用;同位语从句相当于一个名词,它是前面名词的内容的具体表述,二者是同位关系。

The news that you heard is not true. 你听到的消息不是真的。(定语从句)

The news that Lincoln was murdered at a theatre is true.

林肯在剧院被谋杀的消息是真的。(同位语从句)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 29 Taxi!

本课重点和难点

- 复习一般过去时与现在完成时
- 表语从句
- 分词作定语

本课词汇

taxi ['tæksi] *n.* 出租汽车

Pilatus Porter [pi'lɑːtəs 'pɔːtə]（飞机名）皮勒特斯·波特

land [lænd] *n.* 1. 陆地，大陆 2. 地，土地 3. 田地，耕地 4. 国家，国土 *v.* 1.（使某人/某物）登岸，下船 2. 着陆

【词组】 in the land of the living 在世，活着；make land 看到陆地，抵达海岸；(be/go) on the land 种庄稼，务农；land sb. / oneself in sth. 使某人（自己）陷人困境等。

【辨析】 land"陆地，土地，地"是与 sea, water 相对的词；ground"土地，地，地面"，主要指大地表面，与 sky 相对；也指土壤、场地、广场等；soil"土壤"，指可以生长植物，富有有机物的"沃土"，宜于耕种的土壤等；earth "地球、地、泥土"，着重指"大地"，以有别于天空，也常指地面，以有别于海洋、大气或天空，作"泥土"解时，以有别于坚硬的岩石。

plough [plau] *vt.* 耕种，犁沟

lonely ['ləunli] *adj.* 1. 孤单的，寂寞的 2. 人迹罕至的，偏僻的

Welsh [welʃ] *adj.* 威尔士的

roof [ruːf] *n.* 屋顶

block [blɔk] *n.* 1. 大块木头，石头等 2. 街区 3. 阻塞物，障碍物 *v.* 阻塞，妨碍

【词组】 block in 拟定粗略计划，画略图，把……关在里面；block out 拟定粗略计划，画略图

flat [flæt] *n.* 一套房间 *adj.* 平坦的，平的，扁平的

deserted [di'zəːtid] *adj.* 废弃的

课文详解

1. The "taxi" is an small Swiss aeroplane called a 'Pilatus Porter'. 这辆"出租汽车"是一架小型瑞士飞机，叫"皮勒特斯·波特"号。

● called a 'Pilatus Porter'：是一个过去分词短语结构，在句中作 aeroplane 的定语。即：which is called a 'Pilatus Porter'。

2. The most surprising thing about it, however, is that it can land anywhere: on snow, water, or even on a ploughed field. 然而，最另人惊奇的是它能够在任何地方降落：雪地上，水面上，甚至刚耕过的田里。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

● that it can land anywhere 在句中叫作表语从句。

表语从句通常位于系动词，尤其是 be 动词后面，其连接词可以是 that（表陈述）或 whether，what，when 等疑问连词（表疑问）。

e.g. Money is what we are badly in need of.

My concern is whether he will come or not.

● on snow，water，or even on a ploughed field 作 anywhere 的同位语。

3. Captain Fawcett has just refused a strange request from a businessman. 弗西特机长刚刚拒绝了一位商人的奇怪要求。

★ 近义词辨析：refuse，decline，exclude，reject

1）refuse：指坚决、断然地拒绝他人的要求、忠告、援助等，有不太礼貌的行为，一般用语。

e.g. He refused to go with me after our quarrel.

I wouldn't refuse to help an old friend.

2）decline：礼貌地委婉地拒绝别人的邀请、帮忙、提议等，与不定式连用时可与 refuse 替换。

e.g. The boy declined/refused to do what was told.

I have to decline his invitation because I must be home now.

3）exclude：指拒绝他人、物进入某地，或拒绝接纳某人成为某一团体或组织的成员。

e.g. Closing the windows excludes street noise.

All those under twenty years of age were excluded from the club.

4）reject：与 refuse 相近，但语气更坚决，含否决或不受理之意，正式用语。

e.g. They rejected his application for membership.

They rejected the damaged goods.

4. ...but Captain Fawcett did not take him because the trip was too dangerous. 弗西特机长之所以不送他去是因为那段飞行太危险了。

★ 近义词辨析：take，bring，fetch

1）take：指带走（从某地或某人处拿走）。

e.g. He takes money with him every day.

2）bring：指带来（从某处带来某物）。

e.g. He brought me a gift on Sunday.

3）fetch：指去取来（强调去某地取某物并带回来）。

e.g. Please fetch me a glass of water.

语法精析

一、复习一般过去时与现在完成时（参见 Lesson 3，4）

二、表语从句

（一）表语从句通常置于系动词尤其是 is 后边

e.g. This is where our basic interest lies. 这是我们根本利益所在。

考题： The traditional view is ________ we sleep because our brain is "programmed" to make us do so.

A. when　　B. why　　C. whether　　D. that

www.TopSage.com

答案解析:D。下画线处之后是包含一个原因状语从句的表语从句。如果看不出它是充当整个句子结构的表语从句将难以把握整个句子的意思。应选择可引导名词性从句且不充当任何成分的 that。

(二)名词 reason 后面的表语从句一般用 that 引导,而不用 because

e. g. The reason(why)he was dismissed is that he was careless and irresponsible.

他被解雇的原因是因为他的粗心和不负责任。

三、分词作定语

现在分词和过去分词都可以作定语,相当于一个对应的定语从句,其具体用法如下:

1. 单个动词的现在分词或过去分词作定语,一般放在被修饰的名词后面,都可替换成定语从句。

a broken cup = a cup which has broken before

boiled water = water that has been boiled

failing leaves=leaves that are falling

the barking dog = the dog that is barking

2. 过去分词 left,questioned 通常作后置定语。

This is the only food left.

The people questioned are two high students.

3. 有些过去分词像 concerned,given,involved,used 等既能作前置定语也能作后置定语,但含义不同。例如:

{I noticed a concerned look in his eyes.(关切的)
All parents concerned will be present.(有关的)

{We must finish it within the given period.(指定的)
She doesn't like the house given by her aunt.(所给予的)

{This is an involved have been questioned.(复杂的)
All people involved have been questioned.(有牵连的)

{The store sells used books only.(用过的)
The textbooks used are all up-to date.(被采用的)

4. 分词短语作定语(可替换为定语从句):

The man standing at the gate is my teacher. =The man who is standing at the gate is my teacher.

I ate up the cake made by his mother. = I ate up the cake which had been made by his mother.

5. 现在分词作定语的两种含义:

1)表示名词的一种特点,相当于定语从句的主动的一般时态。

flying fishes=fishes that can fly

a puzzling problem=a problem that puzzles people

2)表示动作正在进行,相当于定语从句的主动进行时态。

falling leaves=leaves that are falling

the rising sun=the sun that is rising

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

6. 过去分词作定语的两种含义：

1)及物动词的过去分词表示的是被动关系，相当于定语从句的被动、一般或完成时态。

a deserted car park＝a car park which has been deserted

a stolen car＝a car which was stolen.

2)不及物动词的过去分词作定语表示动作已经完成，不表示被动关系，相当于定语从句的主动完成时态。

fallen leaves＝leaves that have fallen.

a married man＝a man that has married.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 30 Football or Polo?

本课重点和难点

- 复习 a、the、some、any 的用法
- 结果状语从句

本课词汇

polo ['pəuləu] *n.* 水球，马球

Wayle [weil]威尔（河名）

cut [kʌt] *v.* 穿过

row [rəu] *n.*（一）排，（一）行 *vi.* 划船，荡桨 *vt.* 划（船），吵架

【词组】get in a row 挨骂，挨说；kick up a row 吵闹，起哄

kick [kik] *v./n.* 踢

towards [tə'wɔ:dz] *prep.* 1. 向，朝 2. 对于，关于 3. 接近，将近 4. 为 5. 有助于

【用法】toward(s)和 to 同义。但前者表示"朝……（目的地）方向"，后者表示"到达目的地"。

nearly ['niəli] *adv.* 几乎

in sight 看得见

课文详解

1. The Wayle is a small river that cuts across the park near my home. 威尔河是横穿我家附近公园的一条小河。

● Wayle 是河名，所以前面必须加定冠词 the；river 是在文中第一次出现的一个普通名词，所以用不定冠词 a。冠词的用法详见第 6 课中的讲解。

● that 引导的是一个定语从句，修饰 a small river。

● cut 的常见短语辨析：

1) cut across sth.：取捷径穿过（田地等）。

e. g. If we cut across the field, we can get there before 5 p. m..

2) cut sth. away：割掉，砍去。

e. g. We cut away all the dead wood from the tree.

3) cut sth. down：砍倒，还可以指减少数量或减价等。

e. g. I will cut down expenses on CDs.

We managed to cut him down by £30.

4) cut into：插嘴，打断。

e. g. Don't cut into the story/the conversation.

5) cut sth. off：切去（尖端部分）。

e. g. He cut the chicken's head off.

www.TopSage.com

2. I like sitting by the Wayle on fine afternoons. 我喜欢在天气晴朗的下午到河边坐坐。

● afternoons 为复数，表示经常、习惯性动作，又由于 afternoons 前面有限定词 fine，所以介词只能用 on。表示某个具体的日子或者其早、中、晚，都要用介词 on。

e. g. We have English lessons on Monday mornings.

It happened on the afternoon of April 1.

3. ...and there were some people rowing on the river. 河面上有些人在划船。

● rowing 是现在分词表示补充说明人们在做什么，和 people 构成主动关系。

e. g. There are some boys playing football on the ground.

4. ...and it went towards a passing boat. 球便向着一只划过来的小船飞去。

● towards：表示朝向，相当于 in the direction of...。

e. g. He climbed towards the top of the mountain.

● passing 是现在分词作定语，表示动作正在进行。详见第 29 课“语法精析”部分。

5. Some people on the bank called out to the man in the boat, but he did not hear them. 岸上的一些人对着小船上的人高喊，但他没有听见。

● some 和 any 都表示“一些”。其区别如下：

1) some 通常用于肯定句，any 通常用于否定句和疑问句。

e. g. There is some milk in the fridge.

Is there any soap in the bathroom?

2) 当疑问句表示请求、要求或期待肯定回答时，则用 some。

e. g. Can I have some coffee?

● call out：大声喊叫，叫喊。

e. g. I heard someone calling out for help.

6. The ball struck him so hard that he nearly fell into the water. 球重重地打在他身上，使他差点儿落入水中。

● so + *adj.* / *adv.* + that...引导结果状语从句，表示“如此……以至于……”。这是第 35 课重点，详见第 35 课“语法精析”部分。

e. g. It rained so hard that we couldn't go out.

The box is so heavy that I can't lift there without your help.

7. I turned to look at the children, but there weren't any in sight. 我转过头去看那些孩子，但一个也不见了。

● in sight：看得见，在视野之内。与 sight 有关的重要短语如下：

out of sight：看不见，在视野之外。

catch sight of sb. /sth. ：看见某人/物。

at (the) sight of sth. / sb. ：一看见某人或某物。

e. g. Out of sight, out of mind. 眼不见，心不烦。

The man ran off at the sight of the police officers.

8. They had all run away. 他们全跑光了。

● run away：意为逃跑，消失。

e. g. The boy ran away as soon as possible after he broke the window.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

语法精析

一、复习冠词的用法(参见 Lesson 6)

二、结果状语从句

(一)目的状语从句常见引导词

主要有:so that,in order that。从句中常含有情态动词 will/would 或 can/could。

① I turned off the TV so that my roommate could study in peace and quiet.
我关掉了电视,好让我的室友安静地学习。

② We climbed high so that we could get a better view.
我们爬得很高,所以我们可以看到更好的风景。

③ They carved the words on the stone so that/in order that the future generation would remember what they had done. 他们把字刻在石头上是为了让后代记住他们所做的事。

(二)结果状语从句常见的连接词

主要有:so... that,such... that,从句中一般不带情态动词,且从句都要放在主句之后。
The food is so bad in the school cafeteria that flies go there to lose weight.
我们学校食堂饭菜质量太差,连苍蝇都去那儿减肥。

注意:不要受汉语思维的影响,把这里的 so 改成了 very 或 too(常见于考试改错题)。比如我们不能说:The food is too/very bad in the school cafeteria that flies go there to lose weight. so/such... that... 都是"如此……以致……"之意,其中的副词 so 后面直接接形容词或副词,形容词 such 后面需接名词。

(三)注意下句中 such 和 so 的用法区别(重点掌握)

1. so 后边直接加形容词,such 要先接冠词 a(n)。
He is such a good teacher that everyone likes him.
He is so good a teacher that everyone likes him.
他是一个如此好的老师,大家都喜欢他。

2. such 可修饰不可数名词,so 不可:
It was such nice weather that we went to the beach. 天气很好,我们去海滩吧。
The weather was so nice that we went to the beach.

3. such 可修饰复数名词,so 不可:
He got such heavy boxes that he couldn't carry them by himself.
箱子太重了,他自己搬不动。

4. so 可与 many,much,few,little 搭配,such 不可:
I made so many mistakes that I failed the exam.
我出了太多错误以至于我考试没通过。
He has so few friends that he is always lonely. 他的朋友太少了,以至于他总是孤独。
He lost so much money that he didn't dare to go home.
他丢了太多的钱以至于不敢回家。
I had so little trouble with the test that I left half an hour early.
我觉得这次考试很简单,所以提前半小时离开考场。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 31 Success story

本课重点和难点

- 复习结果状语从句
- 复习过去进行时与一般过去时
- used to 与 be used to 的用法

本课词汇

retire [ri'taiə] v. 退休
company ['kʌmpəni] n. 公司
bicycle ['baisikl] n. 自行车
save [seiv] vt. 节省，节约
workshop ['wəːkʃɔp] n. 车间
helper ['helpə] n. 帮手，助手
employ [im'plɔi] vt. 1. 雇用 2. 用，使用

【辨析】1. employ 是长时间"雇用"；hire 是（临时或一次性）"雇用"；engage 是（经签约）"聘用，雇用"（专业人员）从事服务性工作。2. hire 是指雇用非正式的、临时的人员，而不是指有固定工资收入的人。employ 为正式用词，指雇用正式的人员，有时可指雇用有名望、有地位的人。在官方用法中，一般可用来代替 hire。

grandson ['grænsʌn] n. 孙子，外孙

课文详解

1. Before he retired, Frank was the head of a very large business company, but as a boy he used to work in a small shop. 在退休前，弗兰克是一家非常大的商业公司的经理，但他小时候却在一家小铺里做工。

● head：指"首领，头目，老板"等。相当于公司里的 director 之类。

e. g. He is the head of this firm.

David is the head of the family.

● as a boy 及前一句中的 as a young man 中"as"都表示"当……的时候"即 as he was a boy/a young man.

● used to do sth. 表示过去经常做而现在已经不再拥有的习惯，强调过去与现在的明确对比。详见本课"语法精析"部分。

2. It was his job to repair bicycles. 他那时的工作是修理自行车。

● "it"作形式主语，不定式才是真正的主语。

e. g. It is my job to teach English.

3. ...and in 1958, he bought a small workshop of his own. 在 1958 年，他买下了自己的一个小店铺。

● of one's own：自己的，相当于 one's own＋名词。own 既可以作代词，也可以作形容

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

词用。

e. g. I want to have an apartment of my own.

He will buy a car of his own next year.

4. In his twenties, Frank used to make spare parts for aeroplanes. 20 多岁的时候，弗兰克曾生产过飞机零配件。

● in one's twenties：在某人二十多岁的时候。

当我们不想精确说出某人的年龄时，我们可以用 10 的倍数的复数形式来表达这个年龄段。

e. g. in one's thirties/forties/fifties...在某人三十多岁/四十多岁/五十多岁……的时候

He has become a billionaire in his thirties. 他在三十多岁的时候就已经是位亿万富翁了。

5. Frank smiled when he remembered his hard early years and the long road to success. 弗兰克回想着他早年的艰难经历和走过的漫长的成功之路，他微笑了。

● his hard early years：这里 hard 为艰辛的，苦难的，不能用 difficult 来替换。

e. g. My parents lived a very hard life when I was young.

● to：表示目的，意为"通向，朝向"等。

e. g. I stood at the entrance to the cave.

语法精析

一、复习结果状语从句

二、复习过去进行时与一般过去时(参见 Lesson 3,7)

三、used to 与 be used to 的用法

1. used to do sth. 表示过去经常做而现在已经不再拥有的习惯，强调过去与现在的明确对比。

I used to walk to my office, but I don't any longer.

My father used to smoke heavily, but he has given it up now.

注：used to do 只能用于一般过去时，可以当作一种时态单独使用，所以它的疑问句和否定句较特殊，既可以用过去时助动词 did 来完成，也可以用 used 本身。但人们常用前者。

Did he use to smoke?
Yes, he did. /No, he didn't.
He didn't use to smoke.

Used he to smoke?
Yes, he used to. /No, he used not to.
He used not to smoke.

2. used 相关的短语辨析：used to do sth. , be used to do sth. , be used for doing sth. , be used to doing sth. , be used as sth.

1) used to do sth：过去常做而现在不做的事情。

My parents used to live in South America.

The book used to be popular.

2) be used to do sth：被用来做某事，use 是"使用，用途"之意。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

The new machine is used to detect gold.

This knife is used to cut bread.

3)be used for doing sth.：被用来做某事，可以替代 be used to do sth.，只是所接动词形式不一样。

The new machine is used for detecting gold.

This knife is used for cutting bread.

4)be used to doing sth.：习惯于做某事，相当于 be accustomed to doing sth.。

He is used to reading English in the morning.

The young man is used to staying up late.

5)be used as sth.：被当作……来用。

The platform can be used as a port.

This room will be used as our office.

考题： You ________ go to work on foot, ________ you? 你过去常常步行上班，对吗？

A. used to... didn't　　B. were used to... weren't

C. used to... usedn't you

答案解析： A 和 C。"used to＋动词原形"表示"过去经常"(现在不复存在的过去事态或过去习惯)，疑问、否定形式有两种：

Did you use to smoke? ＝Used you to smoke?

No, I used not to(smoke). ＝No, I didn't(use to smoke).

"be used to＋动名词"表示"习惯于"；"be used to＋动词原形"表示"被用于某种目的"。

例如：He was used to working 14 hours a day. 他习惯于一天工作 14 小时。

Two dogs were used to guard the house while we were away at work. 我们在外工作时用狗来看房子。

考题： He used to live in Beijing ________. 他________住在北京。

A. before he got married　　B. when he was a boy

C. for 4 years

答案解析： A 和 B。used to 通常可以不带时间状语，有时也可与表示过去时间的状语搭配，但不能与"for＋时间段"连用。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 32 Shopping made easy

本课重点和难点

- 比较状语从句的用法
- 复习形容词的比较级和最高级

本课词汇

once [wʌns] *adv.* 曾经

temptation [temp'teiʃən] *n.* 引诱，诱惑力

article ['ɑːtikəl] *n.* 1. 文章，论文 2. 条款，项目 3. 物品 4. 冠词

【辨析】article"文章，论文"，通常指记叙文或论说文；essay"文章，论文"，通常指文学上的散文、杂文、随笔，也指学术性论文；composition是指"作文"，为练习写作而做的作文；paper"文章，论文"，主要指在会议上宣读或在刊物上发表的文章，也指大学生的论文和读书报告。thesis"论文"，正式用词，指毕业论文或学位论文。

wrap [ræp] *vt.* 包，裹，卷 *n.* 披肩，围巾

【词组】wrap sth. in 用……将某物包起来；be wrapped in 用……包裹好，穿着……

as...as possible 尽可能，尽量

simply ['simpli] *adv.* 1. 简单地 2. 完全，简直 3. 仅仅，只不过

arrest [ə'rest] *vt.* 逮捕，拘留，扣留 *n.* 逮捕，扣留

【词组】under arrest 被逮捕（拘留）

课文详解

1. People are not so honest as they once were. 人们不再像以前那样诚实了。

- "not so + *adj.* /*adv.* + as"引导的是比较状语从句，译为"不如……那样……"。

2. The woman first bought a few small articles. After a little time, she chose one of the most expensive dresses in the shop. 这位妇女先买了几样小商品。过了一会儿，她又选了商店里最昂贵的一件衣服。

- a few与few修饰可数名词，a few表肯定，相当于some，few表否定，意为"几乎没有"，相当于not many。

e. g. There are few apples on the tree.
There are not many apples on the tree.
I bought a few/some books yesterday.

3. The girl 'gave' her mother a free dress once a week. 那姑娘每星期"送"她母亲一件免费的衣服。

- give：在文中打引号表示讽刺意味，不是真的"送"，而是"偷"。
- free：免费的，自由的。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

e. g. He gave me a free ticket.

What do you like doing in your free time?

- once a week 一周一次，表频率。类似的说法有：

once a month 一月一次

twice a month 一月两次

three times a month 一月三次

语法精析

一、比较状语从句

比较状语从句的具体用法如下：

1. 引导比较状语从句的词通常有 more...than(表示较高的程度)，as...as(表示同等程度比较)。

It was a more lively discussion than I expected.

Tom has as many English books as John(has).

I am not as brave as David(is).

2. not so/as...as 引导的句子可以和 than 引导的比较级句子进行替换，只是 not so/as...as 较含蓄而礼貌些。

People are not so honest as they once were. 可替换成：

People are less honest than they once were.

课文中的：One Monday, there were fewer people in the shop than usual. 可替换成：One Monday, there were not as many people in the shop as usual.

3. 表示"倍数比较"的三种句型。(*黄金考点*)

a) A is...times bigger(或其他形容词)than B

b) A is...times as big(或其他形容词)as B

c) A is...times the size(或其他形容词对应的名词形式)of B(如：big→size；long→length；wide→width；heavy→weight；high→height，etc.)

This stadium is four times as large as that one.

This stadium is three times larger than that one.

This stadium is four times the size of that one.

这个体育馆是那个的 4 倍大。

4. no more...than 和 not more...than 引导比较状语从句时，表示"和……一样不……"。(*黄金考点*)

Jane is no more careful than Tom.(两个都不小心)

Jane is not more diligent than Mary.(两人都不勤奋)

但是 no more than：表示"仅仅，不过"。

The pipe is no more than ten feet long.

5. "the more...the more"表示比较时，一般是从句在前，主句在后，即：The+比较级(从句)，the+比较级(主句)

The more she practiced, the worse she sang.

The earlier it is, the better it is.

二、复习形容词的比较级和最高级(参见 Lesson 8)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 33 Out of the darkness

本课重点和难点

- 表示方向和目的地的介词的用法
- 复习动名词
- 复习 so/such... that 结构
- 复习 v. +宾+宾补结构

本课词汇

darkness [ˈdɑːknis] *n.* 黑暗

explain [iksˈplein] *v.* 解释，说明

【词组】explain... as 把……解释。成；explain away 为……辩护；explain oneself 为自己的行为解释。

【用法】explain 解释，说明：一般用语，指使人明了未知或不清楚的事，如行为、现象、理由等。

coast [kəust] *n.* 海岸，海滨

【用法】coast 海岸，海滨：地理名词，指海水与陆地相连的地方，既可指邻接海洋的陆地，又可指邻接陆地的海洋。

storm [stɔːm] *n.* 暴风雨

towards [təˈwɔːdz] *prep.* 将近

rock [rɔk] *n.* 岩石，石块 *v.* 摇动(摆)

【词组】rock and roll 摇滚乐

shore [ʃɔː] *n.* 海滨，湖滨

【词组】on shore 在海滨上，陆上；off shore 在离岸的海上，近海的；in shore 近岸的；go on shore 上陆，上岸

【用法】shore 滨，岸：指邻接海、河、湖边缘的陆地。

light [lait] *n.* 灯

ahead [əˈhed] *adv.* 在前，向前，提前

【词组】get ahead(比……)先进，领先，胜过……；go ahead 前进，继续，进步；look ahead 向前看，展望未来

cliff [klif] *n.* 悬崖，峭壁

struggle [ˈstrʌgl] *n.*/*vi.* 斗争，奋斗，努力

【辨析】struggle 一般指肉体、精神、政治、思想上的斗争，为不及物动词；fight 用于战斗含义时，指力图战胜某人或某事，既可作及物动词，也可作不及物动词。两词相比，前者更着重于处境困难，费力更大。

hospital [ˈhɔspitl] *n.* 医院

【词组】go to hospital 上医院看病；be in (the) hospital 住院治疗

【用法】表示住院、出院，到医院。美国英语加 the，英国英语通常不加 the。

课文详解

1. Nearly a week passed before the girl was able to explain what had happened to her. 几乎过了一个星期，那姑娘才能讲述自己的遭遇。

● 主句是"Nearly a week passed"，从句是"before the girl was able to explain what had

www.TopSage.com

happened to her”。what had happened to her 是个宾语从句。

before 译为“……才……”，它所引导的从句不能位于句首。

2. She set out from the coast in a small boat and was caught in a storm. 她乘小船从海岸出发，遇上了风暴。

● “遇上”的不同表达法：meet，be caught in，bump into/run into

be caught 是 catch 的被动语态，表示“被抓住”的意思。be caught in 往往是指遇上“灾难、困难”。

e. g. I was caught in a shower on the way home.

bump into sb. 和 run into sb. 都是指“偶然遇上、碰巧遇上”某人的意思。

3. On arriving at the shore, the girl struggled up the cliff towards the light she had seen. 到达岸边后，姑娘朝着她看到的灯光方向挣扎着往峭壁上爬去。

● “on＋动名词”表示“刚……就……”的意思；它和 She swam to the shore after spending the whole night in the water. 实际上是一样的。动名词的逻辑主语必须和主句的主语保持一致。

e. g. On seeing me, he ran away. 他一看见我，就溜了。

如果是两个不同的主语，则不能使用“on＋动名词”的结构，可以用 as soon as。

4. She found herself in hospital. 她发现自己躺在医院里。

● in hospital 在住院　　in the hospital 在医院里

go to school 去上学　　go to the school 去学校

go to church 去做礼拜　　go to the church 去教堂

语法精析

一、表示方向、目标的介词的用法

表方向、目标的常用介词有：

1. to：swim to the shore 向岸边游去；fly to New York 飞往纽约
2. toward：struggle up the cliff toward the light 沿着悬崖向灯光处挣扎爬去
3. for：make for the exit 向出口处走去；set out/off for the beach 出发前往海滩；leave for Beijing 启程前往北京
4. into：jump into the sea 跳入海中
5. at：aim at the bird 向鸟瞄准；shoot at the enemy 向敌人射击；throw a stone at the dog 向狗扔石头；point at people 用手指人

二、复习动名词（参见 Lesson 20）

三、复习 so/such... that 结构（参见 Lesson 30）

四、复习“*v.*＋宾＋宾补”结构（参见 Lesson 11）

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 34 Quick work

本课重点和难点

- 复习被动语态
- 副词辨析

本课词汇

station ['steiʃən] *n.* 站,局,所

most [məust] *adv.* 相当,非常

课文详解

1. the local police 当地警察局

● local 可以表示"地方性的"或"当地的"、"本地的":a local newspaper 地方性报纸

e. g. local news 本地新闻

local shops 邻近的商店

2. ...he was asked to call at the station. 要他到警察局去一趟。

● call at...光顾某地(参见 Lesson6)。

3. Dan wondered why he was wanted by the police...丹奇怪警察为什么找他……

● wonder 表示"想知道"时后面往往跟疑问词引导的从句,如 She wondered who that man was/what had happened. 她想知道那个人是谁/到底发生了什么事。

● want 用于被动语态时可以表示"想与(某人见面、谈话等)"或"缉拿"、"追捕"。

e. g. Please wait a minute. I'm wanted on the phone. 请等一下。有我的电话。

This is the man(who is)wanted by the police. 这就是警察在追捕的那个人。

4. And now he is not worried anymore. 他不再担心了。

● no longer=not...any longer,意思是"不再",常用于现在时,修饰持续性动词。

no longer 放在实义动词之前非实义动词之后,而 not...any longer 中的 any longer 通常位于句末。

e. g. He is no longer a young man. 他不再是个年轻人了。

I can't wait any longer. 我不能再等了。

● no more=not...any more,意思是"不再",修饰非持续性动词。

e. g. We saw him no more. 我们再也看不见他了。

I can't play any more. 我再也不能玩了。

5. Five days ago, the policeman told him, the bicycle was picked up in a small village four hundred miles away. 那位警察对他说,那辆自行车是5天前在400英里外的一个小村里发现的。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

● pick up 的含义非常丰富。

1)(偶然地、无意地)获得、找到

e.g. He picked up the book in a small library. 他在一个小图书馆发现了那本书。

2)拾起

e.g. I pick up a book from ground. 我从地上拾起了书。

3)去接某人

e.g. I pick up my son everyday after work. 每天下班我都去接我儿子。

4)学会,学到……东西

e.g. I picked up some French while traveling in Paris. 在巴黎游览期间我学了几句法语。

6. Dan was most surprised. 丹惊奇万分。

● most 在这里不是最高级别,它在这里相当于 very。

e.g. I am most amused by your joke.

语法精析

一、复习被动语态(参见 Lesson 10)

二、副词辨析

1. too,also 和 either

1)too 和 also 用于肯定句,too 位于句尾,also 位于动词前。

2)either 用于否定句,位于句尾。

例如:

I want to go there, too. =I also want to go there. 我也想去那里。

He doesn't want to go there, either. 他也不想去那里。

2. already, still 和 yet

1)already 用于肯定句,表示动作已经发生。

2)still 用于肯定句,表示动作正在进行。

3)yet 多用于否定句和疑问句,表示期待某事发生,也可用于肯定句。

例如:

He has already known it. 他已经知道了那件事。

They are still talking about it. 他们仍在谈论那件事。

She will succeed yet. 她还会成功的。

3. so, such, how 和 what

1)so 和 how 用作副词,通常放在形容词和副词前面,其结构如下:

so(as) how	+形容词或副词+其他
so(as) how	+形容词+a 或 an+名词
so(as) how	+many(few)或 much(little)+可数名词复数或不可数名词+其他

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

例如：

It was raining so hard that they had to stay indoors.

雨下得很大，他们不得不待在家里。

How interesting a novel it is! 这是一部多么有趣的小说！（不可说 how an interesting novel!）

2）such 和 what 用作形容词，可以修饰可数名词的单复数，也可以修饰不可数名词。被 such 和 what 修饰的名词前可以带有形容词作定语，也可以不带。如果被修饰的词是单数可数名词，名词前要加 a 或 an。其结构如下：

such what	（＋形容词）＋不可数名词
such what	（＋形容词）＋复数可数名词
such what	＋a(an)（＋形容词）＋单数可数名词

例如：

What a fine day it is! 多么美好的一天啊！

4. hard 和 hardly

英语中某些副词有两种形式，一个与形容词同形，一个带后缀-ly。以下四种情况需予以注意。

1）两种形式，分别表示两种不同意义。试比较：

Jane works hard. 简努力工作。（hard 表示"努力地，费劲地"等意义）
Jane hardly works. 简几乎不工作。（hardly 表示"几乎不，不十分"等意义）

The train was ten minutes late. 火车晚点十分钟。（late 表示"迟的，迟于"）
I have not seen her lately. 我最近没有见过她。（lately 表示"近来，最近"等意义）

He lives quite near. 他的住处很近。（near 表示"邻近，在近处"）
I nearly missed the train. 我差点儿没赶上火车。（nearly 表示"几乎，差点儿，差不多"等意义）

提示 类似的还有 just 公正的→justly 公正地，scarce 稀少→scarcely 几乎不，low 低的→lowly 谦逊的，卑贱的，deep 深的→deeply 深地，深切地，most 非常，最→mostly 主要地，wide 广阔地（宽大地）→widely 广泛地，high 高→highly 高度地，close 接近地→closely 仔细地，亲密地，free 免费地→freely 自由地等。

2）两种形式，意义相同，用法不同。试比较：

You've spelt the word wrong. 你把那个词拼错了。（wrong 表示"错误地，不对，不正确"等意义，在谓语动词后面，多用与形容词同形的副词）

The word has been wrongly spelt. 那个词拼错了。（wrongly 意义同上，在谓语动词之前，尤其是在过去分词之前，常用-ly 结尾的副词）

3）两种形式，意义及用法都相同。

例如：

The baby slept sound (soundly). 婴儿睡得很熟。

提示 "朗读"要说 read out loud 或 read aloud，不可说 read loudly。两种形式同义的副词，在强调句中要用带-ly 的副词，不带-ly 的副词不可用于强调句中。试比较：

It was direct that he went from Nanjing to Shanghai.（误）

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

It was directly that he went from Nanjing to Shanghai.（正）他直接从南京到上海。

4）与形容词同形，即不带-ly后缀的副词，更多地用在副词的比较结构里。

例如：

Come nearer. 走近点。

Fred laughed loudest. 弗雷德笑得最响。

5. abroad的用法

试翻译：该产品享誉国内外。（应译为：The product is famous at home and abroad.）

abroad是副词，可以说from abroad（自国外），但“在国外”不可说成in abroad，“去国外”可说成go abroad。

例如：

He has returned from abroad. 他已从国外回来了。

They are still abroad. 他们仍在国外。

They have decided to go abroad. 他们已决定去国外。

They have lived abroad for over ten years. 他们在国外已住了十年多了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 35 Stop thief!

本课重点和难点

- 复习 Lesson 26—34 语法内容
- 冠词的用法
- some/ any 的用法

本课词汇

while [wail] *n.* (一段)时间

regret [ri'gret] *v.* 懊悔 *n.* 遗憾

【词组】express regret at 对……表示遗憾;to one's regret 可惜……;It is to be regretted that... 遗憾的是……

far [fɑː] *adj.* 远的,较远的 *adv.* 1. 远 2. 很,甚

【词组】far from(not at all)一点也不;by far 好得多;as/so far as 远至,到……的程度;so far 到目前为止

【用法】常用于疑问句或否定句中,在肯定句中常用 a long way 替代 far;当与 too,so 连用时,也可用在肯定句中。但在书面语中肯定句也用 far。

【辨析】far 普通用词,常指空间上的远距离,间或也指时间上的距离;distant 指空间上或时间上的远距离。当指极大的距离时用 distant,不用 far。distant 也指疏远的血统关系;remote 指空间距离的遥远,不易达到,也含有孤独、偏僻之意,有时也指时间的遥远,另有"遥控"之意。

rush [rʌʃ] *n.* 冲,急速行进 *v.* 1. (使)冲,(使)突进 2. 急速流动 *adj.* (交通)繁忙的

【词组】rush into 贸然行事;rush out 匆匆大量赶制;rush through 仓促完成;rush someone off his feet 迫使某人忙得不可开交

act [ækt] *vi.* 1. 行动,做事 2. (机械,药物)起作用 3. 表演 *n.* 1. 行动,行为 2. 法令,条例 3. 一幕

【用法】act 行为,动作:指某人实现某种意图而进行的具体的、简单的、暂时的活动。一般强调一个动作完成一件事。

straight [streit] *adj.* 1. 直的,笔直的 2. 端正的 3. 正直的 *adv.* 1. 直接 2. 正直,直率

fright [frait] *n.* 1. 惊骇 2. 怪样子的人或物

batter ['bætə] *vt.* 击破,捣坏

shortly ['ʃɔːtli] *adv.* 立即,马上

【词组】shortly before/after 在……之前(后)不久

afterwards ['ɑːftəwədz] *adv.* 以后,后来

课文详解

1. Roy Trenton used to drive a taxi. 罗伊·特雷顿原是开出租汽车的。

- used to do sth. 过去常常干某事(参见 Lesson 31)。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. When he was driving along Catford Street recently, he saw two thieves rush out of a shop and run towards a waiting car. 最近，当他正开车在凯特福德街上行驶时，看到有两个小偷从一家商店里冲出来，奔向等在那里的一辆汽车。

● see sb. do sth. /doing sth. 的结构：

see 和其他一些感知动词（如 feel, hear, notice, smell, watch 等）都可以使用以上的结构。

e. g. I heard a guy sing at midnight.（使用不带 to 的不定式强调动作的整个过程）

I heard a guy singing at midnight.（使用 doing 强调正在做的动作）

另外当宾语补足语的动词和前面宾语的关系是被动时一般用 see sb. done 这样的结构。

e. g. I heard the music played last night.

● waiting 为现在分词作定语，表示"等待着的"、"等在那里的"。

3. The one with the money got such a fright that he dropped the bag. 拿钱的那个小偷吓得把提包都扔了。

● such...that...表示"如此……以至于……"。such 后面要跟名词。

4. As the thieves were trying to get away in their car, Roy drove his bus into the back of it. 当那两个小偷企图乘车逃跑时，罗伊驾驶他的公共汽车撞在了那辆车的后尾上。

● get away 这里表示"逃跑"、"逃脱"，"走开"。

e. g. How did the thief get away?

get away with 是逃脱惩罚的意思。

e. g. Do you think you can get away with it?

How did she get away with cheating?

5. The thieves' car was badly damaged and easy to recognize. 小偷的车损坏严重，很容易辨认。

● badly 在这里表示"非常"。

e. g. He needs the money really badly.

● 在英语中表示"非常"的词语还有 fairly, quite, rather，这三个副词都表示程度。它们的词义按照上面的排列顺序，从 fairly 开始到 rather 为止，是逐渐加强的。

e. g. The car is fairly large for the four of us. 这辆车足够我们四个人坐。

They were also quite sure that a cigarette end did not start the fire.

他们还相当肯定，一个香烟头不会引起这场火灾。

To make matters worse, the room is rather small.

使得事情更糟糕的是，这个房子相当小（房子太小，不太合适）。

● 在"He is finding his new work far more exciting"中 far 也表示非常，但是它往往修饰比较级并位于比较级之前。

修饰比较级表示"非常多，非常大"的还有 much/a lot/a great deal。

修饰比较级表示"稍微，一点"的有 a little/a bit/slightly。

语法精析

一、复习 Lesson 26—34 语法内容

二、冠词的用法（参见 Lesson 6）

三、some/ any 的用法（参见 Lesson 30）

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 36 Across the Channel

本课重点和难点

- 定语从句的种类
- 倒装句

本课词汇

record ['rekɔ:d] *n.* 1. 记录,履历,最高纪录 2. 唱片 [ri'kɔ:d] *v.* 录音,记录

【词组】make/establish a record 创纪录;break a record 打破纪录;keep a record of... 把……记下来

strong [strɔŋ] *adj.* 1. 强壮的,强大的 2. 强烈的,浓的

【词组】be strong in 相当于 be good at 擅长

【用法】strong 可作"擅长,特长"讲,后接 in。如:He is strong in French. 他法语讲得好。而 good 后接 at,weak 后接 in。

【辨析】strong 为一般用语,用于人指健壮、身强力壮的人,用于物指力量;stout 常指矮胖而强壮的身体;sturdy 用于人指体格结实,意志力强;用于物指坚实,长得健壮。

swimmer ['swimə] *n.* 游泳运动员

succeed [sək'si:d] *vi.* 1. 成功 2. 继承 *vt.* 接替,接……之后

【词组】succeed in (doing) sth. (做)某事成功;succeed to sth. 继承……

train [trein] *v.* 游泳运动员

anxiously ['æŋkʃəsli] *adv.* 忧虑地,焦急地

intend [in'tend] *vt.* 想要,打算,企图

【用法】intend 打算,有意:正式用语,指对未来如何行动作出计划,并力求达到目的。一般多用于平辈或晚辈之间,少用于晚辈对长辈。

solid ['sɔlid] *n.* 固体 *adj.* 1. 实心的,结实的 2. 稳固的,可靠的

【词组】on solid ground 在稳固的基础上;solid learning 实在的学问;solid tires 实心轮胎

课文详解

1. Debbie is only eleven years old and she hopes to set up a new world record. 黛比只有 11 岁,她希望创一项新的世界纪录。

● hope 的具体用法:

1) hope to do sth.

e. g. I hope to make a friend with Lily.

2) hope(that)

e. g. I hope (that) I can make a friend with Lily.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

3)hope for 期待

e.g. Everyone hopes for snow.

● hope sb. to do sth. 是错误的表达方法，但是 wish/expect sb. to do sth. 却是正确的。

2. She is a strong swimmer and many people feel that she is sure to succeed. 她是一个游泳能手，很多人认为她一定能成功。

● sure 表示"确信"，具体用法如下：

1) be sure to do sth.

e.g. She is sure to win.

2)be sure of sth.

e.g. She is sure of the success.

3)be sure that

e.g. She is sure that she will win.

3. Tomorrow he will be watching her anxiously as she swims the long distance to England. 明天他将焦急地注视着女儿游过这段漫长的距离到达英国。

● 这句话中主句的时态为将来进行时，从句表示的虽然也是将来的动作，但用的是一般现在时。时间状语从句、条件状语从句的主句用将来时态，从句用一般现在时表示将来。

e.g. I'll go with you when he comes back.

● will be watching sb. anxiously as：当……的时候人们会密切(焦急)关注。它是一个在写作中可以套用的结构。

e.g. All the world will be watching anxiously as the war broke out.

4. Debbie intends to take short rests every two hours. 黛比打算每两个小时就休息一次。

● intend 作动词表示"打算做某事"的意思。所以现在我们表达一般将来时就有很多类似的表达：intend to do，plan to do，mean to do，aim to do 等。

e.g. I plan to go to the US after my graduation.

● every 表示"每隔"，如 every four years，every three weeks 等。但如果是"每隔一(周、月、年等)"，我们不说 every one week，every one month，而是用 every other week，every other year。

5. Among them will be Debbie's mother, who swam the Channel herself when she was a girl. 他们当中还会有黛比的母亲，她本人还是个姑娘时，也曾横渡过英吉利海峡！

● 这是个倒装句，为的是与后面的定语从句相连。正常的语序应为：

Debbie's mother will be among them.

语法精析

一、定语从句的种类

定语从句是在复合句中修饰名词或代词的从句。定语从句在句中起定语的作用，被定语从句所修饰的词称为先行词。定语从句必须紧跟在先行词之后。引导定语从句的有：①连接词 that；②关系代词 who，whom，whose，which；③关系副词 when，where，why。

(一)that 从句之一

that 引导定语从句时，可以指人，代替 who 或 whom；也可以指物，代替 which，并在从句中作主语或作从句谓语动词的宾语。例如：

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

The man that(/who) wrote the book is an English professor.

写这本书的人是一位英语教授。(that 作主语)

She is the singer that(/whom) I met last week.

她就是我上周遇见的那位歌唱家。(that 作宾语)

(二)that 从句之二

只用 that 引导定语从句,不用 which 或 who 的三种场合。

(1)先行词被序数词(如 the first,the last,the next 等)、形容词最高级(如 the best,the most,the highest 等)或被 the only,the very,the same 等修饰时,其后的定语从句要用 that 引导,不用 which 或 who。例如:

This is the first English grammar book that she has read.

这是她读过的第一本英语语法书。

(2)先行词为 nothing,all,little,much 等不定代词或先行词被 all,every,few,any,no,some,little 等修饰时,其后的定语从句要用 that 引导,不用 which。something,everything 和 anything 一般要用 that 引导,但偶尔也用 which。例如:

Everything that (或 which) can be done has been done. 一切能做的都做了。

(3)主句以 who 或 which 开头时,定语从句用 that,不用 who,whom 或 which。例如:

Who is the girl that just spoke to you? 刚才同你讲话的那个女孩是谁?

(三)who 从句

who,whom 和 whose 引导定语从句时用于指人。who 在从句中作主语,whom 作谓语动词的宾语或介词的宾语,whose 作定语。注意,whom 作介词的宾语时,介词可以放在 whom 的前面,也可以放在有关动词的后面。例如:

He is the only man who knows the answer to the question.

他是唯一知道那个问题答案的人。

(四)which 从句

which 用来指物,在从句中作主语或谓语动词的宾语。which 在定语从句中还可以作介词的宾语,介词可以放在 which 的前面,也可以放在有关动词的后面。例如:

Is she on the plane which took off half an hour ago?

她在半小时前起飞的那架飞机上吗?

(五)when 从句

关系副词 when 指时间,只能跟在表示时间的名词后面,如 day,year,season,occasion 等,在从句中作时间状语。例如:

October here is a month when the weather is cool.

这里的十月份是个天气凉爽的月份。

(六)where 从句

where 指地点,只能跟在表示地点的名词后面,如 village,town,home,place 等,在从句中作地点状语。例如:

This is the place where I grew up. 这里是我成长的地方。

(七)why 从句

why 指原因,通常跟在 reason 后面(不强调时,reason 可省略),在从句中作原因状语。例如:

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Do you know the reason why he didn't finish the work according to schedule?

你知道他为什么没有按计划完成工作吗？

(八)as 从句

as 可以用作关系代词，在限制性定语从句中，多同 such 或 the same 连用，构成 such... as 和 the same... as 结构，as 的先行词可以是人或物。例如：

He is not such a fool as he looks. 他貌似憨傻，实则不然。

二、倒装句

介词短语表示地点状语在句首，全部倒装(把谓语放在主语之前)。表示地点或时间的状语位于句首时，句子为全部倒装。常见词一般有 here，there，under，below，now，then 等。

Here comes a bus. 过来了一辆公共汽车。

Under a tree was sitting an old man. 树底下坐着一位老人。

Then follows the fashion show. 接下来是时装表演。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 37 The Olympic Games

本课重点和难点

- 将来完成时
- because, as, for, since 的用法

本课词汇

the Olympic Games [ə'limpik geimz] 奥林匹克运动会

hold [həuld] *vt.* 1. 拿着,握着,抓住 2. 托住,支持 3. 占据 4. 抑制,约束 5. 认为 6. 包含,容纳 7. 拥有 *vi.* 1. 持续,保持 2. 有效,适用 *n.* 1. 握住,控制,掌握 2. 船舱

【词组】hold one's own 坚持立场;hold against 责怪;hold back 阻止,抑制,保密;hold down 压制,压抑;hold off 拖延,不接近;hold out 给予;支持;伸出;hold out for 坚持;要求;hold to 遵循;hold up 使停滞;举起来;keep/get/catch/take/lay hold of 握住;控制

【用法】hold 包含,容纳:指在一固定空间内能容纳人或物的能力。有时用于比喻。

government ['gʌvənmənt] *n.* 1. 政府 2. 管理 3. 政体

immense [i'mens] *adj.* 广大的,巨大的

【辨析】immense 指大得难以测量或抽象意义,指规模宏大;huge 指体积大得难以用普通方法计量;vast 指幅员辽阔或范围广大。

stadium ['steidiəm] *n.* 露天体育场

capital ['kæpitl] *n.* 1. 首都,首府 2. 大写(字母) 3. 资本,资金 *adj.* 首要的

fantastic [fæn'tæstik] *adj.* 巨大的

design [di'zain] *vt.* /*vi.* 1. 设计 2. 预定,指定 *n.* 1. 设计,图样 2. 企图

【词组】by design 故意地;have design on (against)对……别有用心

【用法】design 企图,打算:指为实现某种特殊目的而精心策划做某事,并力求做到。

课文详解

1. As a great many people will be visiting the country, the government will be building new hotels, an immense stadium, and a new Olympic-standard swimming pool. 由于将有大批的人到我们国家来,所以政府准备建造一些新的饭店、一个大型体育场和一个新的奥运会标准游泳池。

- as 在这里表示"由于",表示原因。可以用 because 代替。
- Olympic-standard 是个"形容词+名词"形式的复合形容词,作定语。意思是"(符合)奥运会标准的"。large-scale, high/first-class

2. By the end of next year, they will have finished work on the new stadium. 到明年年底,他们

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

将把新体育场建成。

这一句使用了“将来完成时”。将来完成时的用法：

● 表示在将来某一时间之前已完成的动作，并往往对将来某一时间产生影响。

e. g. We shall have learned 12 units by the end of this term.

到这个学期末，我们将学完 12 个单元。

By the time you get home I will have cleaned the house from top to bottom.

你到家之前我将把房子彻底打扫一遍。

3. We are all very excited and are looking forward to the Olympic Games because they have never been held before in this country. 我们都非常激动，盼望着奥运会的到来，因为在这个国家里还从未举办过奥运会。

● look forward to 表示“期待、盼望”的意思，后面要跟名词或者动名词。

e. g. I am looking forward to meeting you soon.

to 作介词的短语还有：object to, be used/accustomed to(习惯), stick to, lead to, admit to, pay attention to, prefer...to 等。

语法精析

一、将来完成时

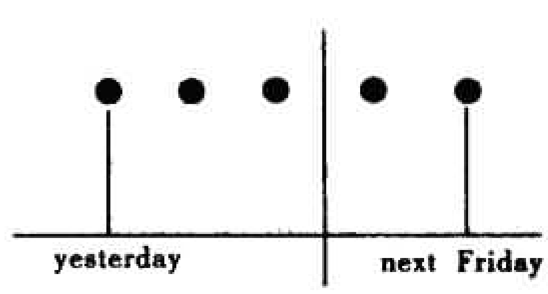
(一)将来完成动作的开始时间

现在完成时，是以“现在”作为“坐标时间”，来描述开始于现在之前(即过去)的动作持续到现在。过去完成时，是以“过去”作为“坐标时间”，来描述开始于过去之前(即过去的过去)的动作持续到过去。同理，将来完成时，是以“将来”作为“坐标时间”，来表示开始于将来之前(可能是过去、现在或将来)的动作持续到将来。注意，这里说动作开始于“将来之前”，意味着动作开始的时间可能是 a)过去某一时刻，b)现在某一时刻，或者也可能是 c)将来某一时刻。但动作开始的时间并不重要，关键是说话人要站在将来的某一时间来谈某一动作的完成情况。

例如：

We will have taken five exams by next Friday. 到下个星期五之前，我们将完成五门考试。

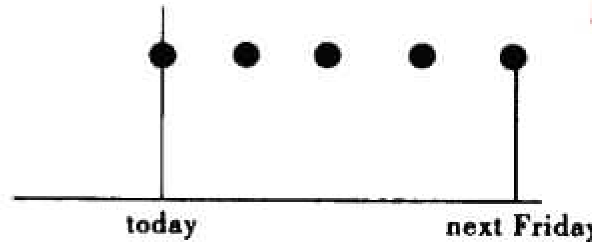
1. 我们可能是昨天开始考试的：We started our exam yesterday and we will have taken five exams by next Friday.



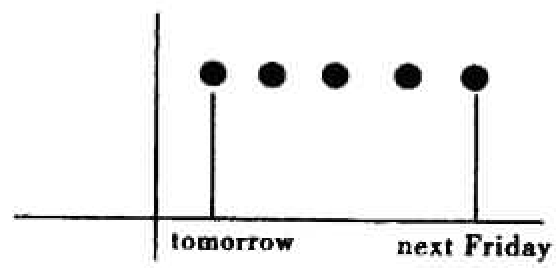
www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. 可能是今天开始考试的：We have started our exam today and we will have taken five exams by next Friday.



3. 也可能是明天才开始考试：We will start our exam tomorrow and we will have taken five exams by next Friday.



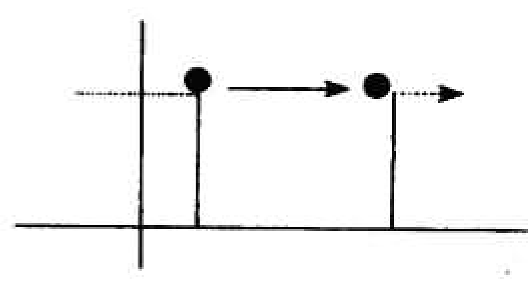
但具体哪一天开始的并不重要，说话人强调的是他们一共有五门考试。

(二)将来完成时的三种用法

同前面其他完成时态一样，将来完成时态基本有三种用法。

1. 如同现在完成时的第一种用法的将来完成时。

图解：

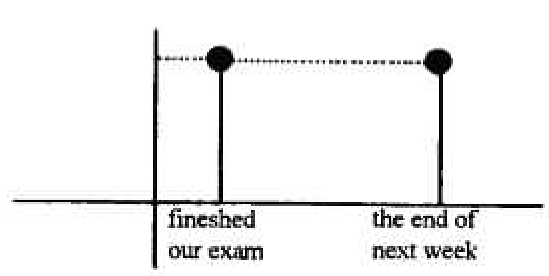


(虚线表示这一动作可能开始于现在或过去；虚箭头表示这一动作可能继续延续下去。)

请看例句：

I will have taught English in New Oriental School for five years by the end of next month. 到下个月结束我已经在新东方学校教了五年英语了。

2. 如同现在完成时的第二种用法的将来完成时。



图解：(虚线表示这一动作对将来有影响。)

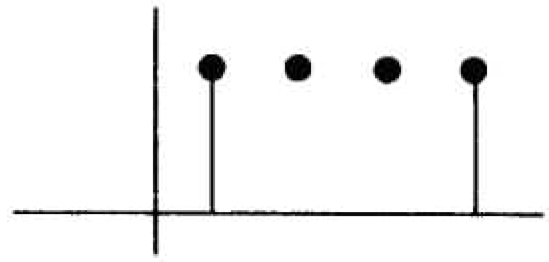
请看例句：

We will have finished our exam by the end of next week. 到下周末我们将结束我们的考试。

3. 在将来之前开始的动作，在将来之前的一段时间内重复发生。如同现在完成时的第三种用法。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com



图解：

请看例句：

By five o'clock this afternoon the spaceship will have traveled eleven times round the world. 到今天下午5点之前，飞船将绕地球11周。

二、because，as，for，since 的用法

as 可以表示“由于”，表示原因，可以用 because 代替。虽然 because，as，for，since 都可以引导原因状语从句但是它们之间还是有细微的区别的。

1. because 表示为他人所不知的直接原因或理由。

—Why are you late again?

—Because I got up late.

——你为什么又迟到？

——因为我起床迟了。

2. as 可用作介词，后跟名词，也可用作连词引导状语从句。多用在口语中表示已知的原因，用于说明做事的理由或依据。

She should stay at home，as she is ill. 因为她有病，她应留在家里。

3. since 表示已知的原因，语气比 as 强，多用于正式文体中，常译成“既然，因为”。

Since we have not enough money，we needn't buy a car.

既然没有足够的钱，我们就不必买汽车。

4. for 用作连词时，引导一个并列句，对前面陈述的事情作补充说明，重于推断的理由，因此 for 引导的从句一定不能放在句首。

It's morning，for the birds are singing. 天亮了(是早晨了)，因为小鸟在歌唱。

for 还可以用作介词，表示引发某种外表行为的起因，或指奖罚、感谢、喜悦及出名的原因。

The boy jumped for joy. 那男孩高兴得跳了起来。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 38 Everything except the weather

本课重点和难点

- 复习将来进行时
- 复习将来完成时
- as if 的用法

本课词汇

except [ik'sept] *prep.* 除了

【辨析】except 指从整体中减去一部分，表示所说的事实不适用于那一部分；besides 指除某东西外还有别的东西，含有。

Mediterranean [ˌmeditə'reiniən] *n.* 地中海 *adj.* 地中海的，地中海沿岸的

complain [kəm'plein] *vi.* 抱怨

【词组】complain about/of 抱怨，诉苦

even though 即使，纵然

continually [kən'tinjuəli] *adv.* 连续地，频频

bitterly ['bitəli] *adv.* 厉害地，非常地

sunshine ['sʌnʃain] *n.* 日光，光照

课文详解

1. He had often dreamed of retiring in England and had planned to settle down in the country. 过去他常幻想退休后到英国，并计划在乡间安顿下来。

● dream of 表示"梦想，幻想，向往"，用法参见 Lesson 22。

★黄金考点词组：settle down，settle for

1) settle down：定居，安顿。

e. g. Uncle George didn't settle down until he was nearly fifty.

乔治叔叔一直到快五十岁时才安顿下来。

I want to get married and settle down.

我想结婚安顿下来。

2) settle for：勉强接受。

e. g. We reached the hotel late and had to settle for a room without a view.

我们到旅馆时已很晚，只好勉强要了一间看不到风景的房间。

Since money was tight，we settled for a short trip to the south.

既然钱紧了一点，我们退而求其次，来一趟短期的南部之旅。

2. He had no sooner returned than he bought a house and went to live there. 他刚一回到英国便买下了一幢房子住了进去。

● no sooner...than 和我们以前讲过的 as soon as 虽然都表示"一……就……"，但 no

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

sooner...than... 只能和过去完成时连用，即 sb. had no sooner done than sb. did...

e. g. I had no sooner finished eating than I went to the toilet.

如果 no sooner 提前，前半句的助动词和主语需要倒装。

e. g. No sooner had I finished eating than I went to toilet.

3. Almost immediately he began to complain about the weather, for even though it was still summer, it rained continually and it was often bitterly cold. 紧接着他就开始抱怨那里的天气了。因为即使那时仍为夏季，但雨总是下个不停，而且常常冷得厉害。

● 该句的第一层是由 for(因为)连接而成的并列句。第二层是 even though 引导的让步状语从句加上主句的关系。第三层是由 and 连接的并列句。

● even though 引导的是让步状语从句，表示"即使"、"虽然"。让步状语从句常见的引导词还有 though，although，even if 等。

e. g. He will come on time even though it rains.

Though they are beggars in India，(yet/still) they have their working time.

4. He acted as if he had never lived in England before. 他的举动就好像他从未在英国生活过一样。

● as if 表示"像……一样"，常用来引导表示方式的状语从句。as if 也可以用 as though 代替。用法详见本课"语法精析"。

5. In the end, it was more than he could bear. 最后，他再也忍受不了了。

● more than：……比……多。

e. g. Sorry, it is more than I can afford.

6. He had hardly had time to settle down when he sold the house and left the country. 还没等安顿下来就卖掉了房子，他就离开了这个国家。

● hardly...when＝no sooner than(用法参见 no sooner...than)

She had hardly arrived in the State when she said goodbye to her husband. 等她和丈夫告别完了，她就离开了这个国家。

hardly 在句首时助动词和主语要倒装。

Hardly had she arrived in the States when she said goodbye to her husband.

语法精析

一、复习将来进行时(参见 Lesson 12，13)

二、复习将来完成时(参见 Lesson 37)

三、as if 的用法

1. 当说话者认为句子所述的是真实的或极有可能发生或存在的事实时，as if 引导的从句用陈述语气。

It sounds as if it is raining. 听起来像是在下雨。

He talks as if he is drunk. 从他谈话的样子来看他是醉了。

2. 当说话人认为句子所述的是不真实的或极少有可能发生或存在的情况时，as if 引导的从句用虚拟语气。虚拟语气中，动词时态的情况如下：

1)如果从句表示与现在事实相反，谓语动词用一般过去时。

You look as if you didn't care. 你看上去好像并不在乎。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

He talks as if he knew where she was. 他说话的样子，好像他知道她在哪里似的。

2)从句表示与过去事实相反，谓语动词用过去完成时。

He talks about Rome as if he had been there before.

他说起罗马来好像他以前去过罗马似的。

The girl listened as if she had been turned to stone.

那女孩倾听着，一动也不动，像已经变成了石头似的。

3)从句表示与将来事实相反，谓语动词用 would/could/might＋动词原形。

He opened his mouth as if he would say something. 他张开嘴好像要说什么。

It looks as if it might snow. 看来好像要下雪了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 39 Am I all right?

本课重点和难点

- 直接引语和间接引语的用法

本课词汇

operation [ˌɔpəˈreiʃən] *n.* 1. 操作，运转，开动 2. 运算 3. (on)手术

【词组】perform an operation on sb.。相当于 operate on sb.。come/go into operation(*vi.*)开始运转，动工。put/bring into operation(*vt.*)使投入生产，使生效，使开始工作

successful [səkˈsesful] *adj.* 成功的

following [ˈfɔləuiŋ] *adj.* 接着的，第二(天)

patient [ˈpeiʃənt] *adj.* 有耐心的，能忍耐的 *n.* 病人，患者

【词组】be patient with sb. 对某人有耐心；be patient of sth. 容忍某物

alone [əˈləun] *adj.* 独自一人的，单独的(没有旁人)*adv.* 单独地，只有，仅仅

【词组】let(leave)... alone 不管，不予理会，听之任之；all alone 孤单的，孤独的

exchange [iksˈtʃeindʒ] *vt.* 交换，互换，兑换 *n.* 1. 交换，交流，兑换 2. 交易所

【词组】in exchange for 交换；exchange rate 汇率

inquire/enquire [inˈkwaiə] *v.* 1. 打听，询问 2. 调查，查问

【词组】inquire 不接双宾语，且不能直接以人作宾语，常使用"inquire sth. of sb."或"inquire of sb. about sth."结构。

certain [ˈsəːtən] *adj.* 1. 一定的；确信的 2. 某一，某，某些

【词组】be certain of, be certain that 确信；be certain to(do)一定(做)，肯定会(做)；make certain(of, that 从句)确定，弄清楚，查明，确保；认为，一定；for certain 肯定地，确实地

caller [ˈkɔːlə] *n.* 打电话的人

relative [ˈrelətiv] *n.* 亲属，亲戚 *adj.* 相比的

【词组】relative to sth. 关于，和……比起来，和……有关

【用法】在指抽象意义的"亲属关系"时应用 relation。表示穷亲戚要说 poor relation，一般不用 relative。直系亲属(如父母、子女等)要用 relation，远房亲戚多用 relative。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

课文详解

1. The following day, the patient asked for a bedside telephone. 第二天，这位病人要了一部床头电话。

● a bedside telephone 床头电话

the hospital exchange, the new oriental exchange 总机

I picked up the receiver and answer the phone.

2. Mr. Gilbert said he was inquiring about a certain patient, a Mr. John Gilbert. 吉尔伯特先生说他想询问一个病人的情况，是一位名叫约翰·吉尔伯特的先生。

● a Mr. John Gilbert 一般而言，姓名前是没有任何定冠词或不定冠词的，而这里的姓名前却加了不定冠词 a，表示对这个人不熟悉，不敢确定情况。

3. He asked if Mr. Gilbert's operation had been successful, 他问吉尔伯特先生的手术是否成功。

● 本课实际上是对 Lesson 15 有关直接引语和间接引语的复习和加深(参见 Lesson 15)。

直接引语转换为间接引语的步骤：

1)陈述句的转述动词一般为 say, tell(陈述句的转换见 Lesson 15)而疑问句的转述动词多为 ask。

2)人称变化。

3)语序用陈述句的语序。

4)对于一般疑问句引导词为 whether, if;对于特殊疑问句的引导词保留原有的疑问词。

5)时态变化：引述动词是一般现在时，间接引语时态不变；引述动词是一般过去时、累加一个过去时，具体时态变化如下所示：

一般现在→一般过去，一般过去→过去完成，一般将来→过去将来，

现在完成→过去完成，现在进行→过去进行

e. g. He said, "I'm busy. "→He said that he was busy.

He aked, "Are you busy?" →He asked whether you were busy.

He asked, "Why are you busy?"→ He asked why you were busy.

6)如果不是当天转述，还存在时间地点以及指示代词的变化。

e. g. She said, "I will be here tomorrow. "

She said that she would be there the next day.

语法精析

直接引语和间接引语

(一)基本概念

1. 直接引语。

He asked his doctor, " Has my operation been successful? /Was my operation successful?"他问医生，"我的手术成功吗?"(直接引用别人的话，放入引号内)

2. 间接引语。

He asked his doctor whether his operation had been successful.

他问医生他的手术是否成功。(间接转述他人的话)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(二)直接引语转化为间接引语的规律

	直接引语	间接引语	
句子结构变化	陈述句	say that.../tell sb. that...	
	一般疑问句	ask whether/if... wonder whether/if... want to know if/whether...	
	选择疑问句	ask/wonder whether...or.../or not	
	特殊疑问句	ask/wonder+wh-疑问词+陈述句语气	
	祈使句	tell/ask/order+宾语+(not)to do...	
代称/代词变化	第一/二人称	第三人称	
	第二人称	第三人称	
	this/that	that/the	
	these/those	those/the	
谓语时态	一般现在时	一般过去时	例外：
	一般过去时	过去完成时	He said,"The sun rises in the east."—He said that the sun rises in the East.(引语表客观真理/谚语)
	一般将来时	过去将来时	He said,"PRC was founded in 1949."—He said that PRC was founded in 1949.(引语中有明确时间状语)
	现在进行时	过去进行时	
	现在完成时	过去完成时	
情态动词	can	could	
	may	might	
	must	must(表推测);must/had to/would have to	
	dare not	dare not/did not dare to	
	need not	need not/didn't have to/didn't need to/wouldn't have to/ought to/should	
	ought to		
状语变化	today—that day; this afternoon—that afternoon; yesterday—the day before/the previous day; yesterday morning—the morning before/the previous morning; now—then; here—there; 3 years ago—3 years before; tomorrow—the next/following day; last week—the week before; next year—the next/following year; the day before yesterday—two days before; the day after tomorrow—in two days' time/two days later/after two days		

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 40 Food and talk

本课重点和难点

● 虚拟语气(Ⅰ)

本课词汇

hostess ['həustis] *n.* 女主人

unsmiling [ʌn'smailiŋ] *adj.* 不笑的，严肃的

tight [tait] *adj.* 1. 紧的 2. 紧身的，紧贴的 3. 密封的，不适……的 *adv.* 紧紧地

fix [fiks] *v.* 1. 使固定 2. 注视，专心于，吸收 3. 决定，确定 4. 凝视 5. 安排 6. 选定 7. 修理，准备

【词组】fix on 指向，专心于；fix sb. /sth. up 解决，预备；fix upon 选定

The Globe [gləub] *n.* 环球剧院

despair [dis'pεə] *n.* 绝望 *v.* 对……绝望

【词组】be the despair of sb. 使某人放弃希望

in despair 感到绝望，在失望之中

课文详解

1. Last week at a dinner-party, the hostess asked me to sit next to Mrs. Rumbold. 在上星期的一次宴会上，女主人安排我坐在兰伯尔德夫人的身旁。

● next to：与……相邻，在……之后。

e. g. There's a field/shop next to our house.

I am next to nobody in the exam.

2. Mrs. Rumbold was a large, unsmiling lady in a tight black dress. 兰伯尔德夫人是一位身材高大、表情严肃的女人，穿一件紧身的黑衣服。

● in 引导短语作定语、表语，表示状态、特征。

e. g. A young man in a blue dress is inquiring after you.

I was in my early twenties.

I was in bad temper yesterday.

3. Her eyes were fixed on her plate and in a short time, she was busy eating. 她的眼睛紧紧地盯着盘子，不一会儿，她就忙着吃了起来。

● fix one's eyes on... 表示"盯着……看"，可以和 stare/gaze at 替换。

● 在 be busy (in)＋动名词，waste time(in)＋动名词，lost time(in)＋动名词，There is no point(in)＋动名词等结构中，动名词作介词宾语，in 常要省去。

e. g. She's busy doing the homework.

She's busy with the homework.

There is no point fighting with him.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

4. A new play is coming to "The Globe" soon. 一出新剧不久就要在环球剧院上映了。

- 这里用现在进行时表示将来，类似的用法在 Lesson 2 中出现过。
- come to the theater 上映。也可以说 the film is on，例如：
  The film is playing at the cinema.

5. If you ate more and talked less, we would both enjoy our dinner! 如果你能多吃东西少说话，我们两个都会更加享受这顿晚餐的！

- 这是一个 if 引导的非真实条件句，即 if 引导的虚拟语气的句子。

语法精析

虚拟语气(Ⅰ)

if 引导的虚拟语气

使用虚拟语气的主要句型	谓语动词的虚拟形式	例　句
表现在的虚拟条件句	从句：动词用过去时(be 多用 were) 主句：woulld/should/could/might + 动词原形	1. If I were you, I should study English. 2. I would certainly go if I had time.
表过去的虚拟条件句	从句：had + 过去分词 主句：would/should/could/might + have + 过去分词	1. If you had taken my advice, you would not have failed in the test. 2. If I had left a little earlier, I would have caught the train.
表将来的虚拟条件句	从句：①用动词过去时② should + 动词原形③(were+ to do) 主句：would/should/could/might + have + 过去分词	1. If it were to rain tomorrow, the meeting would be put off. 2. If you came tomorrow, we would have the meeting.
省略 if 的条件句	从句：用倒装形式，即把 were, had 等置于句首(并只限 were/ had)。主句：根据虚拟的情况采取与从句相应的形式。	1. Were I in school again (= If I were in school again), I would work harder. 2. Were it not for the rain, (不能说 Weren't it for the rain), I would go swimming.
错综时间条件句(从句与主句所表示时间不一致)	根据从句与主句表示的不同时进行调整。	1. If you had worked hard yesterday, you would be tired now. 2. If we hadn't been working hard in the past few years, things would be going so smoothly.
含蓄条件句(虚拟条件暗含在短语或上下文之中，从句不表现出来，常见有 but for"要不是"without 等)	根据句子表达的实际情况选用相应的虚拟条件句中的主句的动词形式。	1. Without air, there would be no living things. 2. I would have given you more help, but I was busy now.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 41 Do you call that a hat?

本课重点和难点

- 虚拟语气(Ⅱ)
- 情态动词 must，have to，need

本课词汇

rude [ru:d] *adj.* 1. 粗鲁的，不礼貌的 2. 粗糙的，粗陋的

【词组】in rude health 十分健壮的

mirror [ˈmirə] *n.* 镜子 *vt.* 反映，反射

hole [həul] *n.* 1. 洞，孔，坑，兽穴 2. 窘境 *v.* 1. 穿孔于，打入洞 2. 躲避

【词组】make a hole in 用去一笔钱；hold up 藏

【用法】hole 洞，孔：一般用语，指天然的或人造的大小洞穴。有时用于比喻。

remark [riˈmɑ:k] *vt./vi.* 说，评论，议论 *n.* 评论，看法

【词组】remark on/upon sth. 对……发表看法

almost [ˈɔ:lməust] *adv.* 几乎，差不多

【用法】1. almost 在肯定句中位于它所修饰的动词前，或助动词和 be 的后面，不能置于句末。I have almost finished my work. 我差不多做完了我的工作。2. 在否定句中 almost 位于否定式或动词之前。3. almost 之后可接 nothing，none，no，never 等词，而其同义词 nearly 不能。4. 指只差一点儿就达到了某种数量，强调在程度、空间或时间上相差无几。

remind [riˈmaind] *vt.* 提醒，使想起

【词组】remind sb. of sth./sb. 使某人想起某事(人)

【用法】remind 后的宾语都是人，其内容由 of＋名词(或动名词)、不定式短语或 that 从句表示。用 of＋动名词表示已发生过的事，用不定式表示要做的事。of 后也可接 what 从句。

lighthouse [ˈlaithaus] *n.* 灯塔

课文详解

1. Do you call that a hat?（标题）你把那个叫帽子吗？

● call sth. sth. 这是一个复合宾语的结构，表示“把……称为什么”。

e. g. I call my pet dog Wangwang.

我把我的宠物狗称为旺旺。

2. 'You needn't be so rude about it,' my wife answered as she looked at herself in the mirror. “你说话没必要这样不客气，”我的妻子边回答边照着镜子。

3. We mustn't buy things we don't need. 我们不应该买我们不需要的东西。

● 这里的 need 是个实义动词，表示“需要”，we don't need 实际上是一个定语从句，修饰前面的先行词 things。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

4. I regretted saying it almost at once. 但马上又后悔说了这话。

● regret 可以表示两种截然不同的含义：

1)在 regret doing sth. 或者 regret + that 从句的结构中，regret 通常表示"为做过的某件事感到后悔、懊悔"。

e. g. I now regret leaving my country/that I have left my country.

我现在后悔离开了自己的祖国。

He regretted having been rude to her.

他后悔自己对她无礼。

2)regret 后面跟不定式 regret to do sth.，则表示"对现在或将来要做的事感到抱歉、遗憾"，比 be sorry to do sth. 要正式。

e. g. We regret to tell you that you are not welcome.

我们很遗憾地告诉您，您不受欢迎。

5. 'You needn't have said that.' my wife answered. 'I needn't remind you of that terrible tie you bought yesterday.'

"你没必要这么说，"我妻子回答说，"我也不必提醒你昨天买的那条糟糕透了的领带。"

● 这句中出现的两个 need，均为情态动词。其中，needn't have done 表示"过去本来用不着做某事，而实际上已经做了"。

e. g. You needn't have bought the book, I've got one.

● remind 即可以表示"提醒"，用在 remind sb. to do sth. 的结构中，如：

Remind me to bring the book.

也可以表示"让……想起"，用在 remind sb. of sth. 的结构中，如：

This letter reminds me of him.

6. 'I find it beautiful.' I said. 'A man can never have too many ties.'"我觉得它好看，"我说，"男人有多少领带也不会嫌多。"

● find it beautiful 是一个复合宾语的结构，句中的 it 是宾语，beautiful 用来补充说明宾语 it，在语法上称作宾语补足语。我们常简称为宾补。类似的用法曾经出现在 Lesson 4 中。

e. g. I find it interesting.（形容词作宾补）

I find it an interesting job.（名词作宾补）

I find him at home.（介词短语作宾补）

● can not/can never...too...是固定搭配，表示"无论怎么……也不过分"。（黄金句型）

e. g. Drinking water can't be too clean.

We can not emphasize the importance of knowledge too much.

语法精析

一、虚拟语气（Ⅱ）

迄今为止，我们已经接触了不少的虚拟语气的用法，在此作一个归纳总结：

1. if 非真实条件句（参见 Lesson 40）。

2. should+动词原形的虚拟语气。

一般而言，这样的虚拟语气，主要用于名词性从句（即主语从句、宾语从句、表语和同位

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

语从句)。

1)在主语从句中用以表示惊奇、惋惜、理应如此，构成 It is natural (important, necessary, strange, a pity, a shame 等) that...的句型结构。

It is natural that the husband(should)say sorry to his wife.

It is necessary that everybody be informed about the change of the schedule.

2)用于表示命令、建议这类动词(suggest, insist, demand, request, command 等)后的宾语从句。

The young man insisted that he(should)be sent to do the work.

The doctor suggests that he have more rest.

应当尤为注意的是：当 insist 表示对已发生过的事物的看法，作“坚持说，坚持认为”解，或当 suggest 表示“说明了，暗示”的含义时，从句用直陈语气而无需用虚拟语气。

The Arab insisted that he hadn't seen the camel.

Her complexion suggests that he is very healthy.

3)当表示要求、建议、命令、决定等名词(suggestion, request, order, advice, idea 等)作主语时，其表语从句仍然使用 should+动词原形。

The officer's order was that his soldiers(should)repair the defence works at once.

4)上述名词的同位语从句也应用 should+动词原形。

His suggestion that you should keep silent is reasonable.

3. wish, would rather, as if/though 后引导的从句。

如果从句表示的动作发生在过去，用过去完成时；指现在状况，则用一般过去时；指将来状况则用 would/should/could + do。

I wish it would rain tomorrow.

He did it as if he were an expert.

4. It's(about/high)time that...

该句型中 that 引导的从句要求用虚拟语气形式，即动词要用过去式。

It's very late. It's time we had to go.

二、情态动词 must, have to, need

(一)need

1. 作情态动词的 need 表示“需要”的意思，主要用于否定句和疑问句中。在否定句中意为“不需要”常缩写为 needn't，肯定回答多改用 must, have to, ought to 或 should。没有人称和时态的变化，后接动词原形。在疑问句中，need 意为“需要，必须”。

You need buy another dictionary. 你需要再买一本辞典。

—Need I come tonight? 今晚我需要来吗?

—Yes, you must. 是的，需要来。

—No, you needn't. 不，你不必来了。

2. need 主要用作实义动词，后接带 to 的不定式，有一般现在时第三人称单数形式(即加词尾-s)，现在分词形式为 needing，过去式和过去分词形式为 needed。可用于不同的句型中。

The soup needs salt. 这汤需要加盐。

You didn't need to hurry. 你用不着匆忙。

3. “needn't+have+过去分词”表示“做了不必要做的事”，“本可不必”。作为情态动词的 need 在这一结构中一般只用于否定句或疑问句。“needn't+have+过去分词”与“didn't need”的意思不

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

同,试比较:

She needn't have come to see me last night. 昨晚她本可不必来看我。(实际上来了)

She didn't need to come to see me last night. 昨晚她不需来看我。(实际上没来)

(二)must 与 have to 的用法区别(参见 Lesson 17)

考题 1 You ________ smoke in the public places. You'll be fined for that. 你不准在公共场合吸烟。你会因此而被罚款的。

A. do not have to　　B. must not

答案解析: B。must not 表示"不准",don't have to 表示"不必"。

考题 2 You ________ your teacher with such simple questions. 你不要总用这样简单的问题打扰老师。

A. mustn't always be bothering　　B. don't have always to bother

答案解析: A。must not be+现在分词表示"不该,不要"等不满语气。

考题 3 Every student ________ take exams at the end of the semester. 每位学生期末都要参加考试。

A. must　　B. have to

答案解析: A。must 侧重主观色彩,表示出于责任、义务或命令;have to 表示客观上的"必须"。

考题 4 ________ be so late for school? 你上学偏要迟到吗?

A. Must you　　B. Do you have to

C. Have you to

答案解析: A。must 可用于表示对事与愿违的事的不耐烦口气,相当于"偏要"。

(三)情态动词与实意动词区别

情态:1. 基本无时态、人称变化。

2. 后接动词原形。

3. 后不接名词作宾语。

4. 否定式加 not,疑问句把情态动词提前。

实意:1. 有时态人称变化。

2. 后不接动词原形(动名词或不定式)。

3. 后可接名词作宾语。

4. 其否定句疑问句靠助动词帮助完成。

另外 need 可以作为名词,如:

We have no need to be afraid of them.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 42 Not very musical

本课重点和难点

- have＋a＋动作名词
- 非谓语结构——动词不定式（Ⅰ）

本课词汇

musical ['mju:zikəl] *adj.* 爱好音乐的

market ['mɑ:kit] *n.* 1. 市场，集市 2. 销路，需求 *v.* 销售

【词组】in/on the market 出售中，销售中；in the market for 准备购买……，准备考虑……；make a/one's market of 利用，利用……赚钱

snake charmer 玩蛇者

pipe [paip] *n.* 管子，导管，烟斗 *vt.* 用管道输送

【词组】pipe down 沉默下来，静下来；pipe up 用尖锐的声音说起来；pipe clay 白黏土（陶制烟管的原料）；pipe dream 不实际的想法，黄粱梦；pipe organ 管风琴；pipe rack 烟斗架

tune [tju:n] *n.* 1. 曲调，曲子 2. 和谐，协调 *vt.* 1. 为（乐器）调音 2. 调节

【词组】in tune 调子准确（不走调）；in tune with 与……调和，和……协调；out of tune 不协调；tune up 把……的音调好，调音

glimpse [glimps] *v.* /*n.* 一瞥，瞥见

snake [sneik] *n.* 蛇

movement ['mu:vmənt] *n.* 1. 活动，运动 2. 移动，迁移

continue [kən'tinju:] *v.* 连续，继续，延伸

【词组】to be continued 未完，待续；continue to do sth. /continue doing sth. 继续做某事；continue with sth. 继续某事

obviously ['ɔbviəsli] *adv.* 明显地，显然地

difference ['difərəns] *n.* 不同，相异；（在意见上）发生分歧

【词组】make a (great) difference 有影响（关系重大）；make all the difference 产生极大差异；天壤之别；make no difference 没有多大差别

【用法】difference 差别，差异：一般用语，指某些事物通过比较，在本质上、数量上、大小上毫无相似之处。

Indian ['indiən] *adj.* 印度的

课文详解

1. As we had had a long walk through one of the markets of old Delhi, we stopped at a square to have a rest. 当我们穿过旧德里的市场时走了很长一段路，我们在一个广场上停下来休息。

● have a long walk：走了很长一段路。

这里"have a＋名词"的结构可以用来代替相对应的普通动词。这种用法多半是限于名词和动词基本上同形的单词。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

e. g. Jim and I have just had a long talk.

=Jim and I have just talked.

我和吉姆刚进行过一次长谈。

I must have a wash before lunch.

=I must wash before lunch.

午饭前我得洗一洗。

● stopped to have a rest。停下来休息。

stop to do sth. 表示"停下(手头上的事)去做(另一件)事",而 stop doing sth. 则表示"停止做某事"。

e. g. Stop to listen! 停下来注意听!

Stop talking! 别讲话了!

2. After a time, we noticed a snake charmer with two large baskets at the other side of the square, so we went to have a look at him. 过了一会儿,我们注意到广场的那一边有一个带着两个大筐的耍蛇人,于是就走过去看看。

● After a time:过了一会儿;不久以后。time 在这里表示"一段时间"。相当于我们在第 35 课中学过的 while。

● 这里的 have a look at = look at,用法同 have a long walk。

3. When he began to play tune, we had our first glimpse of the snake. 当他开始吹奏一支曲子时,我们才第一次看到那条蛇。

● glimpse 表示"(不经意地)一瞥、一看",可以作可数名词,常用于下列短语中,have/get/catch a glimpse of...;也可以作不及物动词使用,如 glimpse at...。

★ 四级词汇辨析:glance、glimpse、stare、gaze、gape、glare、peer, peep 这一组动词都含有"看"的意思。

1) glance:表示(粗略地、随便地有意识)一瞥,看一眼。

e. g. He glanced over the letter he had just received.

他把刚收到的那封信粗略地看了一遍。

2) glimpse:与 glance 意思相近,但是更强调是无意识地看一眼,一瞥。

3)stare:指由于好奇、惊讶、赞叹等原因而瞪大眼睛长时间地、直接地注视,常常含有粗鲁无礼的意思。

e. g. I told my son to stop staring at that fat woman, it wasn't nice.

4)gaze:则侧重指由于好奇、感叹、长时间目不转睛地看。

e. g. She gazed at her beautiful new diamond ring.

5)gape:更多的时候表示(张着嘴、瞪大眼睛)呆看,强调一种吃惊的状态。

e. g. The children gaped at the big elephant in the zoo.

6)glare:表示"怒目而视",强调怀有敌意或在气愤的情绪下看。

e. g. The woman glared at the man after he shouted rudely at her.

7)peer:指眯起眼睛仔细看,尤指看不清楚的情况下费力地看,凝视。

e. g. Being somewhat short-sighted, she has the habit of peering at people.

8) peep:是个贬义词,表示"窥视,偷看"。

e. g. The mother peeped into the bedroom to see if her child was asleep.

4. It rose out of the basket and began to follow the movements of the pipe. 它从筐里探出身子,随着乐器的摆动而扭动。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

★ 四级词汇比较 rise, raise, arise

1) rise(rose, risen)"上升", 不及物动词。

e. g. The sun rises in the east.

2) raise(raised, raised)"使上升", 及物动词。

e. g. He raises his hand.

3) arise(arose, arisen)"产生, 起因于", 不及物动词。

e. g. Accidents arise from carelessness.

5. The snake, however, continued to 'dance' slowly. It obviously could not tell the difference between Indian music and jazz! 然而那蛇却还是缓慢地"舞动"着。显然,它分辨不出印度音乐和爵士乐!

● tell 这里表示"辨别(distinguish)。表示是否可以分辨、辨别时,常与 can/could/be able to 连用,表示两者之间的"差别"、"差异"时常用 difference between。比如:

Could you tell the different between the twins?

语法精析

一、have+a+动作名词

英语中某些常用动词可转化为动作名词,与"have a..."连用,语义基本不变,如:

have a walk in the garden 园中散步(=walk in the garden); have a rest 休息(=rest);

have a glimpse of... 瞥了一眼(=glimpse at...); have a look at... 看了一眼(=look at...);

have a smoke 吸烟(=smoke); have a drink of water 喝水(=drink water);

have a talk with... 与某人谈谈(=talk with...); have a ride in a bus 坐公交车(=ride in a bus);

have a wash 洗手(=wash); have a swim 游泳(=swim);

have a fight/quarrel with... 与某人争吵(=fight/quarrel with...);

have a try at... 尝试(=try to do...)。

二、非谓语结构——动词不定式(Ⅰ)

(一)动词不定式作宾语

有些及物动词如 ask, agree, beg, care, choose, decide, expect, force, fail, hesitate, claim, hope, learn, long, manage, offer, pretend, plan, prepare, promise, refuse, want 等要求动词不定式作宾语。

He had no choice but to work hard. 他没有别的选择,只有更加努力工作。

She did nothing but cry. 她什么也不做,只是哭。(不带 to 的不定式)

考题: China has promised to revise its existing regulations and ________ new policies according to WTO requirements.

A. forming　　B. to form　　C. to be forming　　D. have formed

答案解析: B。不定式 to form 和 to revise 都属于 promise 的宾语。

(二)动词不定式作补足语

动词不定式作补语时,有的带 to 有的不带 to。

1. 用带 to 的不定式作宾补的动词有 ask, allow, get, warn, tell, invite, force, oblige, beg,

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

wish, want, like, hate, expect, encourage, advise, persuade, permit, request, order, cause, know, call on 等。

Mrs Smith warned her daughter never to drive after drinking. 史密斯夫人告诫女儿不要酒后开车。

2. 用不带 to 的不定式作宾补的动词有 see, hear, watch, notice, observe, listen to, look at, feel, let, have, make 等。但是，这类句子变为被动语态时，不定式符号 to 仍保留。

They knew her very well. They had seen her grow up from childhood. 他们非常了解她，是看着她从小长大的。

(三)动词不定式作状语

不定式通常在句子里可作目的、原因和结果状语。

"too... to"结构表示"太……以致不……"，后面的不定式具有否定的含义。

I buried my face in my hands to conceal my emotion. 为了掩盖我的激动情绪，我用手捂着脸。

考题： ________ the project as planned, we'll have to work two more hours a day.

A. Completing　　B. Complete　　C. Completed　　D. To complete

答案解析：D。题干中"we'll have to work two more hours a day"已经包含一个可以单独构成陈述句的主谓结构，由此推知前面表目的的成分只能是非谓语动词，下画线处选用不定式 to complete 充当目的状语最为适合。

(四)不定式的"for/of＋名词/代词＋不定式"的结构，这是不定式的复合结构

It's kind of you to say so. 谢谢你的美言。

It's unbelievable for a child to do that job. 让一个孩子做这项工作真是不可思议。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 43 Over the South Pole

本课重点和难点

- 主语从句
- 复习 can, be able to

本课词汇

pole [pəul] *n.* 1. 柱，杆 2. 地极，磁极，电极

【词组】negative pole 负极

the South Pole 南极

the North Pole 北极

flight [flait] *n.* 1. 飞行，飞翔 2. 航班，航程 3. 逃跑，溃退

explorer [iks'plɔːrə] *n.* 探险者，考察者

lie[1] [lai] *v.* 1. 躺 2. 平放 3. 位于 4.（指抽象事物）存在，在于

【词组】lie behind sth. 是某事的原因或理由；lie back 休息，放松；lie in 睡懒觉；lie on one's back/side/front 仰卧/侧卧/俯卧；lie over 留待以后处理；lie to 抛锚，停泊；lie up 卧床休息；lie with sb.（to do sth.）是某人的义务或责任

【用法】1. 可作系动词，后接形容词、分词、名词、介词短语等。The machine lay idle all the week. 这机器整整一周没有开动。2. 作"在于"讲时，后接 in＋抽象名词或动名词。The remedy lies in education. 医治办法在于教育。

【辨析】lie 指平放，如河海、道路、城市等；stand 指竖立的物体的放置，如树、建筑物等。

lie[2] [lai] *v.* 说谎 *n.* 谎话

【词组】lie in one's teeth 扯弥天大谎；lie in state(尸体)供人瞻仰；lie low 躲藏；lie one's way into/out of sth. 撒谎以求得逞或摆脱困境；give the lie to sth. 证明某事不实；live a lie 虚伪做人；mail a lie 揭穿谎言

serious ['siəriəs] *adj.* 1. 严肃的、严重的 2. 严重的，危急的 3. 认真的

【词组】a serious young man 一个特严肃的年轻人；a serious warning 严重警告；serious illness 重病

【辨析】serious 和 grave 均有"严肃，严重"的意思。serious 指人或人的行为时表示"严肃"，是轻佻、儿戏的反义词，其语气比 grave 轻。

point [pɔint] *n.* 1. 要点，论点，观点 2. 尖，尖端 3. 点，小数点 4. 条款，细目 5. 分数，得分 *vi.* 指，指向，表明

【词组】come to the point 说到要点；on the point of 正当……的时候；point out 指出；to the point 恰当的例子；catch the point 抓住要点

seem [siːm] *v.* 仿佛，好像

crash [kræʃ] *v.* 坠，碰撞

sack [sæk] *n.* 麻袋，包，袋 *v.* 解雇

【词组】give sb. the sack 开除某人，解雇某人；get the sack 被解雇

【用法】sack 口袋，包：指用粗布或厚纸等材料制成的长方形的大口袋，一般用来装

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

煤、面粉等物。

clear [kliə] *vt.* 穿过，越过

【词组】clear away 收拾；clear off 摆脱，走开

aircraft [ˈɛəkrɑːft] *n.* 飞机，航空器

endless [ˈendlis] *adj.* 一望无际的，无边无际的

plain [plein] *n.* 平原，旷野

课文详解

1. In 1929, three years after his flight over the North Pole, the American explorer, R. E. Byrd, successfully flew over the South Pole for the first time. 美国探险家 R. E. 伯德在飞越北极 3 年之后，于 1929 年第一次飞越了南极。

● 句子主干为 the American explorer flew over the South Pole. 这句话包含两个同位语：three years after...为 1929 的同位语，作插入性的补充说明；R. E. Byrd 作 the American explorer 的同位语。

● 经典句型模仿，我们可以模仿课文的句子写出同样复杂的句子来。

e. g. In 2008, 4 years after the Athens Olympic Games, Beijing, the capital of China will host the 29th Olympic Games for the very first time.

2. Though, at first, Byrd and his men were able to take a great many photographs of the mountains that lay below, they soon ran into serious trouble. 虽然开始时伯德和他的助手们拍下了飞机下面连绵群山的大量照片，但他们很快就陷入了困境。

● 连词 though 引导的是让步状语从句，其含义为“虽然……”、“尽管……”。这个从句中的时间状语 at first 被单独用逗号隔开了，从句中 mountains 后面又跟了一个定语从句。

● run into trouble“陷入困境”：get/come/fall into trouble，或者直接说 have trouble。

3. ...It seems certain that their plane would crash. 在有个地方，飞机似乎肯定要坠毁了。

● It seems that...与主语＋seem to do sth. 两个句型是可以互换的。

e. g. I seem to have seen him somewhere before.

＝It seems that I have seen him somewhere before.

4. It could only get over the mountains if it rose to 10,000 feet. 只有在飞至 10,000 英尺的高度时，它才能飞过这些山头。

● can/could/be able to

1)第 19 课的语法中，我们学习了情态助动词 can/could 用于表示请求别人允许或答复时的情况。

e. g. Can/Could I borrow your umbrella(please)?

可以借用一下你的雨伞吗？(could 比 can 更客气、委婉)

2)在表示成功地完成某一具体动作时，通常不用 could，而用 be able to；如果表示某一动作没有取得成功，则可用 couldn't：

e. g. It's a pity he couldn't visit Mary. 很遗憾他没能去看望玛丽。

Oh, didn't you know? He was able to visit her after all.

噢，你不知道吗？他最终还是能去看她了。

3)be able to 和 can 表示能力时用法相同，但 can 只有现在式和过去式两种形式，be able to 可以用于各种时态。

e. g. We will be able to go tomorrow. 我们将在明天去。

● 黄金词组 get over

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

1)克服。

e. g. She can't get over her shyness.

2)从(疾病、失望、震惊等)中恢复过来。

e. g. She seemed to get over the death of her husband in no time.

3)把……忘怀。

e. g. He never got over losing his first girlfriend.

4)越过。

e. g. It could only get over the mountains if it rose to 10,000 feet.

5. The plane was then able to rise and it cleared the mountains by 400 feet. 它在离山头400英尺的高度飞越了过去。

● by 表示幅度。

e. g. I survived my wife by 2 years.

语法精析

一、主语从句

主语从句在句中作主语。它可以放在主句谓语动词之前，但多数情况由it作形式主语，而把主语从句放在主句之后。

Whoever breaks the rule should be punished. 无论谁违反这条规定都要受到惩罚。

Does it matter much that they will not come tomorrow? 他们明天不来，关系大吗？

It's strange that he(should)attend such an important meeting.

真奇怪，他竟能参加如此重要的会议。

有些"it... ＋主语从句"已成为固定形式。如：

1. It is＋名词＋从句

It's a pity that he didn't finish college. 真遗憾他没有读完大学。

2. It is＋形容词＋从句

It's lucky that he's a friend of mine. 很幸运他是我的朋友。

3. It is＋过去分词＋从句

It is said/reported that... 据说……

It has been proved that... 已经证明……

It must be pointed out that... 必须指出的是……

通常情况下，用it代替主语从句，作形式主语，而把主语从句后置。如果句子是疑问形式，则只能用it作形式主语。试比较：

<u>It</u> does not matter <u>when he leaves.</u> 他什么时候动身都没有关系。

Has it been decided <u>where the meeting is to be held?</u> 会议在何处举行已经决定了吗？

考题： It has been proved ________ eating vegetables in childhood helps to protect you against serious illnesses in later life.

A. if　　B. because　　C. when　　D. that

答案解析： D。题干中下画线处后面为一个完整的陈述句，是全句真正的主语(句首的it为形式主语)，下画线处应填入that引导其主语从句。

二、复习 can, be able to(参见 Lesson 19)

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 44 Through the forest

本课重点和难点

- 非谓语结构——动词不定式(Ⅱ)

本课词汇

forest [ˈfɔrist] *n.* 森林

【辨析】forest 指大森林，地域广大，远离人烟且有野兽的天然森林。woods 指小森林或树林，离人烟较近，比 forest 小。grove 指林子或树丛。以上都是天然森林，而 plantation 是指人造林，jungle 专指热带丛林。

risk [risk] *vt.* 冒……的险 *n.* 冒险，风险

【词组】at one's own risk 自担风险；at risk 处于风险之中；at the risk of 冒……的危险；be a good risk 是靠得住的人；run a risk 冒险；run the risk of 冒……的危险；take a risk (risks) 冒危险；take the risk of/that 冒……的危险

picnic [ˈpiknik] *n.* 野餐

【词组】have a picnic 举行野餐；go for a picnic 去野餐

edge [edʒ] *n.* 1. 边，棱 2. 刀口，刃 *v.* 侧身移动，挤进

【词组】be on edge 坐立不安；have the edge on/over 胜过，优于

【用法】edge 边，边缘：指两物体彼此相接的地方。有时指平面物体沿线部分。

strap [stræp] *n.* 带，皮带

possession [pəˈzeʃən] *n.* 持有，拥有；所有权，所有物 [*pl.*]财产，财富

【词组】in possession of 所有……，拥有……；come into/get possession of 获得，得到

out of breath 上气不接下气

content[1] [ˈkɔntent] *n.* 1. 容量，含量 2. 内容 3. 书刊的目录

【用法】the content of the book 书的内容；the contents of the book 书的目录

content[2] [kənˈtent] *adj.* 愿意的，满足的 *n.* 满足，愿意 *v.* 使满足

【词组】be content to do 愿意做；be content with 满足于

mend [mend] *vt.* 修理，缝补，改进，改正 *n.* 修理

课文详解

1. Mrs. Anne Sterling did not think of the risk she was taking when she ran through a forest after two men. 安·斯特林夫人在穿过森林追赶两个男人时，她并没有考虑到所冒的风险。

- 该句中 she was taking 是跟在 risk 后的定语从句，when 引导的状语从句作时间状语。
- think of 想到，*vi.* + of 结构。类似的有：read of 读到，看到；hear of 听到；speak of 讲到。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

● run after 表示"追赶",可以与 chase 互换。

e. g. Dogs like running after rabbit.

也可以表示"追求"的含义,可与 pursue 互换。

e. g. He is running after that girl.

2. They had rushed up to her while she was having a picnic at the edge of a forest with her children and tried to steal her handbag. 刚才,当她和孩子们正在森林边上野餐的时候,这两个人冲到她跟前,企图抢走她的手提包。

● and 作为连接词连接两个并列句,while 引导的状语从句做前半句的时间状语。

● rush up to…,表示"冲向……",介词 to 在这里表方向,而副词 up 则包含了"逼近"的含义,up to 可以和 towards 互换。

e. g. He came up to me to borrow my lighter.

The child ran up to his mother when he saw her.

=The child ran towards his mother when he saw her.

★ 词汇辨析 steal, rob

1)steal 意为"偷",其宾语是物,而不是被盗者本人。其常用结构是:steal + something + from + somebody /somewhere。如:

He stole much money from the shop but was caught soon after.

2)rob 意为"抢",其宾语总是人(被劫者)或某一机构(地方),而不被劫走的物。其结构是:rob + somebody/somewhere + of + something。如:

The police have caught the man who robbed a woman of a lot of money last month.

3. In the struggle, the strap broke and, with the bag in their possession. both men started running through the trees. 在争抢中,手提包的带断了,包落入这两个人手里,他们拔腿跑进了树林。

● start to do=start doing; begin to do=begin doing 开始做某事

1)某些动词后接动名词与接不定式意义相同,这类动词常用的有 start, begin, continue.

2)某些动词后接动名词与接不定式意义不同,这类动词常用的有 remember, forget, regret, stop, try, mean 等。

remember, forget, regret 后接不定式表示未发生的动作,接动名词表示已发生的动作。

e. g. I remember seeing you somewhere in Guilin. 我记得在桂林的什么地方见到过你。(seeing 这个动作已经发生)

Remember to mail the letter for me. 记住帮我寄这封信。(to mail 这个动作尚未发生)

stop to do sth. 表示"停下来去做某事",stop doing sth. 表示"停止做某事"。

try to do sth. 表示"试图做某事",try doing sth. 表示"试试做某事"。

mean to do sth. 表示"有意或打算做某事",mean doing sth. 表示"意味着……"

● in possession of=own; in the possession of=belong to

另外 in one's possession=in the possession of sb. 都表示为某人所有。

4. When she caught up with them, she saw that they had sat down and were going through the contents of the bag, so she ran straight at them. 当她赶上他们时,发现他们已经坐了下来,正翻着包里的东西。于是她直冲过去。

● catch up with 赶上。

e. g. I'll catch up with you later.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

其反义词为 fall/lag behind(落后)。

e. g. The supply lags behind the demand.

● go through

1)表示翻看,浏览。可以和 scan,browse 互换。

e. g. I went through/scan/browsed the morning newspaper when I was having breakfast.

2)经历。

e. g. The girl has gone through a lot of hardships.

● contents 表示内有的物品,而 content 表示满足的。类似的还有:

customs 海关,custom 习俗;new 新的,news 新闻

good 好的,goods 物品;arm 手臂,arms 武器

5. The men got such a fright that they dropped the bag and ran away. 这两个人吓了一跳,扔下提包逃跑了。

● such...that...引导的结果状语从句,参见 Lesson 30。

6. The strap need mending, said Mrs. Sterling later, but they did not steal anything. "这提包带需要修理,"斯特林夫人事后说道,"不过他们什么也没偷走。"

● need doing 主动形式表示被动意义,相当于 need to be done。

e. g. My hair needs cutting. =My hair needs to be cut.

● 此外,还有其他的一些结构也可以表达"某事需要去做",比如 want doing,require doing 等。

语法精析

非谓语结构——动词不定式(Ⅱ)

(一)动词不定式作主语

当动词不定式作主语时,其谓语动词常用单数,并且通常使用 it 作形式主语,而将真正主语放在后面以使句子保持平衡。

(1)不定式直接置于句首。

To see is to believe. 百闻不如一见。

(2)句首用形式主语"it",而把真正的主语不定式置于谓语动词之后。

It takes a long time to go there by train, it's quicker by road. 乘火车去那里要花很长时间,走公路比较快。

(二)动词不定式作表语

动词不定式作表语时用来表示预定要发生的动作,也可用来表示未来的可能性和假设。但应注意,当作表语时仅仅用来说明主语的内容时,这时的不定式只作单纯的表语,而不具有未来的含义。

The best treatment for fatness is to reduce the internal fat.

减肥的最好办法是减少体内脂肪。

(三)形容词+不定式

The whole village was shocked to learn that a large sum of money had been lost. 获悉一大笔钱丢失,整个村子都感到震惊。(=The whole village was shocked that a large sum of money had been lost.)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

The strap of this old bag is likely to break. 这个旧包的背带很可能要断裂了。(=It is likely that the strap of this old bag will break.)

在表示可能性的形容词(certain, likely, sure...)或表示情感的形容词(surprised, shocked, in terested, excited, pleased, amused, glad, happy, sorry, angry 等)之后常接不定式结构。该不定式结构都可转化为相应的主从复合句。

考题: The ice on the river is too thin, and not safe to ________. 河上的结冰不够厚实,在上面滑冰不安全。

A. skate on　　　　B. skate

答案解析: A。该句主语与不定式有逻辑动宾关系,当不定式动词是不及物动词时,应加一个适当的介词。如:He is nice to work with. 与他共事很不错。

考题: The boy who had broken the vase was afraid ________ his mother the truth. 那男孩打碎了花瓶,不敢告诉母亲真相。

A. to tell　　　　B. of telling

答案解析: A。"be afraid of+v.-ing"表示"害怕并希望避免某种不愉快的后果";"be afraid to+v."表示"怕有某种后患而不敢做某事"。如:The boy was afraid of being scolded by his mother. 那男孩害怕受到母亲的责骂。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 45 A clear conscience

本课重点和难点

- 复习被动语态

本课词汇

clear [kliə] *adj.* 无罪的，不亏心的

conscience ['kɔnʃəns] *n.* 良知，良心

【词组】for conscience's sake 为了问心无愧，为了良心关系；in all conscience 当然，一定；公平地说，凭良心说

have a clear/good conscience 问心无愧

wallet ['wɔlit] *n.* 皮夹，钱包

【辨析】wallet 为（男用的）皮夹子；女用的小挎包、带扣的钱包通常用 purse。

savings ['seiviŋz] *n.* 存款，储金

villager ['vilidʒə] *n.* 村民，乡下人

percent [pə'sent] *n.* 百分之……

in time 终于，最终

课文详解

1. The whole village soon learnt that a large sum of money had been lost. 整个村子很快知道，有一大笔钱丢失了。

● village 在这里为总称，指"村民"，the whole village 则指"全村的人"，后面通常跟单数动词。类似的用法还有 the whole country, the whole society, the whole class 等。

e. g. The whole class has been informed of the news.

● learn 表示"知道，获知"的意思。

e. g. I've just learnt that he has passed the exam.

2. Sam Benton, the local butcher, had lost his wallet while taking his savings to the post office. 当地的屠户萨姆·本顿在把存款送往邮局的途中把钱包丢了。

● 如果主句和从句的主语一致，连词后面的主语和 be 动词可以省略。

When I was asked my opinion, I kept silent.

=When asked my opinion, I kept silent.

He listened to music while he was cleaning the room.

=He listened to music while cleaning the room.

3. Sam was sure that the wallet must have been found by one of the villagers, but it was not returned to him. 萨姆确信那钱包一定是被某个村民捡到了，可是却不见有人来送还给他。

● must have been found 是一个情态动词的被动语态。must 在这里表示推测，由于是对过去的推测，因此 must 之后的动词要用完成形式；此外，have been found 是完成时的被动语态。类似的结构曾经在 Lesson 21 中出现过，如：...must have been driven away。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

4. It had been wrapped up in newspaper and it contained half the money he had lost, together with a note which said: 'A thief, yes, but only 50 per cent a thief!' 钱包是用报纸包着的,里面有他丢失的钱的一半,而且还附着一张纸条,上面写着:"一个小偷,是的,但只是一个50%小偷!"

● include, contain, consist of

1) contain 指一个整体包括的内容,侧重"内有"的意思。

2) include 表示一个整体由几个部分组成,侧重包括者只是整体的一部分。

e. g. NCE2 contains 96 texts.

NCE 2 includes some interesting stories.

3) consist of 指某物是"由……组成"的意思时,强调结果是一个统一的整体,但所有组成的成分之间往往保持着自己的特性,用于主语动态。

e. g. The university consists of 13 departments.

● 我们可以模仿该句型创造出新的句子来:

e. g. He sent me 1000 roses, together with a card which said, "Forgive me, my sweetie."

5. In time, all Sam's money was paid back in this way. The last note said: 'I am 100 per cent honest now!' 很快,萨姆全部的钱都用同样的方式还了回来。最后的那张字条上写道:"我现在是一个100%的诚实人了!"

● in time:

1) 及时。

e. g. They were just in time for the bus.

2) 很快。

e. g. In time, all Sam's money was paid back in this way.

● pay back:

1) 偿还。

e. g. I will pay your money back.

2) 报答;向……报复。

e. g. I will pay back your rudeness/kindness.

语法精析

复习被动语态(参见 Lesson 10)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 46 Expensive and uncomfortable

本课重点和难点

- 复习被动语态
- 介词动词(Ⅰ)
- 复习将来完成时、虚拟语气、间接引语、情态动词

本课词汇

unload [ʌn'ləud] *vt.* 卸(货),解除……负担

wooden ['wudən] *adj.* 木质的

extremely [iks'triːmli] *adv.* 极端,非常

occur [ə'kəː] *vi.* 1. 发生 2. 出现 3. (to)想起,想到

【词组】it(never)occurred to sb. that (或 to do) 某人(没)想到(起)

【辨析】occur 发生,产生:与 happen 同义,但是指某事突然呈现于人的知觉或脑海。有时指有规律地产生某事。

open up 打开,展示

astonish [əs'tɔniʃ] *vt.* 使惊讶,使惊恐

pile [pail] *n.* 一堆,一叠 *vt.* (把……)堆积

woollen ['wulən] *adj.* 羊毛制的

goods [gudz] *n.* 1. 货物,商品 2. 财产

【用法】goods 商品,货物:一般用语,指市场上进行买卖的各种物品。没有单数形式,只能用复数形式。不能直接和数词连用,如要表示商品数量,前面要用单位名称。

discover [dis'kʌvə] *vt.* 发现,暴露,显示

admit [əd'mit] *vt.* 1. 让……进入,接纳 2. 承认

【用法】admit 承认,供认:指某人在外界压力下不情愿地同意、认可某种事实,特别是不光彩的事。

confine [kən'fain] *vt.* 1. 把……限制在(某范围内) 2. 管制,禁闭

【词组】be confined 坐月子,分娩; be confined to one's bed/room 卧病在床(家),闭门不出

【用法】宾语接 to,表示"限于,限制"。接 in 或 within,表示"禁闭,关闭"。

normal ['nɔːməl] *adj.* 1. 正常的,普通的 2. 正规的,标准的

课文详解

1. When a plane from London arrived at Sydney airport, workers began to unload a number of wooden boxes, which contained clothing. 当一架来自伦敦的飞机抵达悉尼机场时,工人们开始卸下装有服装的一批木箱。

● clothes 和 clothing 均可用作"衣服"的统称,但在用法上仍有差别:

1)clothes:是个没有单数形式的可数名词。前面不可加不定冠词,也不可加数词,但可用 some, these, those, many, few 等词修饰。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

正：those clothes/few clothes/many clothes

误：a clothes/two clothes/three clothes

2)clothing：则是一个不可数名词。比较而言：clothes 的含义比较具体，而 clothing 的含义则比较抽象。

e.g. Our clothing protects us against the cold.

我们的衣服可以御寒。

We are well provided with food and clothing.

我们吃得好，穿得好。

3)若不考虑其细微区别，两者常可换用。

e.g. He spent a lot of money on clothes(clothing).

他花了许多钱买衣服。

2. No one could account for the fact that one of the boxes was extremely heavy. 其中有只箱子特别重，可谁也弄不清是怎么回事。

● account for

1)说明；证明

e.g. He could not account for his foolish mistake.

2)对……负有责任

e.g. Who will have to account for the misprints in the dictionary?

● 关于 account 的词组

1)on account of＝because of；for the sake of：由于；因为。

e.g. We got married on account of the baby.

2)take into account＝to take into consideration；allow for：考虑；顾及

e.g. They had to take the baby into account when they wanted to go out.

3)on no account＝under no circumstances：决不，绝对不

e.g. We must on no account miss the chance.

● 该句中 that 引导的句子是同位语从句。

同位语从句和定语从句很相似，但还是有区别的，区别主要在三方面：

1)从性质上区别

定语从句是从句对其先行词的修饰或限制，属于形容词性从句的范畴；而同位语从句是从句对前面抽象名词的进一步的说明和解释，属于名词性从句的范畴。

2)引导词的区别

a. 有些引导词如 how，whether，what 可以引导同位语从句，但不能引导定语从句，如：

That question whether we need it has not been considered. 我们是否需要它这个问题还没有考虑(同位语从句)

b. 引导词 that 引导定语从句时，在从句中一般作主语或宾语(指物时还可以用 which 代替)，并且作宾语时常常省略。that 引导同位语时，不充当任何成分，但不能省略，也不能用 which 来代替，如：

The order that we should send a few people to help the other groups was received yesterday.(同位语从句，是对 order 的具体解释，that 虽不作成分，但不能省略)

The order that we received yesterday was that we should send a few people to help the other groups.(定语从句，是名词 order 的修饰语，that 在从句中作 received 的宾语，可以省略)。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

3)先行词的区别

同位语从句前面的名词只能是 idea, fact, news, hope, belief, suggestion, proposal, word, thought, doubt, truth, possibility, promise, order 等有一定内涵的名词,而定语从句的先行词可以是名词、代词。

3. It suddenly occurred to one of the workers to open up the box. 突然一个工人想到打开箱子看看。

● sth. occurred to sb. 表示"某人想到某事",主语为事,宾语为人。

e. g. A good idea suddenly occurred to me.

在文中 it 在句中为形式主语,代替不定式 to open up the box。

e. g. It suddenly occurred to me that I have left the book at home.

It occurred to me to visit my teacher.

It never occurred to me that he might be in trouble.

It didn't occur to him that she would refuse his invitation.

★ 四级词汇辨析:take place, happen, occur, come about

1)take place 表示"发生,举行,举办",一般指非偶然性事件的"发生"。

e. g. The Olympic Games of 2008 will take place in Beijing.

2)happen 作"发生,碰巧"解,一般用于偶然或突发性事件。

e. g. What happened to you?

I happened to see him on my way home.

=It happened that I saw him on my way home.

3)occur 作"发生"解,其意义相当于 happen。而此外,occur 还有"想起"的意思。

e. g. What has occurred? (=What has happened?)

It occurred to me that she didn't know I had moved into the new house.

4)come about 表示"发生,产生",多指事情已经发生了,但还不知道为什么,常用于疑问句和否定。

e. g. When Mother woke up, she didn't know what had come about.

Do you know how the air accident came about?

4. After he was arrested, the man admitted hiding in the box before the plane left London. 此人被逮捕后,承认他是在飞机离开伦敦前躲进箱里的。

● admit doing sth. 表示"承认做某事"。

e. g. He admitted robbing the old man.

★ 四级词汇辨析:admit, acknowledge, confess

1)admit 通常指因外界压力、良心或判断而承认某事的存在或真实性,含有"不情愿承认"之意。

e. g. I admit that she is right.

2)acknowledge 指公开承认。

e. g. With so much evidence against him. he had to acknowledge his error.

3)confess 着重承认自己的过错或罪恶,因此有"忏悔,坦白"的含义。

e. g. He has confessed his crime.

语法精析

一、复习被动语态(参见 Lesson 10)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

二、介词动词(Ⅰ)

介词动词由"动词＋介词"构成，常与动词搭配的介词有：with，to，at，for 等。以下是对 Lesson 25—Lesson 48 中出现的介词动词作的归纳总结：

be surprised/astonished at...对……感到吃惊

sympathize with sb. 同情某人

arrive in/at 到达

speak of 说到

put out 扑灭

believe in 信任

call for 要求

laugh at 嘲笑

make up 编造

find out 查明

set about doing 着手从事

pick up 捡到

look forward to 盼望

settle down in...在……定居

operate on 给……动手术

ask for sb. 要求见某人

remind sb. of...使某人想起……

admit to doing 承认

account for 解释……理由

turn on/off 打开/关上

complain of/about 抱怨

put up 举起/搭建

wake up 叫醒

call out to...对……大叫

call on/at 拜访

make out 辨认

wrap up 包裹

set out/off for 出发前往

worry about 担心

be amused at 感到好笑/开心

dream of 梦想

think of 想到

succeed in doing...做某事成功

enquire about 询问

run into 撞上/遭遇到

catch up with 赶上

be confined to 局限于

give away 背叛；赠送

三、复习将来完成时(参见 Lesson 37)、虚拟语气(参见 Lesson 40)、间接引语(参见 Lesson 39)、情态动词(参见 Lesson 17,19,41)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 47 A thirsty ghost

本课重点和难点

- 情态动词+have done 结构总结

本课词汇

thirsty ['θəːsti] *adj*. 渴的，渴望的

ghost [gəust] *n*. 鬼魂，幽灵

haunted ['hɔːntid] *adj*. 闹鬼的，常出现鬼的

block [blɔk] *v*. 堵

furniture ['fəːnitʃə] *n*. 家具

【用法】无复数，不加不定冠词 a，计数时用 a piece of(或 an article of) furniture 一件家具；much furniture 许多家具。

whisky ['wiski] *n*. 威士忌酒

suggest [sə'dʒest] *v*. 1. 建议，提出 2. 使想起，暗示，表明

shake [ʃeik] *v*./*n*. 1. 摇动，摇 2. 震动，颤抖

【词组】shake off 摆脱，甩掉

accept [ək'sept] *vt*. 1. 接受，认可 2. 同意，承认

【词组】accept an invitation 接受邀请

【用法】表示"同意，承认，认可"时，后可接 that 从句。accept... as... 表示"把……认做为……"。

【辨析】accept"接受、认可"，指经过考虑，自己同意或愿意接受；receive"接到、收到"，指收到东西的一种行为，并不表示本人是否愿意接受。如：I received an invitation. 只表示收到邀请，而未表明愿意出席。to accept an invitation 接受邀请，表明收到并同意出席。如：We received his offer but did not accept it. 我们收到了他的申请，但并未同意。

课文详解

1. A public house which was recently bought by Mr. Ian Thompson is up for sale. 伊恩·汤普森先生最近才买的一个小酒店现在又要卖出去。

- public house=pub
- for sale 与 on sale 的区别：

1) for sale：出售

e. g. These are not for sale.

2) on sale 主要有两个意思：a. 同样表示一种出售的状态，可以与 for sale 互换。

b. 在美国英语中多指"特卖、降价处理"的意思。

e. g. The department store will go on sale at the end of every season.

2. He also said that he had found five empty whisky bottles which the ghost must have drunk the night before. 他还说他发现了 5 只空的威士忌酒瓶子，这肯定是鬼魂昨天晚上喝的。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

● 由于是对已发生的事表示推测，因此 must 后面要用完成时。

● that 引导的为间接引语，隔天转述，因此时间状语要变动。直接引语中的时间状语为 last night，转述时变成了 the night before。其他时间状语的变化有：now→then，two days ago→two days before/earlier，today→that day，tonight→that night，tomorrow→the next/following day 等。

3. When I suggested that some villagers must have come in for a free drink, Mr. Thompson shook his head. 当我暗示说一定是村里有些人来喝不花钱的酒时，汤普森先生摇了摇头。

● 动词 suggest 有如下一些用法：

1)可接名词作宾语。

e. g. She suggested an early start. 她建议早一点出发。

2)可接动名词作宾语。

e. g. I suggested putting off the sports meeting. 我建议将运动会延期。

3)可接 that 宾语从句，that 从句用 should＋动词原形，should 可以省略。

e. g. She suggested that the class meeting(should)not be held on Saturday. 她建议班会不要在星期六举行。

4)有"暗示，表明"的意思。其主语往往是事物，而不是人。接宾语从句，从句用陈述语气。如：

e. g. The expression on his face suggested that he was very angry.

他脸上的表情表明他很生气。

4. The villagers have told him that they will not accept the pub even if he gives it away. 村里的人已经告诉他，即使他把小酒店白送人，他们也不要。

● give away

1)赠送；分发。

e. g. She gave away all her money to the poor.

2)在婚礼上把(新娘)交给新郎。

e. g. The bride was given away by her father.

3)泄露。

e. g. His accent gave him away as a northerner.

● give up 放弃

e. g. I will give up smoking.

give in 屈服，让步

e. g. He has given in to my views.

give off 发散

e. g. The food gave off a bad smell.

语法精析

情态动词＋have done 结构总结(参见 Lesson 17，19)：

1. must have done sth.，对过去时间里可能发生的事情的推测，语气较强，具有"肯定"，"谅必"的意思。例如：

—Linda has gone to work，but her bicycle is still here.

—She must have gone by bus.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. may/might have done sth. 用来推测过去时间里可能发生的事情。语气相对 must 而言比较轻。例如：

Philip may(might) have been hurt seriously in the car accident.

3. can/could have done 表示对过去的推测，一般只用在否定句和疑问句中。例如：

I think that he couldn't have gone abroad. I saw him just now.

4. should have done 和 ought to have done，均表示"过去本应该做某事却没有做"。ought to 在语气上比 should 要强。而其否定形式表示"不该做某事而做了"。例如：

He ought not to have thrown the old clothes away.

5. needn't have done sth. 表示"过去本没必要做某事，事实上却已经做了"。例如：

I dressed very warmly for the trip, but I needn't have done so. The weather was hot.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 48 Did you want to tell me something?

本课重点和难点

- 动词不定式(Ⅲ)

本课词汇

pull [pul] *v.* 拔

pull out 拔掉，撤出

cotton wool [ˈkɔtnˈwuːl] *n.* 药棉，原棉

collect [kəˈlekt] *vt.* 1. 收集，聚集 2. 取，接 3. 收

collection [kəˈlekʃən] *n.* 1. 收集，收取 2. 收集的东西，物品

nod [nɔd] *v.* / *n.* 点头，点头表示同意

【词组】have a nodding acquaintance with 与……为点头之交，对……略知一二

【用法】后接 to 和 at 都可以。

in answer to 回答，响应

meanwhile [ˈmiːnwail] *adv.* 同时

课文详解

1. In answer to these questions I either nodded or made strange noises. 作为对这些问题的回答，我不是点头，就是发出奇怪的声音。

● in answer to 是固定短语，这里表示"作为对……的回答"、"响应……的请求"。

e. g. In answer to his request, I wrote a letter of reference for him(=at his request).

2. Meanwhile, my tongue was busy searching out the hole where the tooth had been. 与此同时，我的舌头正在忙着寻找刚拔掉的那颗牙的伤口。

★ 四级词汇辨析 meanwhile, while, during

1) meanwhile *adv.* /*n.*

e. g. Mother went shopping, meanwhile, I cleaned the house.

In the meanwhile I'll visit an old friend of mine.

2) while *conj.*

e. g. I'll take care of your children while you are away.

3) during *prep.*

e. g. Don't speak during the meal.

● the hole where the tooth had been 刚拔掉的那颗牙的伤口。where 引导的定语从句修饰先行词 the hole 与 Lesson 28 学到的关系代词引导的定语从句不同，本课主要是讲解关系副词引导的定语从句。

1) 先行词是表示时间的名词关系副词用 when；先行词是表示地点的名词关系副词用 where；先行词是 reason 关系副词用 why。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2)关系副词 when, where, why 的含义相当于"介词+which"结构,因此常常和"介词+which"结构交替使用。

e. g. There are occasions when(on which)one must yield.

Beijing is the place where(in which)I was born.

Is this the reason why(for which)he refused our offer?

3)that 代替关系副词

that 可以用于表示时间、地点、方式、理由的名词而取代 when, where, why 和"介词+which"引导的定语从句,在口语中 that 常被省略。

e. g. His father died the year(that / when/in which)he was born.

He is unlikely to find the place(that/where/in which)he lived forty years ago.

语法精析

动词不定式(Ⅲ)

(一)动词不定式作定语

1. 动词不定式作定语的考点集中在动词不定式与被修饰词的逻辑关系的判断上。

① He is always the first one to get up. 他总是第一个起床。("the first one"与"to get up"有逻辑上的主谓关系)

② The next train to arrive was from New York. 下一列到站的火车是从纽约开来的。

2. 不定式既有动词性质,又有名词性质,它可以有时态、语态的变化,可有宾语和状语并组成不定式短语,也可以用作主语、宾语等。

3. 不定式有两种形式:一是带 to 的不定式,一是不带 to 的不定式。后者即通常的动词原形。

考题: I like getting up very early in summer. The morning air is so good ________.

A. to be breathed　　B. to breathe

C. breathing　　D. being breathed

答案解析:B。题干中后一句可看作是"The morning air is so good for me to breathe.",作状语的动词不定式前后的 breathe 和 air 之间虽然是动宾关系,但 good 后省略了 for me,其逻辑主语是 I,习惯上采用主动形式。题干的句意为:我喜欢夏天早起。呼吸早晨的空气有益于身心。

(二)动词不定式的时态和语态

1. 主动语态。

1)一般式。由 to+原形动词构成,表示该行为或状语与谓语同时或在其后发生。如:

The students hoped to do business after graduation. 学生们希望毕业后做生意。

2)进行式。由 to be+现在分词构成,突出表示不定式的行为和谓语动作是同时发生的以及不定式是正在发生的行为。如:

The student pretended to be studying hard when his mother came in.

母亲进来时,这个学生假装正在专心学习。

3)完成式。由 to have+过去分词构成,表示不定式的行为完成于谓语动词之前。如:

I hoped to have seen her. 我希望那时见过她。

考题: The crowd cheered wildly as the sight of Liu Xiang, who was reported ________ the world record in the 110-metre hurdle race.

www.TopSage.com

A. breaking
B. having broken
C. to have broken
D. to break

答案解析：C。谓语动词 be reported 之后习惯接不定式充当主语补足语，下画线处的不定式要表示已经完成的“打破 110 米跨栏跑世界纪录”这一动作，因此下画线处应选用 to have broken 的形式。

2. 被动语态。

1)一般式。由 to be+过去分词构成。如：

The problem remains to be solved. 这个问题还有待解决。

2)完成式。由 to have been+过去分词形式构成。如：

He is said to have been hurt in the accident. 据说他在事故中受了伤。

考题：AIDS is said ________ the biggest health challenge to both men and women in that area over the past few years.

A. that it is
B. to be
C. that it has been
D. to have been

答案解析：D。不定式作补足语表示被动的、已经完成的动作，应选用 D 的形式。

(三)动词不定式的否定式

不定式的否定式由 not 或 never 加不定式构成。如：

He decided not to do it. 他决定不做那件事。

She wished never to see him again. 她希望永远不再见到他。

(四)不带 to 的不定式

1. 在 rather than 与 other than 等之后用不带 to 的不定式。如：

I would rather go than stay. 我宁愿走不愿留下。

No one could do other than admire it. 人人都不得不赞赏它。

2. can not but 和 can not help but 之后的不定式一般都不带 to。如：

I can not but go abroad. 我不得不出国。

She could not help but love him. 她不禁爱上了他。

3. 为了避免重复而省去 to，如：

I really wonder what to think or do. 我真想知道该怎么想怎么做才好。

It's just useless to talk and not do. 光说不干是没有用的。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 49 The end of a dream

本课重点和难点

- 主从复合句
- 分词(Ⅰ)

本课词汇

tired [taiəd] *adj.* 厌烦的

real [riəl] *adj.* 1. 真的,真实的 2. 实际的,现实的

【词组】for real 严肃的,认真的

【辨析】real 是指"实在,真实",强调客观存在,而不是想象的、假的,人造的、捏造的;actual 指"实际的,事实的",强调可行的,能成为或正成为事实或行动的事,主要指存在、实有或发生的事;true 强调"和事实相符",不是杜撰的,与 false 相对;genuine 强调"纯正的",不掺入其他杂物,是"地道的,不冒充的"。

owner ['əunə] *n.* 所有人,物主

spring [spriŋ] *n.* 弹簧

mattress ['mætris] *n.* 床垫,褥垫

gust [gʌst] *n.* 阵风,突然一阵

wind [wind] *n.* 风

sweep [swiːp] (swept [swept], swept) *vt.* 扫,刮

【词组】sweep aside 放(堆)在一边,不予理会;sweep off 扫去,大量清除;sweep out 打扫干净;sweep over 从……上面扫过去,(吹过)席卷;sweep up 打扫(收拾)干净;a clean sweep 大获全胜;make a clean sweep of 清偿(除)掉,大换班

【辨析】sweep,clean 这两个词都有"扫"之意。sweep 指用扫帚等工具清扫;clean 含义广,可指用任何方法把污垢清除掉,把物品弄干净。

crash [kræʃ] *vi.* 撞

courtyard ['kɔːtjaːd] *n.* 院子

smash [smæʃ] *vt.* 打碎,击溃

【用法】smash 打碎,打破:指有意或无意地用凶猛的行为突然把某物击坏或打得粉碎。

miraculously [mi'rækjuləsli] *adv.* 奇迹般地,神奇地

unhurt ['ʌn'həːt] *adj.* 没有受害的,没有负伤的

glance [glaːns] *v.* 1. 一瞥 2. 扫视 *n.* 1. 一看,一瞥 2. 闪光

【词组】at a glance 一眼就,一看就

promptly ['promptli] *adv.* 敏捷地,迅速地

课文详解

1. Tired of sleeping on the floor, a young man in Teheran saved up for years to buy a real bed. 德黑兰的一个年轻人由于对睡地板感到厌倦,于是积蓄多年买了一张真正的床。

● tired 引导的分词短语作原因状语,省略了开头的 being,be tired of 和主语 a young

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

man 是主动关系，所以用现在分词。being 构成的现在分词短语作状语可以省略 being。

e. g. Being interested in English, he studied very hard.

Interested in English, he studied very hard.

● save up 是积蓄的意思。

2. He slept very well for the first two nights, but on the third night, a storm blew up. 头两天晚上，他睡得非常好。但第三天晚上起了风暴。

● blow up

1)刮大风

e. g. The wind is blowing up.

2)爆炸

e. g. The retreating German army tried to blow-up all the bridges on the Rhine River.

3)发脾气或发火

e. g. I really blew up when I learned that my girlfriend was going out with another man.

4)给气球吹气，给排球和汽车轮胎打气

e. g. I have to stop at the gas station to blow up my front tires.

5)放大照片

e. g. I'd like 8 by 10 blow-ups of these negatives, please.

● up 这个词可以表达一种数量和程度的增加：

speed up 加速

speak up 大声说

listen up 仔细听

3. A gust of wind swept the bed off the roof and sent it crashing into the courtyard below. 一阵大风把床从屋顶上刮了下来，把它摔碎在下面的院子里。

● gust 表示"一阵强风"、"一阵狂风"，既可以单独使用，也可以用 a gust of wind 形式。

4. Glancing at the bits of wood and metal that lay around him, the man sadly picked up the mattress and carried it into his house. 年轻人看了一眼周围的碎木片和碎金属片，伤心地捡起了床垫，把它拿进了屋。

● glancing 为现在分词，它引导的短语相当于一个时间状语从句：After he glanced at…。glance 和主语 the man 是主动关系。

语法精析

一、主从复合句

(一)概念

主从复合句由主句(Main Clause)与从句(Subordinate Clause)两部分组成。其中，从句充当主句的某个句子成分(主语、宾语、补语、状语、同位语等)。

(二)种类

主从复合句有三类：

1. 名词性从句。分为主语从句、表语从句、宾语从句、同位语从句等。
2. 定语从句。分为限定性定语从句、非限定性定语从句、双重定语从句。
3. 状语从句。分为时间状语从句、地点状语从句、原因状语从句、方式状语从句、结果状

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

语从句、目的状语从句、条件状语从句、让步状语从句。

二、分词(Ⅰ)

(一)分词的形式和意义

英语中的分词有两种:现在分词和过去分词。分词具有形容词、副词和动词的特征。现在分词可以带状语或宾语,过去分词可以带状语,构成分词短语。分词或分词短语在句中可以作定语、表语、补语或状语。分词的否定结构就是在分词前加 not。

(二)分词作状语

分词作状语可以表示时间、原因、条件、结果、让步和方式等情况(经常可以转换成相应的状语从句),通常放在句首或者句尾(作状语的分词与主句之间往往用逗号隔开),在正常情况下分词的逻辑主语就是主句的主语。

1. 作时间状语。

Working in the factory(=While he worked in the factory), he was an advanced worker. 在工厂工作时,他是一名先进工人。

Heated by an alcohol burner(= While it is heated by an alcohol burner), water can be changed into steam. 水被酒精灯加热后可以变成水蒸气。

2. 作方式状语(表示伴随的动作)。

He stayed at home, cleaning and washing. 他待在家里,又擦又洗。

She sat speechless, confused by what was going on.

她一声不吭地坐着,完全不明白究竟在发生什么事。

3. 作原因状语。

Not having heard from her son for a long time, the mother worried a great deal. 由于长时间没有收到儿子的信,母亲非常焦急。

Given advice by the famous detective, the young lady was no longer afraid. 有了著名侦探的指点,这位姑娘不再害怕了。

4. 作结果状语。

He dropped the glass, breaking it into pieces. 他把杯子掉了,结果摔得粉碎。

It rained for two weeks, completely ruining our holiday.

雨下了两个星期,把我们的假期都毁了。

5. 作条件状语。

Playing all day, you will waste your valuable time.

要是整天玩,你就会浪费宝贵的时间。

Taken in time, the medicine will be quite effective.

吃得及时,这药会非常有效。

6. 作让步状语。

Considered as a building material, wood is not very strong.

木材可以用作建筑材料,但不很结实。

Raining heavily, it cleared up very soon. 虽然雨下得很大,但不久天就晴了。

考题: We had an anxious couple of weeks ________ for the results of the experiment.

A. wait　　B. to be waiting　　C. waited　　D. waiting

答案解析:D。下画线处在题干中充当方式状语并且表示主动等待的动作,填入现在分词 waiting 最为适合。

www.TopSage.com

(三)分词作宾语补足语

动词 hear, see, watch, find, have, get, feel, keep 等经常用分词作宾语补足语。例如：

I found him lying on the grass. 我发现他躺在草地上。

He saw the ground covered with snow. 他看到地上覆盖着雪。

考题：In the dream Peter saw himself ________ by a fierce wolf, and he woke suddenly with a start.

A. chased　B. to be chased　C. be chased　D. having been chased

答案解析：A。句意为：Peter 梦见自己被凶猛的狼抓住了，然后他突然醒过来。应选过去分词直接表示已完成的被抓的动作。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 50 Taken for a ride

本课重点和难点

- 复习一般现在时
- 分词(Ⅱ)

本课词汇

ride [raid] *vi./n.* (rode [rəud], ridden ['ridn])骑,乘

【词组】ride down 骑马撞倒,压倒;ride for a fall 看来要出事;ride up 骑在……上面;take someone for a ride 占便宜;taken for a ride 受骗,上当

lose one's way 迷路

go on 进行,继续下去

excursion [iks'kəːʃən] *n.* 旅行,远足

【用法】excursion 远足,游览:指有组织的短距离的游玩活动,一般准备当天返回,通常享有各种优待。

expect [iks'pekt] *vt.* 预计

【辨析】expect 指某人有一定根据,坚信某事必然要发生;hope 指心里想着达到某种目的或出现某种好情况。

Woodford Green ['wuːdfəːd griːn](地名)伍德福德草地

conductor [kən'dʌktə] *n.* 售票员

view [vjuː] *n.* 1. 景色,风景 2. 观点,见解 3. 观察,观看,视野 *v.* 看待,观察,考虑

【词组】in view 在看得见的地方,被考虑;in view of 鉴于……;with a view to 以……为目的,着眼于

get a good view 饱览

in the front of 在……前部

课文详解

1. I sat in the front of the bus to get a good view of the countryside. 我坐在汽车的前部,以便饱览农村风光。

● in front of 和 in the front of 的区别:

in front of 指在某一范围外的前面,其反义词为 behind;而 in the front of 指某一范围内的前部分,有时用 at the front of,其反义词是 at the back of。

● to 在这里表示目的。

2. 'You'll have to get off here,' the conductor said. 'This is as far as we go.' "您得在这里下车,"售票员说,"我们的车就到此为止了。"

● as far as+句子(有时 so far as)表示直到……为止(表示范围、程度)

e. g. It is as far as I can bear.

I'll help you as far as I can.

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

3. 'Well, in that case, I prefer to stay on the bus.' I answered. "好吧，既然如此，我还是留在车上吧。"我回答说。

● well 单独使用时通常为感叹词，有时表示同意、顺从、踌躇等情感，有时则仅起连接作用，相当于汉语的"嗯"、"噢"、"喔"等。

1) in that/this case 表示"既然是这/那样"、"假使那/这样的话"：

e. g. I left my book, in that/this case, you may have mine.

2) in case 假设万一

e. g. Take the raincoat in case it rains.

3) in case of 假设，万一

e. g. In case of fire, open this safety door.

● prefer 意为"宁可，宁愿，更喜欢"，其主要用法有：

1) prefer doing to doing

e. g. My grandma prefers taking a walk to sitting in front of the TV.

2) prefer to do sth. rather than do sth.

e. g. He preferred to stay at home rather than go with us.

● 其他表达"宁愿"的句型

1) would rather do sth. than do sth.

e. g. I would rather watch TV at home than go to the cinema.

2) would rather 后也可跟从句，表示主语宁愿让某人干某事。这时，从句谓语动词要用虚拟语气，即用一般过去时表示现在或将来要做的事；用过去完成时表示已经做过的事或过去要做的事。

e. g. I'd rather she set out to do the work now. 我宁愿她现在就着手做这项工作。

I'd rather you hadn't told him the news that day. 我真希望你那天没有把那个消息告诉他。

语法精析

一、复习一般现在时(参见 Lesson 2)

二、分词(Ⅱ)

(一)分词作定语

单个分词作定语，常位于被修饰词之前；分词短语作定语，总位于被修饰词之后。现在分词作定语，多表示"说话时正在进行"或"与谓语动词同时进行"或"经常性的"动作；而过去分词作定语，则多表示分词动作"先于谓语动词表示的动作"或"没有一定的时间性"。

1. 分词作定语一般放在被修饰的名词前。例如：

All the leading newspapers reported the trade talks between China and the United States. 所有的主要报纸都报道了中美之间的贸易会谈。

The broken glass has been thrown outside. 破碎的玻璃被扔到外面去了。

2. 分词短语作定语一般放在被修饰的名词后，相当于一个定语从句。例如：

The book written by him is very popular. 他写的那本书很受欢迎。

The woman selling vegetables has gone. 卖菜的那个妇女已经走了。

3. 分词修饰 anything, nothing, nobody, something, everything 等不定代词或指示代词

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

those 时，要放在这些词的后面。例如：

There is nothing inspiring in his words. 他的话中没有什么令人鼓舞的东西。

She is one of those invited. 她是那些被邀请的人之一。

考题：The wild flowers looked like a soft organge blanket ________ the desert.

A. covering　　B. covered　　C. cover　　D. to cover

答案解析：A。句意为：野花像地毯一样覆盖着沙漠。blanket 的定语应选现在分词形式表示主动的动作。

(二)分词作表语

分词作表语时，其逻辑主语是句子主语，表示主语的性质、特征或状态。

1. 现在分词作表语，说明主语的性质或特征，意为"令人怎样……"，有主动意味。如：exciting, moving, amusing, astonishing, frightening, interesting, relaxing, shocking, surprising, terrifying, tiring, worrying 等。

The news is encouraging. 这条消息令人鼓舞。

2. 过去分词作表语多表示主语所处的状态，意为"对什么感受怎样"，有被动意味。如：excited, moved, amused, astonished, frightened, interested, relaxed, satisfied, surprised, terrified, tired, worried 等。

She felt very tired. 她感到很累。

He looked worried. 他看上去忧心忡忡。

1)现在分词与过去分词的区别主要表现在语态和时间概念上。在语态上，现在分词(除被动式外)表示主动意思。在时间上，现在分词表示动作正在进行，过去分词则表示动作的完成。

2)现在分词有时态和语态的变化；而过去分词只有一种形式。现在分词的一般式常表"主动"和"进行"；过去分词的一般式常表"被动"和"完成"。

以 make 和 rise 为例，将分词的各种形式列表如下：

语态／时态		及物动词 make		不及物动词 rise
		主动语态	被动语态	
现在分词	一般式	making	being made	rising
	完成式	having made	having been made	having risen
过去分词			made	risen

考题：It is believed that if a book is ________, it will surely ________ the reader.

A. interested; interest　　B. interesting; be interested

C. interested; be interesting　　D. interesting; interest

答案解析：D。第二个下画线处后接有宾语 the reader，因此应填入动词原形 interest(指"使……发生兴趣，引起……的兴趣")与助动词 will 构成谓语；第一个下画线处应为表示主语 a book 的性质、状态的表语，因此应填入 interest 的现在分词形式作表语。

(三)分词的否定式

分词的否定式用 not 加分词构成。如：

Not having done it well enough, I tried again. 我由于做得不够好，所以又试了试。

Not worried about his body, he carried on his plan. 他不顾身体继续执行他的计划。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 51 Reward for virtue

本课重点和难点

- 复习一般过去时、现在完成时

本课词汇

reward [ri'wɔ:d] *n.* 奖赏，酬劳 *v.* 报酬，酬金

【词组】reward sb. for sth. 为……答谢某人；in reward 回报，作为……的奖赏(for)

virtue ['və:tju:] *n.* 美德

diet ['daiət] *n.* 通常所吃的食物，(因医疗的原因等)规定食用的食物

【词组】on diet 节食

go on a diet 节食，吃规定的饮食

forbid [fə'bid] (forbade/forbad, forbidden) *vt.* 禁止

hurriedly ['hʌridli] *adv.* 匆忙地，慌忙地

embarrass [im'bærəs] *vt.* 使窘迫，使为难

guiltily ['giltili] *adv.* 内疚地，有罪地

strict [strikt] *adj.* 1. 严格的 2. 严谨的，精确的

【词组】in the strict sense 严格说来；strict secrecy 绝密

reward [ri'wɔ:d] *v.* 给奖赏

occasionally [ə'keiʒənəli] *adv.* 偶然地

课文详解

1. My friend, Hugh, has always been fat, but things got so bad recently that he decided to go on a diet. 我的朋友休一直很胖，但是近来情况变得越发糟糕，以致他决定节食。

- things(要用复数形式)可以表示"情况"、"情形"、"状况"、"形势"等含义。

You've surely made things worse. 你确实使情况变得更糟了。

How are things going on with you? 你那里情况如何？

- diet *n.* (日常)饮食，食物

be/go on a diet 减食，节食

a low-fat diet 低脂肪饮食

- 描述人身材的英语有：

plump(丰满的)，slim(苗条)，skinny(极瘦的)

2. He began his diet a week ago. First of all, he wrote out a long list of all the foods which were forbidden. 他是一星期前开始节食的。首先，他开列了一张长长的单子，上面列了所有禁吃的食物。

- first of all，为固定短语，表示"首先"、"第一"。

在表达个人的观点时候可以用以下几组短语：

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

first of all/in addition/moreover/finally

to begin with/besides/what's more/last but not the least

● write out 这个短语表示"(正式)写"、"写出"或"全部写出"。

e. g. You should write out a report.

● shopping list 购物单,类似的有:

book list 书单, name list 名单

3. He led me into his room... 他把我领进屋里……

● lead to 中 to 是一个介词,后面只能加名词和动名词。

1)通到

e. g. This road leads to the hotel.

2)导致

e. g. Smoking can lead to lung cancer.

4. It was obvious that he was very embarrassed. 显然他感到很尴尬。

● 以下句型都可以表达显然:

it is obvious/clear/evident/ apparent that...

e. g. It was obvious that Lily is the most beautiful girl in the class.

语法精析

复习一般过去时(参见 Lesson 3)、**现在完成时**(参见 Lesson 4)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 52 A pretty carpet

本课重点和难点

- 现在完成进行时
- 过去完成进行时

本课词汇

temporarily ['tempərərili] *adv.* 暂时地，临时地

inch [intʃ] *n.* 英寸

【词组】by inches 渐渐地，刚刚；inch by inch 逐渐地；every inch 完全地，彻底地；within an inch of 几乎，接近

space [speis] *n.* 1. 空间，太空 2. 空地，余地 3. 间隔，距离 *vt.* 留间隔，隔开

【词组】in space 太空中

actually ['æktʃuəli] *adv.* 实际上

课文详解

1. We have just moved into a new house and I have been working hard all morning. 我们刚刚搬进一所新房子，我辛辛苦苦地干了整整一个上午。

● have been working 是现在完成进行时结构，表示从过去某时刻一直继续到现在的动作。

2. I have been trying to get my new room in order. 我试图把我的新房间收拾整齐。

● get/put...in order：把……整理好

e. g. Just give me five minutes to put/get my desk in order.

3. To make matters worse, the room is rather small...

● to make matters worse 是一个插入语，表示"更糟的是"。

e. g. I lost my way in Shanghai, to make matters worse, I forgot the name of my hotel.

语法精析

一、现在完成进行时

现在完成进行时态所描述的是从过去某一时刻开始的动作，一直持续到现在，也许还将持续下去，也许马上就要结束。既有"完成"的概念，又有"进行"的概念，通常与表示一段时间的状语连用，如：for hours, since 1990 等。是一复合时态，属于现在时态范畴。

1. 构成。

have/has been＋现在分词

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

单　　数	复　　数
I have / You have / He (She/It) has } been working	We / You / They } have been working

2. 用法。

①过去的动作对现在的延续。表示从过去某个时间开始一直延续到现在的动作，这个动作可能仍在进行中，并继续下去，也可能刚刚停止，常同 all the time, all the morning, for two hours, all night, these few days, this week 等表示一段时间的状语连用。另外，如果表示某一动作的起点，可用 since 引导的短语或从句；如果表示某一动作的全部时间，可用 for 引导的短语。例如：

What have you been doing these days? 这些天你在干什么？

②重复的动作表示感情色彩。有时候，现在完成进行时不是指某动作一直在不停地进行，而是表示一直到说话时为止的一段时间内一再重复的动作，常带有感情色彩。例如：

He's been watching television the whole day. 他看了一天电视了。

③已结束的动作所产生的影响。有时候，现在完成进行时表示"刚才"或"近来"发生的动作，表示直到说话时为止的一段时间内发生的动作。这一动作到说话时已经结束，而且一般不再继续下去；这种用法主要表示某一动作所产生的结果或对现在的影响。例如：

He's been studying too hard. 他工作太辛苦了。（言外之意：He looks too tired.）

3. 现在完成时和现在完成进行时的比较。

①这两个时态总的说来是不同的。现在完成时常常表示动作已经完成，而现在完成进行时却并不如此。例如：

I have read the novel. 我已经读过这本小说了。

（其含义是：我现在了解小说的内容。）

I am reading the novel now. 我在读这本小说。

（其含义是：我现在在干什么，不涉及什么时候开始，什么时候结束。）

I have been reading the novel. 我一直在读这本小说。

（其含义是：从过去某一时间开始，我在读这本小说，也许还要读下去，也许马上结束。）

②另外，有些静态动词只能用于现在完成时，一般不能用于完成进行时，例如下面的句子就不宜改用进行时：

I've known him for several years. 我认识他有几年了。

The war has lasted for a long time. 这场战争持续了很长时间。

③在强调动作持续时间的长度时，特别是有 long, how long 这类状语时，常用完成进行时：

We've long been making preparations for it. 好久以来我们一直在为此作准备。

How long have you been learning English? 你学了多长时间英语了？

二、过去完成进行时

1. 构成。

had been+现在分词。

2. 用法。

表示动作从过去某一时间之前开始，到过去某一时间仍在进行或刚刚结束；同过去完成时一样，过去完成进行时必须以某一特定过去时间为前提。例如：

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

He had been working here before he went to Shanghai.
他去上海之前，一直在这里工作。
I had been waiting outside for half an hour before she called me in.
在她喊我进去之前，我已经在外面等了半个小时。

3. 过去完成进行时与现在完成进行时的比较。

①这个时态和现在完成进行时是很相似的，只不过是把着眼点移到过去罢了。

现在完成进行时(现时观点) (至现时还在进行)	过去完成进行时(过去观点) (至过去某个时刻还在进行)
He has been working for twenty years. 他至今已工作20年了。(现在他仍在工作) How long have you been playing football? 至今你踢球有多长时间?	He had been working for twenty years when he retired. 当他退休时他工作了20年。 I asked them how long they had been playing football. 我问他们踢球多长时间了。

②过去完成时和现在完成时一样，表示动作已经完成；过去完成进行时表示一个一直持续的动作，而这动作未必已经完成：

过去完成时	过去完成进行时
She told me she had written a TV play. 她告诉我她写了一个电视剧。(已完成) He had painted the picture blue. 他把画涂成了蓝色。(已涂好) By last week she had collected 2000 stamps. 到上星期为止她已收集了两千张邮票。(动作已完成)	She said she had been writing a TV play. 她说她一直在写一个电视剧。(可能尚未完成) He had been painting the picture all afternoon. 整个下午他都在给画上色。(可能还在涂) She had been collecting stamps all these years. 这些年来她一直在集邮。(活动可能还在继续)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 53 Hot snake

本课重点和难点

- 复习完成进行时
- 原因状语从句

本课词汇

hot [hɔt] *adj*. 通高压电的，热的

firemen ['faiəmen] *n*. 消防队员们

cause [kɔːz] *n*. 1. 原因，理由 2. 事业，目标 *vt*. 使产生，引起

【用法】1. 作名词时，后可接 of 或 for，但含义不同。cause of sth. 指某事的原因，cause for sth. 指做某事的理由，for 后的宾语通常是表示行为或感觉的词。2. cause 使，促使：正式用语，用于人指推动某人达到一定的目的；用于物指一种事情、活动引起另一种事情、动作的出现，常跟带不定式短语的复合宾语。

examine [ig'zæmin] *vt*. 1. 检查，细查 2. 对……进行考试

accidentally [ˌæksi'dentli] *adv*. 偶然地，意外地

wire ['waiə] *n*. 1. 铁丝，电线 2. 电报，电信

volt [vəult] *n*. 伏特

power ['pauə] *n*. 1. 能力，精力 2. 功率，动力，电力 3. 幂，乘方 4. 权力，势力，政权

【词组】come into power (开始)执政，当权；have sb. in one's power 控制住某人；power station 发电站；power politics 强权政治；power structure 权力结构

power line 输电线路

solve [sɔlv] *v*. 解答，解决

mystery ['mistəri] *n*. 1. 神秘，秘密 2. 神秘的事物，不可思议的事物

【词组】an air of mystery 神秘的气氛；make a mystery of 把……搞得神秘；It's a mystery to me. 这对我来说是个秘密。

【用法】mystery novel/story/tale 神秘小说，包括怪诞、侦探、推理小说等。这时不能用 mysterious 来修饰。

snatch [snætʃ] *v*./*n*. 攫取，抢夺

【词组】snatch up 一把抓住

spark [spɑːk] *n*. 火花，火星 *vi*. 发火花，发火星

课文详解

1. At last firemen have put out a big forest fire in California. 消防队员们终于扑灭了加利福尼亚的一场森林大火。

- at last(终于，到底)，表示经过一番努力之后。
- put out 既可表示"扑灭，熄灭"，也有"关掉"的含义，可以和 turn/switch off 替换。

e. g. Please put the fire out.

Please put the light out.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

● fire 指“火焰”时不可数，但指“一堆火”或“一场火”时可数。

e. g. I am afraid of fire.

Sit around a fire.

2. Since then, they have been trying to find out how the fire began. 从那时起，他们一直试图找出起火的原因。

● find out 表示“查明，查出”，通常意味着经过一番努力（如经过询问、研究、搜寻、调查）后才能发现。

e. g. They are trying to find out who committed the murder.

3. Forest fires are often caused by broken glass or by cigarette ends which people carelessly throw away. 森林火灾时常由破碎的玻璃或人们随手扔掉的香烟头引起。

● cigarette end＝butt

● 仿写：Lung cancer is often caused by smoking and air pollution which are two of the most serious problems in a modern society.

4. They were also quite sure that a cigarette end did not start the fire. 他们还十分肯定火灾也不是由烟头引起的。

● start 在本文中是引发的意思，它还有很多灵活的用法。

1）使……

e. g. The smoke started him coughing.

2）创办

e. g. He is thinking of starting a newspaper.

3）启动

e. g. Do you know how to start the motor?

4）雇用

e. g. The bank started her as a teller.

5. He noticed the remains of a snake which was wound round the electric wires of a 16,000-volt power line. 他发现了缠绕在 16,000 伏高压线上的一条死蛇。

● 本句的主句是 He noticed the remains of a snake，which 引导的定语从句修饰先行词 snake，而 of 引导介词短语修饰 wires。

● the remains 表示“尸体”、“残骸”，必须用复数形式。

● wound 为 wind 的过去分词。wind“卷在……上”、“缠绕”。

e. g. She wound her injured legs with a bandage.

此外，我们在 Lesson 27 中还学习过 wind 作“蜿蜒”解。

6. A bird had snatched up the snake from the ground and then dropped it on to the wires. 一只鸟把蛇从地上抓起来，然后把它扔到了电线上。

★ 四级词汇辨析：hold，snatch，grab，seize

1）hold 握住

e. g. He held a knife in his hand.

2）snatch 粗鲁快速地抓住

e. g. He snatched the ball out of my hand.

3）grab 快速地抓住

e. g. Dad grabbed some breakfast and went off to work.

4）seize 强调抓住，抓到的结果

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

e. g. He seized her hand and shook it heartily.

● drop 和 fall 对比：

1)drop 表示"使落下，使掉落"，是及物动词，带宾语。

e. g. The one with the money got such a fright that he dropped the bag.

2)fall 表示"掉下、跌倒"，是不及物动词，不能带宾语。

e. g. He fell down the stairs and broke his leg.

语法精析

一、复习完成进行时的用法(参见 Lesson 52)

二、原因状语从句

引导原因状语从句的词或词组有：because(因为)，since(既然)，as(由于)，now that (既然)等。例如：

As water vapour is extremely light，it often rises high in the sky.

由于水蒸气极轻，故常常升入高空。

But since the teacher said so it must be true. 既然老师那样说了，那么它肯定是真的。

(一)原因状语从句主要由 because, as, since 引导

例句：

He was angry because we were late. 他很生气因为我们迟到了。

As the soup was very salty, we were thirsty afterwards.

由于汤太咸，我们后来都很口渴。

Since you are going，I will go. 既然你去，我也去。

in case，just in case 也可引起原因状语从句：

He took a spoonful and tasted it in case it was hot. 他盛了一勺，尝尝看烫不烫。

She ought to come down just in case anything happened. 她应当下来以防发生什么情况。

(二)还有一些原因状语从句不带连词(下面 seeing 和 considering 却起连词作用)

例句：

Seeing that it is ten o'clock，we shall not wait for her any longer. 由于现在已经十点钟，我们就不再等她了。

Considering he's only been learning English a year，he speaks it very well. 考虑他学英语才一年，他讲得算是很好了。

下面横线部分也可说是状语从句：

The institution is feeble <u>in as much as it doesn't protect anyone</u>. 这一制度没有什么作用，因为它不保护任何人。

(三)另外，某些"be+形容词"结构后的从句也说明原因

例如：

I'm glad (that) you've been assigned a new job. 我很高兴你分配了新工作。

She was annoyed that he had broken her vase. 她生气了，因为他把她的花瓶打破了。

She was hurt that I had not gone to her party. 我没去参加她的晚会令她感到不快。

注意：

1. because 表示原因的口气最重，直接表示因果关系，回答 why 的问题，强调别人未知的事

www.TopSage.com

实，而 since，as 引导的原因状语从句一般表示已知的事实，强调引起的后果。如：

He didn't go to school today because he was ill. 他今天没有去上学是因为他病了。

Since you know you are wrong, you had better admit it.

既然你知道你错了，最好赶快承认。

As there was no answer, I wrote to him again. 由于没有回复，我又给他写了一封信。

2. 强调原因状语从句只能用 because 从句。如：

It was because he lost it that he found it more valuable than ever. 正因为他失去了它，他才比以往任何时候都感到它的宝贵。

It was because he was ill that he didn't go to school. 正因为他病了，他才没有去上学。

3. for 引出的并列句表示原因，常是逻辑推理的原因。如：

The day must have broken, for birds are singing loudly.

天一定亮了，因为鸟儿在大声叫着。

大家网 TopSage.com
www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 54 Sticky fingers

本课重点和难点

- 虚拟语气(Ⅲ)——含蓄虚拟条件
- 复习冠词的用法

本课词汇

sticky ['stiki] *adj*. 黏的,黏糊的

finger ['fiŋgə] *n*. 手指,指状物

pie [pai] *n*. 馅饼

mix [miks] *v*. 1. 混合,掺和 2. 混淆,搞混

【词组】mix up 搅匀;拌和,混杂在一起,混淆,纠缠;mix up with 与……混合

pastry ['peistri] *n*. 面粉

exactly [ig'zæktli] *adv*. 确切地,精确地,恰好

annoying [ə'nɔiiŋ] *adj*. 令人生气的,烦人的

receiver [ri'si:və] *n*. 话筒

dismay [dis'mei] *n*. 惊愕,惊恐,失望,绝望 *v*. (使)惊愕,(使)惊恐,(使)失望,(使)绝望

【词组】be filled/struck with dismay (at the news, ect.) (得到这消息等)极为震惊

recognize ['rekəgnaiz] *vt*. 听出

【辨析】recognize, know 这两个词都有"认识"之意。recognize 表示能认出曾经见过或原来认识的人或事物。而 know 表示认识或熟悉某人,它不仅可以用于人,也可以用于地方。例句:Do you know Mr. Brown? 你认识布朗先生吗? Did you recognize Mr. Brown? 你认出布朗先生了吗?

persuade [pə'sweid] *v*. (使)相信,说服,劝说

【词组】persuade sb. that/ persuade sb. of sth. 使某人相信某事;persuade sb. into doing sth. 劝某人做某事;persuade sb. out of doing sth. 劝说某人不要干某事;persuade sb. to do sth. 劝说某人去做某事

mess [mes] *n*. 混乱,混杂

doorknob *n*. 门把手

sign [sain] *vt*. 签字,签名

【辨析】symbol, sign, token 这三个名词表示"记号"或"象征"。symbol(象征,符号)指一种形状或图样用于代表某事物,如一种想法。它可以是随意造出来的。例如:Picasso painted a red circle as a symbol of the Revolution. 毕加索画了一个红色的圆圈象征法国革命。symbol 也可指一个公式、一道算术题中的代表一项的数字、字母或符号。例如:On a map, a cross is the symbol for a church. 地图上"十"代表教堂。sign(符号,标记)一定是用于表示某个具体意义的符号或记号,如在数学、音乐中,侧重具有公认意义的代表物。例如:a minus sign 减号;signs of military rank 军阶符号;sign 也可指招牌、告示、指示牌等。例如:traffic signs 交通标志;a sign saying "No Smoking"上面写着"禁止吸烟"的一块告示牌。token(象征,标记)指是某件事的

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

证据，或表示某个具体意义。着重于标志一种态度或一种理解的东西。例如：A white flag is used as a token of surrender. 白旗是用作投降的信号。

registered [ˈredʒistəd] *adj.* 挂号的，已注册的

课文详解

1. It was still early when I returned home. The children were at school, my husband was at work and the house was quiet. 我回到家时，时间还早。孩子们在上学，我丈夫在上班，家里清静得很。

● school 和 work 前都没加冠词，因为不是指具体哪个学校或具体干什么工作，只是泛指他们在干什么。如：Are you still at school or at work?

at church 做礼拜　at the church 在教堂

2. Nothing could have been more annoying. 没有什么能比这更烦人了。

● "否定词语＋比较级"表示最高级含义。用这个句型可以表达许多感情，换一下最后的形容词即可。

e. g. Nothing could have been more exciting/interesting/embarrassing.
I can't agree with you more.
The weather couldn't be worse.
He couldn't care more.

3. It took me ten minutes to persuade her to ring back later. 我用了10分钟的时间才说服她过会儿再来电话。

● It takes sb. some time to do sth. 花费某人多久做某事，"it"作形式主语。

e. g. It takes three generations to make a gentleman.
十年树木百年树人。

● persuade sb. to do sth. 一定是"说服某人去干某事"，如果你尝试着去劝说，但别人没有听取你的劝告，就只能说 try to persuade。

e. g. The salesman persuaded us to buy his product.

4. I had no sooner got back to the kitchen than the doorbell rang loud enough to wake the dead. 我刚回到厨房，门铃又响了起来，响声足以把死人唤醒。

● no sooner...than...：刚……就……，用法参见 Lesson 38。

● 用 the ＋ *adj.* 的结构表示一类人：

the rich 富人	the young 年轻人	the blind 瞎子
the deaf 聋子	the English 英国人	

语法精析

一、虚拟语气(Ⅲ)——含蓄虚拟条件

有时非真实条件句并不出现在从句中，虚拟的条件隐含在情景中，或通过以下一些语法手段得以体现：but for/but that（要不是因为）；without（没有）；with（带有）；or/otherwise（否则）；in the absence of（在没有……的情况下）；under such circumstances（在……情况下）；but（但是）。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

例句：Nothing could have been more annoying. 没有比这更令人讨厌的事了。

说明 1 虚拟条件隐含在上下文中，谓语动词常用 would/should/could be 或 would/should/could have been 形式。如：

Without gravity/In the absence of gravity, there would be no air around the earth.（= If there were no gravity, there would be no air around the earth.）如果没有重力作用，地球周围就不会有空气。

说明 2 but that 从句用直陈语气，主句用虚拟语气。如：

I would have traveled to Shanghai by ship, but I did not have enough time at the time.（= I would have traveled to Shanghai by ship. I had had enough time at the time.）我本要坐船去上海的，但当时我没有足够的时间。

说明 3 but 引导的分句用直陈语气，与其并列的分句则用虚拟语气。otherwise 或 or 引导的句子用虚拟语气，其前面的句子为直陈语气。

说明 4 虚拟条件可隐含于介词短语（in my place, with...）、定语从句、不定式短语或分词短语中，谓语动词常用 would/should... 形式表示虚拟结果。

考题： ________ fired, your health care and other benefits will not be immediately cut off.

A. Would you be　　B. Should you be

C. Could you be　　D. Might you be

答案解析： B。下画线处应以虚拟语气的形式表示对将来的假设，主句则是描述真实的情况，不用虚拟语气。

二、复习冠词的用法（参见 Lesson 6）

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 55 Not a gold mine

本课重点和难点

- would, used to 的区别
- 程度副词

本课词汇

gold [gəuld] *n.* 黄金,金币 *adj.* 金制的

mine [main] *n.* 矿,矿井

treasure ['treʒə] *n.* 1. 财宝,财富(不可数) 2. 珍品 *v.* 珍爱,珍惜

come true 实现,变成现实

revealer [ri'viːlə] *n.* 探测器,显示器

invent [in'vent] *vt.* 1. 发明,创造 2. 捏造,虚构

detect [di'tekt] *vt.* 查明,探测,发觉

bury ['beri] *v.* 埋藏

cave [keiv] *n.* 洞,穴

【词组】cave in 下陷,坍陷

【辨析】cave 洞,洞穴:指人或动物栖身的洞,一般较 hole 大。

sea-shore *n.* 海岸

pirate ['paiərit] *n.* 海盗

arm [ɑːm] *n.* 1. 手臂 2. 扶手 3. 武器,军火 *vt.* 1. 装备;武装 2. 配备

【词组】arm in arm 臂挽臂地;with open arms 热烈地(欢迎某人);with folded arms 两臂交叉于胸前,袖手旁观

【用法】arm 武器,兵器:常用复数,指专门为打仗而制造的各种作战器械(如刀、枪、剑、炮等)。用于比喻指一个国家整个武器装备情况。

soil [sɔil] *n.* 土地,土壤

entrance ['entrəns] *n.* 1. 入口,门口 2. 进入 3. 入学 4. 入会

【词组】the entrance to... 进……的入口

【辨析】admit/admission 指"允许进入"之权力;enter/entrance 指进入之行为;entrance examination 入学考试;no entrance 不准入内

finally ['fainəli] *adv.* 1. 最后地,最后一点 2. 只此一次

worthless ['wəːθlis] *adj.* 毫无价值的,无用的

thoroughly ['θʌrəli] *adv.* 彻底地,透彻地

tin [tin] *n.* 马口铁,铁皮

【辨析】tin 罐头,听:与 can 同义,可换用,但多用于英国。

trunk [trʌŋk] *n.* 树干

confident ['kɔnfidənt] *adj.* 有信心的,自信的,确信的

value ['væljuː] *n.* 1. 价值,价格 2. 有用性,重要性 3. 价值观,社会准则

【词组】attach value to 重视;put value on 定价,重视;set a value on 估算……的价格;set value on 重视,估计;value oneself on 引以为豪

【用法】value 重视,尊重:指某人认为某人或某物极好、极重要而对其敬重。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

课文详解

1. **Dreams of finding lost treasure almost came true recently. 最近，找到失踪宝藏的梦想差一点儿变成现实。**

● come true 为固定短语，表示"(预言、期望等)成为事实"、"(愿望)实现"不用于被动语态。

e. g. My dream to travel around the world will come true someday.

2. **A new machine called 'The Revealer' has been invented and it has been used to detect gold which has been buried in the ground. 一种叫"探宝器"的新机器已经发明出来，并被人们用来探测地下埋藏的金子。**

● 该句是 and 连接的并列句。called "The Revealer"为过去分词短语作后置定语，修饰 machine。which has been buried in the ground 是一个定语从句。

● be used to detect gold 为被动语态，be used to do sth. 表示"被用来干……"。

e. g. The stick is used to write on the ground.

另外，be used to doing，used to do，be used to do，特别容易混淆，具体的用法参见 Lesson 31。

3. **The pirates would often bury gold in the cave and then fail to collect it. 海盗们过去常把金子埋藏在那个洞里，可后来却没能取走。**

● would 在这里不表示过去将来时，而表示过去的习惯性动作。当我们提到过去某一特定时间时，我们有时候可以用 would 代替 used to，但是当我们没有明确说出哪一个特定时间时，只能用 used to。

● fail 也可用来表示没有通过某项考试：I failed in the exam.

4. **Armed with the new machine, a search party went into the cave hoping to find buried treasure. 一支用这种新机器装备起来的探宝队进入了这个岩洞，希望找到埋藏着的金子。**

● armed with the new machine，过去分词作伴随状语，后面的 a search party went into the cave 是主句，而 hoping to find buried treasure 则是现在分词作目的状语。

● 我们也不妨模仿一下这一结构，写几个句子：

e. g. Attracted by Lily, I joined the class hoping to improve my English language skills.

Dressed in red，Lily went home，laughing.

5. **Very excited, the party dug a hole two feet deep. They finally found a small gold coin which was almost worthless. 队员们异常激动，就地挖了一个两英尺深的坑，但最后找到的是一枚几乎一钱不值的小金币。**

● very excited 过去分词作状语，表示主语所处的状态。

e. g. Widely spread，the secret is not a secret any more.

★ 四级词汇辨析：worthless，valuable，invaluable，priceless，valueless

1）worthless 无价值

2）valuable 贵重

3）invaluable 贵重

4）priceless 无价的，特别贵重的

5）valueless 无价值

★ 四级词汇辨析：worth 与 worthy

1）worth 一般只用作表语，它后面接的动词往往是动名词的形式。

e. g. The book is worth reading.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2) worthy 可作定语和表语，作表语时作"值得"讲。worthy 作表语，后接不定式

e. g. The problem is worthy to be considered

worthy of 是一种固定的搭配

e. g. The article is worthy of careful study.

The book is worthy of being read.

6. In spite of this, many people are confident that' The Revealer' may reveal something of value fairly soon. 尽管如此，很多人仍然相信"探宝器"很快就会探出值钱的东西来。

- in spite of 的结构参见 Lesson 17。
- of 表示其所修饰的名词具有某种性质状况，所以 of＋名词＝形容词。

be of great importance to us＝be important to us

be of absence＝be absent

be of difference＝be different

语法精析

一、would, used to 的区别

would 与 used to 都能表示过去的习惯动作，但两者有区别：

1. would 表示过去某一段时间内的习惯动作，并不含现在无此习惯之义，比 used to 正式，常跟时间状语在一起。used to 表示过去有某种习惯动作或状态，现在已不如此，强调与现在的对比。

Mother used to tell us stories when we were young. 当我们年纪小时妈妈常给我们讲故事。

2. used to 表示的是过去持续的行为或状态，而 would 不能。

She used to be a teacher. 她过去是老师。

3. would 一般不用于故事的开头，而 used to 则可以。

We used to live near... 我们过去住在……附近……

4. would 含有主观的感情色彩，即表示自觉的行为和动作；而 used to 只表示过去的事实，比较客观。

The ancient Egyptian kings used to build pyramids as tombs.

古埃及的国王们建造金字塔作为自己的陵墓。

5. used to 用于表示过去有规则的习惯，而 would 表示过去不规则的习惯。

① I used to play ping pong a lot in my spare time, but now I am interested in football.
过去在业余时间里我常常打乒乓球，但现在我对足球感兴趣。

② He would often come to see me when I was living in the country.
我在农村住时，他常来看我。

二、程度副词

表示动作发生的大小和程度。绝大多数程度副词是用来修饰形容词、副词或动词的，有些还可以修饰名词。

(一) 程度副词的种类

肯定：absolutely, almost, completely, enough, entirely, extremely, fairly, far, just, much, nearly, only, quite, rather, really, so, too, very 等。

否定：barely, scarcely, hardly

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(二) 程度副词在句中的位置

程度副词在句子里的使用位置较易掌握：就是放在它所修饰的词之前。

1. 一般直接放在所修饰的对象之前。

①修饰形容词：

You are absolutely wrong. 你绝对错了。

②修饰动词：

You can hardly expect her to be kind to you. 你很难指望她对你好。

③修饰副词：

He speaks English quite well. 他英语说得很好。

2. 既然程度副词是放在所修饰的对象前面，因而在一个句子里，会因为程度副词位置的不同而导致句义发生变化。例如：

Only I saw him at the party last night. (Nobody else saw him.)

昨晚在晚会上，只有我见到他了。(别人没有看到他)

I only saw him at the party last night. (I didn't talk to him.)

昨晚在晚会上，我只是看到他了。(并没有跟他讲话)

I saw only him at the party last night. (I didn't see any other friends.)

昨晚在晚会上，我只看到他在场。(其他朋友没有来)

I saw him only at the party last night. (I didn't see him at other places.)

我昨晚只是在晚会上看到他了。(在别的地方没有看到)

I saw him at the party only last night. (I didn't see him until last night.)

我直到昨晚才看见他，他当时也在那个晚会上。(之前没有见到过他)

3. enough 的特殊用法

enough 是个例外，它要放在所修饰的形容词或副词之后。

He is not old enough to go to school. 他还没到上学的年龄。

He didn't work quickly enough. 他工作不够快。

4. barely, scarcely, hardly 不能与否定词连用。

Because of his hearing loss, he scarcely hears me when I speak.

由于他丧失了听力，所以当我说话时，他几乎听不到。

注意：与否定频度副词 barely 区别开来。

He barely attends class. 很少去上课。不能说：He hardly attends class.

(三) 可修饰名词的程度副词

这样的程度副词主要是 quite, only, even, particularly, especially, almost 和 rather。例如：

quite some time 相当长的时间　　quite an expert 相当了不起的专家

rather a bore 相当令人讨厌的人　　rather a shame 真可惜

注意：quite 要置于 a/an 之前，rather 可用在 a/an 前面或后面。

quite a nice day 天气不错，不能说：a quite nice day

rather a long way 或 a rather long way 一段很长的路

Only the boy knew how to get to the destination. 只有这男孩知道如何到达目的地。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 56 Faster than sound!

本课重点和难点

- 复习程度副词
- “许多”的表达法

本课词汇

sound [saund] *n.* 声音,声响 *v.* 1. 听起来 2. 发声响 *adj.* 1. 健康的,健全的 2. 彻底的,充分的 3. 正当的,有根据的

【词组】sound mind and body 身心健康;a sound sleep 酣睡;sound advice 忠告;sound reasoning 正确的推理

【用法】sound 完好的,健全的:指生理和机能强健而没有缺陷和疾病。有时可用于比喻。

excitement [ik'saitmənt] *n.* 激动,兴奋

handsome ['hænsəm] *adj.* (男子)英俊的,漂亮的,(女子)好看的,端庄的

【用法】handsome 漂亮的,好看的:用于物指样子秀丽美观,轮廓端正和谐;用于人指男子相貌英俊,女子身材苗条,仪表温雅,相貌端正。

Rolls-Royce Silver Ghost ['rəulz'rɔis 'silvə 'gəust] 劳斯莱斯银灵系列汽车

Benz [benz] *n.* (汽车品牌)奔驰

wheel [wi:l] *n.* 轮,车轮

explosion [iks'pləuʒən] *n.* 爆炸,爆发

course [kɔ:s] *n.* 跑道;行程

rival ['raivəl] *n.* 竞争者 *v.* 竞争,对抗 *adj.* 竞争的

【辨析】opponent 使用最广,指在辩论比赛、游戏等活动中,有时也指对计划、建议、法律等不同意见或观点的对立面,或强烈竞争的对手,但不指含恶意的人;competitor 指同一目标或目的的竞争者,无敌意;rival 基本意义同 competitor,有时也有怀有恶意、敌意或不可告人的不友好的动机等意义。

speed [spi:d] (sped [sped], sped) *vi.* 快行,加速

downhill ['daunhil] *adv.* 下坡,向下

课文详解

1. **A lot of cars entered for this race last year and there was a great deal of excitement just before it began. 去年有很多汽车参加了这项比赛。比赛开始之前,人们异常激动。**
   - enter for 表示“报名参加”。(参见 Lesson 8“课文详解”部分)
   - much, a great/good deal of 和 a little of 用于修饰不可数名词。

   e. g. There are a great deal of surprise for the match.

   many, a number of, a few 用于修饰可数名词。

   plenty of/a lot of 既可以修饰可数名词也可以修饰不可数名词。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. After a great many loud explosions, the race began. Many of the cars broke down on the course and some drivers spent more time under their cars than in them! 在好一阵喧闹的爆炸声之后,比赛开始了。很多汽车在途中就抛了锚,而有些驾驶员花在汽车底下的时间比坐在汽车里面的时间还长。

● break down 为固定短语,其含义之一是"(机械等)出故障"、"出毛病"。

1)出故障

e.g. This morning I was late for work, because my car broke down twice.

2)制服

e.g. The government broke down the strike.

3)精神崩溃,身体垮掉

e.g. If Tim carries on working like this, he'll break down sooner or later.

4)化学变化

e.g. Bacteria break down the animal waste to form methane gas.

● break up

1)使碎开;打碎

e.g. The stricken tanker began to break up on the rocks.

2)破裂,瓦解

e.g. If a parent dies, the family may break up.

● break out 爆发

e.g. A war broke out.

● break into 闯入

e.g. His house was broken into last week.

3. A few cars, however, completed the race. The winning car reached a speed of forty miles an hour...much faster than any of its rivals. 然而还是有几辆汽车跑完了全程。获胜的那辆车达到了时速 40 英里——远远超过任何对手。

● winning 为现在分词作定语。

e.g. Those of the winning teams jumped happily.

● 表示速度为多少时可用 a speed of+数量词这个结构。

e.g. You must have been driving at a speed of seventy miles an hour.

speed (*v.*) up 加速

e.g. My pulse sped up when I met her.

4. The race gave everyone a great deal of pleasure. It was very different from modern car races but no less exciting. 这次比赛使每个人都挺开心。它虽然与现代汽车比赛大不相同,但激动人心的程度并不亚于现代汽车大赛。

● not less than 等同于 at least,意思是大于等于。

e.g. There were not less than fifty students in the class.

教室里至少有五十名同学。

● no less than 等同于 as much(many)as,意思是仅仅,一样多。

e.g. There were no less than fifty students in the class.

教室里有五十名同学之多。

● no more than 等同于 as much(many)as 仅仅,一样多。

e.g. It's no more than a mile to the shops. 离商业区不过一英里。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

- not more than 等同于 at most 少于等于。

e. g. I'll stay here not more than three days. 我将待在这里最多不超过三天。

语法精析

一、复习程度副词(参见 Lesson 55)

二、"许多"的表达法

(一) a great deal of, much, a great amount of

a great deal of, a great amount of 与 much 充当限定词时,修饰不可数名词。例如:

There was a great deal of/much excitement before the race began. 比赛开始前,人们情绪激动。

A great amount of money was lost in the fire. 火灾中损失了很多钱。

a great deal, much 可充当代词,表示不可数意义。much 也常用于一些固定表达法,如:

I thought as much! 我早料到会如此的!(=I had expected disaster, and the disaster has come.)

He eats a great deal for breakfast. 他早餐吃得很多。

If you intend to drive, don't drink too much. 如果你要开车,饮酒不要过量。

It's not much of a day! 今天可不怎么样!(= Weather is bad; Things have gone wrong.)

(二) a great many, many, a great number of, many a

a great many, many, a great number of 后修饰可数名词, many a 后接单数名词,均表复数意义。如:

After a great many explosions/many explosions/many a explosion, the race began.
一阵阵汽车轰鸣之后,比赛开始了。

A great number of passengers died in the air crash. 许多乘客在飞机失事中丧生。many 既是限定词,后接可数名词,也可充当代词,单独使用。

Many of the cars/Many cars broke down on the course. 许多汽车中途抛锚了。

(三) a lot of, plenty of 可修饰可数与不可数名词, a lot 还有代词功能,相当于 a great deal, much,表示不可数意义。

A lot of/Plenty of our products are sold overseas. 我们的许多产品远销国外。

There isn't a lot/a great deal/much I can do to help him. 对他我帮不上什么忙。

(四) most

most(大多数)可作限定词,也可作代词,可修饰可数或不可数名词。如:

most hard-working students=most of the hard-working students 大多数勤奋的学生

注意:限定词(Determiner)——限定词是在名词词组中对名词中心词起类指、特指以及表示数量等限定作用的词类,包括冠词、物主代词或其他表数量的词或词组。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 57 Can I help you, madam?

本课重点和难点

● 独立主格
● 介词用法比较

本课词汇

madam ['mædəm] *n.* 夫人

jeans [dʒiːnz] *n.* 牛仔裤

hesitate ['heziteit] *v.* 犹豫，踌躇，不愿

【用法】hesitate 犹豫，踌躇：指某人在做事前三心二意，拿不定主意。

serve [səːv] *vt.* 接待

【词组】serve as 作为，用作；serve sb. right 给某人应得的报酬，活该，罪有应得

scornfully ['skɔːnfuli] *adv.* 轻蔑地，藐视地

punish ['pʌniʃ] *vt.* 处罚，惩罚

【词组】punish sb. for 因……而惩罚；punish with (by) 用……惩罚；punish one's opponent 痛击对手

fur [fəː] *n.* 1. 软毛，犬类的毛皮 2. 舌苔 3. 壶的水垢

eager ['iːgə] *adj.* 热切的，渴望的

【用法】常作表语，后接 to do，for sb. + to do 和 that 从句，或接 for，about，after，in 等介词。

【辨析】eager 指有进取的热情而迫切希望获得或急于做某事；keen 指由于极大兴趣或欲望促使去做某事；anxious 具有"焦急，担心，着急"的心情，害怕自己的希望或愿望不能实现。

课文详解

1. The assistant who served her did not like the way she was dressed. Glancing at her scornfully, he told her that the dress was sold. 接待她的售货员不喜欢她的那副打扮，轻蔑地看了她一眼后，便告诉她那件衣服已经卖出去了。

● 以 the way 为先行词的定语从句通常由 in which，that 引导，而且通常可以省略。

e. g. The way in which/that he answered the question was surprising.

2. She returned to the shop the following morning dressed in a fur coat, with a handbag in one hand and a long umbrella in the other. 第二天上午，她又来到这家商店，穿了一件裘皮大衣，一只手拎着一只手提包，另一只手拿着一把长柄伞。

● with 可以引导复合结构，在句中可以作状语。

1) with＋宾语＋介词

e. g. They walked to the fields with baskets full of seeds on their shoulders.

2) with＋宾语＋过去分词(表被动)

www.TopSage.com

大家网

e. g. All the afternoon he worked with the door locked.

3) with＋宾语＋现在分词(表主动)

e. g. With winter coming on, it is time to buy warm clothes.

TopSage.com

3. After seeking out the rude assistant, she asked for the same dress. 找到那个无礼的售货员后，她还要看昨天的那件衣服。

● seek sb. /sth. out 为固定短语，表示"找出"、"搜寻出"＝research out：

e. g. I can seek the man out without any difficulty since he has a big scar on his face.

seek for＝look for＝search for 寻找

另外要注意的是 seek 是不规则变换动词：seek→sought→sought

4. With great difficulty, he climbed into the shop window to get the dress. As soon as she saw it, the woman said she did not like it. 费了好大劲儿，他爬进橱窗去取那件衣服。这位妇女对那件衣服只看了一眼，就说不喜欢。

● with 构成的一些习惯用语归纳如下：

with the help of 在……帮助下

with pleasure 高兴

with that 接着就

with this 说完这个就

with reserve 有保留地

with a view to 为了

with a firm hand 坚决地

with open arms 热情地

with a will 起劲地

with the exception of 除……之外

with one's permission 经某人允许

with one's help 靠某人的帮助

5. She enjoyed herself making the assistant bring almost everything in the window before finally buying the dress she had first asked for. 她开心地迫使那位售货员把橱窗里几乎所有的东西都拿了出来，最后才买下了她最先要看的那一件。

● bring almost everything in the window 是宾补，before finally buying the dress 是状语，she had first asked for 是定语从句。

● make, let, have 后面的动词不定式不加 to，即 make/have/let sb. do sth.，这三个动词统称为"使役动词"，其用法归纳如下：

	主动	被动
have	have＋宾语＋动词原形	have＋宾语＋过去分词
make	make＋宾语＋动词原形	make＋宾语＋过去分词
let	let＋宾语＋动词原形	let＋宾语＋be＋过去分词

值得注意的是 make 用被动时(be made)时，其后用 to ＋动词原形。

e. g. He was made to go alone.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

语法精析

一、独立主格

独立主格一般由"(with/without)+名词/代词+分词/介词词组/形容词词组/不定式"构成,在句中作状语,表示时间、条件、伴随、原因等。如:

She returned to the shop the following morning, with a handbag in one hand.
(She:句子主语;with a handbag:逻辑主语;in one hand:介词词组)

The customers queued(排队) quietly in front of the counter, the assistant eager to serve them.
(The customers:句子主语;the assistant:逻辑主语;eager to serve them:介词词组)

I had to go back home to watch TV, all tickets sold out.
(I:句子主语;all tickets:逻辑主语;sold out:介词词组)

考题:You have no idea how she finished the relay race ________ her foot wounded so much.

A. for　　B. when　　C. with　　D. while

答案解析:C。下画线处引导一个独立主格结构,填入 with 最为合适。

说明 1　介词词组、形容词词组及分词短语等都可充当独立主格结构的谓语部分,它们有自己的逻辑主语,与句子主语不一致。注意:分词短语或形容词短语单独作状语时,其逻辑主语必须与句子主语保持一致。如:

Not realizing who she was, the assistant was eager to serve her this time. 没有意识到她是谁,这次店员对她服务热情周到。(分词短语"not realizing..."的逻辑主语为句子主语"the assistant")

说明 2　独立主格常充当伴随、原因或条件状语。作伴随状语时,可由 with 或 without 引出,也可省去 with。

考题:She returned to the classroom, ________. 她回到教室,手里拿着本书。

A. a book in hand　　B. with a book in her hand

C. with a book in hand　　D. book in hand

答案解析:B 和 D。"名词+介词词组"作独立主格时,可由 with 引出,若要省去 with,通常连限定词同时省去。

二、介词用法比较

(一)in,on 和 at 在表示时间时的区别

1. in 表示在一段时间之内,常同"上午、下午、晚上、年、月、日、周、世界、春、夏、秋、冬"等连用。例如:in the morning, in the evening, in April, in two weeks, in one month, in a year, in 1997, in spring, in summer 等。

These birds stay in the south in winter. 这些鸟在南方过冬。

The work was done in half a year. 这项工作半年之内就完成了。

2. on 指具体的某一天,是某个确指的日子,常同"星期天,星期一上午,3 月 8 日"等确定的日子连用。例如:on Sunday, on Friday afternoon, on May 3, on a spring day, on Christmas day, on one's birthday, on a hot day 等。

He will leave for London on Friday morning. 他星期五早上将动身去伦敦。

3. at 表示一个时间点,在这种意义上同 in 相反。例如:at five o'clock, at noon 等。

I shall call on you at noon tomorrow. 我明天中午去见你。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

考题：John became a football coach in Sealion Middle School ________ the beginning of march.

A. on B. for C. with D. at

答案解析：D。表示"在……时间的开始"应用 at the beginning of。

（二）before 和 in front of 在表示地点上的区别

before 表示"与……面对面"或"在某人跟前"；而 in front of 表示"在……前面"。

He had to tell us everything he bad done before the police. 他只好在警察面前向我们讲述了他所干的一切。

He sat in front of the police. 他坐在警察的前面。

（三）from 和 off 在表示地点上的区别

两者都表示"离开"，但如果事物视作一点，则用 from；如果视作一条线或一个面，则用 off。如：

It is ten miles from the factory. 这儿离工厂十英里。

Keep off the grass. 不得践踏草地。

（四）outside 和 outside of

outside 可以用作介词、副词、形容词或名词，意为"在……的外面，在外面，外面"。outside of 只用作复合介词，为美国用法，意为"在……外面"。

They are outside the classroom now. 他们现在在教室外面。（介词）

Please go and play outside. 请到外面去玩。（副词）

They need outside help badly. 他们急需外来的帮助。（形容词）

Don't judge things from outside. 不要从外表来判断事物。（名词）

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 58 A blessing in disguise?

本课重点和难点

- it 先行词强调结构
- 复习被动语态

本课词汇

blessing ['blesiŋ] *n.* 福气、(上帝的)赐福

disguise [dis'gaiz] *n.*/*v.* 假装,伪装

【词组】a blessing in disguise 祸中福;in disguise 伪装的,假装的,假扮的;put on (a) disguise 伪装起来

tiny ['taini] *adj.* 极小的,微小的

possess [pə'zes] *vt.* 具有,拥有

【词组】be possessed of 有,握有,据有;be possessed by 被……所迷住,疯狂,着魔

【辨析】have 最普通用语;have got 含有必需之意味;own 用于财产方面,只能接在以人作主语的后面,表示所有权,如:拥有土地、汽车、房屋等;possess 指占有自己的东西,既可指无形的也可指有形的,如:德、才、判断力、财产、家庭等。

cursed ['kəːsid] *adj.* 该诅咒的,可恨的

increase [in'kriːs] *v.*/['inkriːs] *n.* 增加,增长,增进

plant [plɑːnt] *n.* 1. 植物 2. 工厂 *vt.* 种植,播种

church [tʃəːtʃ] *n.* 教堂,礼拜堂

evil ['iːvl] *n.* 邪恶,罪恶 *adj.* 邪恶的,罪恶的

【辨析】bad 一般用词,用于人时,指人的行为顽皮、不道德或为非作歹,使人伤感、厌恶;用于物时,指质量低劣,不受欢迎。evil 语气最强,用于人时,指思想恶劣、行为败坏,故意危害他人;用于物时,指质量不好,对人体有害。

reputation [ˌrepju'teiʃən] *n.* 名声,声望

【词组】of high reputation 名声很好的;of no reputation 默默无闻地;have a reputation for sth. 或 have the reputation of doing sth./being 以……闻名;live up to one's reputation 不负盛名;be held in reputation 享有名望

claim [kleim] *vt.* 1. 声称,主张,自称 2. 要求,认领,索赔 *n.* 1. 要求,认领,声称 2. 提出要求的权利,要求权,所有权

victim ['viktim] *n.* 受害者,牺牲品

【词组】fall victim to 成为……的受害者

vicar ['vikə] *n.* 牧师

source [sɔːs] *n.* 1. 源(泉),源头 2. 来源,出处

【辨析】source 指源泉;resource 指一个国家或一个人所拥有的资源或财力,与源泉无关;origin 指一个东西的来源、出处是一次性的。

income ['inkʌm] *n.* 收入,所得,收益

【辨析】income 指个人的收入;revenue 指国家收入。expense, fortune, income 等谈其多少,不用 much 或 little,而用 large 和 small。

tree-trunk *n.* 树干

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

课文详解

1. The tiny village of Frinley is said to possess a'cursed tree'. 据说弗林利这个小村里有一棵"被诅咒的树"。

● 主语+be said+..."据说……"与 it is said that...都可以表达据说而且两个句型可以相互转换。

e.g. She is said to be a great teacher. =It is said that she is a great teacher.

He is said to have passed the exam. =It is said that he has passed the exam.

2. Because the tree was mentioned in a newspaper, the number of visitors to Frinley has now increased. 就因为报上提到过这棵树,所以现在来弗林利参观的人越来越多。

● 在英文的运用中,"the number of"和"a number of"有混淆的现象。

1)"a number of"的意思是"若干"或"许多",相当于 some 或 a lot of,和复数名词连用。当它出现在主语前时,谓语动词和主语搭配。必要时,还可以加上形容词 great,large,small,good 等。

e.g. A number of highly qualified scholars have worked in Singapore.

A good number of books in the market are examination-oriented.

2)"the number of"和"a number of"一样,跟在后头的名词也是复数的,不同的是这里的主语是单数的 the number,不是它后面的复数名词,谓语动词用单数。

e.g. The number of undergraduates has increased over the years.

The number of college graduates in a country reflects its cultural standard.

3. The tree was planted near the church fifty years ago, but it is only in recent years that it has gained an evil reputation. 该树是 50 年前栽在教堂附近的,但只是近几年才得到了一个坏名声。

本句是一个被动句和强调句组成的复合句。it 强调结构详见"语法讲解部分"。

4. It is said that if anyone touches the tree, he will have bad luck; if he picks a leaf, he will die. 据说,谁要是触摸了这棵树,谁就会交上恶运;如果谁摘了一片树叶,谁就会死去。

● It is said that 据说

e.g. It is said that 125,000 people died in Russia as a result of illness caused by this accident. 据说,在俄罗斯有 125000 人死于由这次事故引起的疾病。

相类似的句型:

It is reported that there was a bad traffic accident in India last week.

It is told that he will take a trip abroad.

It is thought that the price of the clothes is high.

It is believed that the girl will be fit for the office.

It is hoped that China football team will win.

It is suggested that the government do something against pollution.

5. The vicar has been asked to have the tree cut down, but so far he has refused. 人们曾请求教区的牧师叫人把树砍掉,但他直到现在也没有同意。

● 在 to have the tree cut down 这个短语中,have 表示"使别人完成某动作",cut down 为过去分词短语。have sth. done 的用法参见 Lesson 66"课文详解"。

6. So far, not one of them has been struck down by sudden death! 然而到目前为止,还没有一个人暴死呢!

● not one of them 表示"一个人也没有……",其语气比 none of them 或 no one,

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

nobody 要强。no one,nobody 不跟 of 连用。

● strike down 为固定短语,在这里表示"使……生重病"、"杀死"(通常用被动语态),be killed。

e.g. Many people was struck down/killed by cancer.

语法精析

一、it 先行词强调结构

(一)强调结构可以用来强调句子的主语、宾语和状语

在强调主语时,that/who 后的谓语动词要与被强调者保持人称和数的一致。

It was the boys who were punished for breaking the windows.

就是这些男生因打坏窗子受了惩罚。

考题:It is these poisonous products ________ can cause the symptoms of the flu, such as headache and aching muscles.

A. who　　B. that　　C. how　　D. what

答案解析:B。本句对主语"these poisonous products"进行强调,全句意为:正是这些有毒的产品能引起诸如头痛、肌肉疼痛等的流感症状。

(二)让步状语从句、since 或 as 引导的原因状语从句不能用作被强调成分

对否定句中的 until 从句进行强调时要把 not 放在 until 之前,that 后接肯定式。如:

It was not until yesterday that I realized what trouble he was in.

直到昨天我才知道他有什么麻烦。

It was not until his father came in that the boy began to prepare his lessons.

直到父亲回来那孩子才开始准备功课。

考题:It ________ we had stayed together for a couple of weeks ________ I found we had a lot in common.

A. was until; when　　B. was until; that

C. wasn't until; when　　D. wasn't until; that

答案解析:D。针对 until 引导的时间状语从句进行强调,若主句谓语动词包含表示否定意义的 not,应将主句中 not 转移至与 until 直接连用。

(三)如果强调句子中的地点或时间状语,连接词仍用 that,而不能用 where 或 when

It was last night that I went to see him off at the station. 我是昨晚去车站为他送行的。

(四)强调句型的一般疑问句将 be 的形式提前,放在句首

Was it the book that he loved in his childhood? 这是他童年喜爱的书吗?

(五)和主语从句的区别

主语从句中 it 为形式代词,后面多为系表或被动语态。去掉 it be... that 时,句子不通顺。强调句型去掉 it be... that 时,句子仍通顺,只是失去强调意义。如:

It is not known yet whether they will come today.

他们今天是否会来还不知道。(主语从句)

It was only when the bell rang that the teacher stopped his lesson.

直到铃响了老师才下课。(强调句型)

二、复习被动语态(参见 Lesson 10)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 59 In or out?

本课重点和难点

- 目的状语从句的用法

本课词汇

bark [bɑːk] *n.* 吠叫声 *vi.* 狗叫，大声喊出

press [pres] *v.* 1. 压，按 2. 压迫，压榨 3. 催促，逼迫 *n.* 1. 压，按 2. 报刊，出版社，通讯社 3. 压榨机

【词组】press(sb.) for sth. 或 press(sb.) to do sth. 敦促某人做某事

paw [pɔː] *n.* 脚爪，爪子

latch [lætʃ] *n.* 闩，门闩

expert ['ekspəːt] *n.* 专家，能手 *adj.* 熟练的，试验的

develop [di'veləp] *vt.* 1. 发展，形成 2. 开发，研制 *vi.* 发展，成长，发育

habit ['hæbit] *n.* 1. 习惯，脾性，习性，惯常的行为 2. 心境，体质

【词组】be in/fall into/get into the habit of 养成……习惯；get sb. into the habit of 养成……习惯；fall/get out of the habit of 革除……习惯；make a habit of 经常做某事；do sth. out/from force of habit 习惯自然而然做某事；do sth. out of habit 因习惯而做某事

【辨析】habit 指个人某一动作，由于长期反复进行而养成的习惯，习惯有好有坏；custom "风俗"、"习惯"，主要指一个国家或一个社会集团的风俗习惯，长期延续而固定下来；它是社会风俗总称，也可指个人习惯，此时可与 habit 换用。

remove [ri'muːv] *vt.* 排除，消除，搬迁，移动

【词组】remove sb. from sth. 免去某人的职务；remove sth. from sth. 清除某物

【辨析】remove 和 move 均可作"搬迁"讲，后接 to, in 或 into；美国英语常用 remove。move 常指搬家具，口语中也指搬家；remove 指搬家。

课文详解

1. Every time he wanted to come into the garden he would bark until someone opened the gate. 每当它想到花园里来时，便汪汪叫个不停，直到有人把门打开。

- every time 在这里是一个连词引导一个时间状语从句，表示"每次"、"每当"。

e. g. Every time I saw you, you were eating. It deserves you right to gain weight.

2. He soon became an expert at opening the gate. 他很快成了开门的专家。

- be expert at, be good at, be proficient in 都可以表示擅长。

3. This time he was barking so that someone would let him out! 这之后他就坐下汪汪叫起来，直到有人来把它放出去。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

语法精析

目的状语从句的用法

英语里表示目的的方法：

(一)动词不定式作目的状语

I come here to pick up my son.

(二)目的状语从句主要由 that, so that, in order that, lest, for fear that, in case 等引起

例如：

Let's take the front seats that we may see more clearly.

咱们坐前排，以便看得清楚点。

I don't let him go out in this weather in case he should catch cold.

我不让他这种天气出去，以防他感冒。

He studied hard so that he might succeed. 他努力学习，以便成功。

Betty got up early in order that she might catch the train. 贝蒂起得早，以便能赶上火车。(也可说 In order that she might catch the train, Betty got up early.)

I shall write it down lest I should forget. 我要把它写下来，以免忘了。(lest 引导的从句中须用"should ＋动词原形")

He put his money in the safe for fear that it should be stolen. 他把钱放在保险箱里，以防被盗。(for fear that 引导的从句中常用"should, would＋动词原形")

(三)目的状语从句有时可用 so 或 so... that 引起

Can't you fix it somehow so you could stay? 你可否作某种安排以便你能留下？

We have so arranged matters that one of us is always on duty. 我们作了这种安排，以便我们总有一个人值勤。

注意："in order to＋动词"和"so as to＋动词"均可表示目的，意为"为了，以便"；但是，"in order to＋动词"可以放在句首，也可以放在被修饰的动词之后，而"so as to＋动词"不可放在句首，只能放在被修饰的动词之后。so as to 之间可以加形容词或副词，构成"so＋形容词(副词)＋as to＋动词"结构，表示结果，而"in order to＋动词"则不可。另外，in order that 引导状语从句可以放在句首，也可放在主句后，见上文。比较：

They study hard in order to pass the exam. 他们努力学习，以便能通过考试。
They study hard so as to pass the exam.
In order to pass the exam, they study hard.
So as to pass the exam, they study hard. (误)

He spoke slowly so as to make everyone understand.
他说得很慢，以便使每个人都听得懂。(目的状语)
He spoke so slowly as to make everyone understand.
他说得很慢，所以每个人都听得懂。(结果状语)

(四)目的状语从句与不定式的转换

英语中的目的状语从句，还可以变为不定式或不定式短语作状语，从而使句子在结构上得以简化。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

可分为两种情况：

(1)当目的状语从句中的主语与主句中的主语相同时，可以直接简化为不定式或不定式短语作状语。

We'll start early in order that/so that we may arrive in time.

我们早出发是为了能及时赶到。

We'll start early in order to/so as to arrive in time.

(2)当目的状语从句中的主语与主句中的主语不相同时，要用动词不定式的复合结构作状语。

e. g. I came early in order that you might read my report before the meeting.

I came early(in order)for you to read my report before the meeting.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 60 The future

本课重点和难点

- 介词的固定搭配用法

本课词汇

future [ˈfjuːtʃə] *n.* 未来，将来

fair [fɛə] *n.* 定期集市，博览会

fortune-teller *n.* 算命先生，占卜者

crystal [ˈkristl] *adj.* 水晶般清澈的，晶体的，透明的 *n.* 水晶，晶体，水晶制品

relation [riˈleiʃən] *n.* 1. 关系 2. 亲戚，亲属

【词组】with/in relation to... 关系到……

【辨析】relation 和 relative 均为"亲属，亲戚"，现在 relative 比较通用，因 relation 还表示"关系"，以免混淆。这里亲属包括父母、子女、兄弟、姐妹、祖孙、伯叔等，但不包括亲戚的亲属。与 rich、poor 连用时，常用 relation。

impatiently [imˈpeiʃəntli] *adv.* 不耐烦地

课文详解

1. **After I had given her some money, she looked into a crystal ball and said: 'A relation of yours is coming to see you. She will be arriving this evening and intends to stay for a few days. The moment you leave this tent, you will get a big surprise. A woman you know well will rush towards you. She will speak to you and then she will lead you away from this place. That is all.**
我给了她一些钱后，她便查看着一个水晶球说道："您的一个亲戚就要来看您了。她将于今天傍晚到达，并准备住上几天。您一走出这个帐篷，就会大吃一惊。一位您很熟悉的女人将向您冲来。她会对您说点什么，然后带您离开这个地方。就是这些。"

- the moment(that)与 as soon as 含义一样，表示"一……就"。

e. g. The moment she joined us, she was involved in many large-scaled classes.

- That's all 是口语中常用的一句话，表示"完了"、"就这些"、"事情就是这样"等含义。

e. g. I hope you enjoy the course, that's all.

- 这段话用了很多的将来时。一般将来时表示将来要发生的事。详见 Lesson 12 的"语法精析"。

语法精析

介词的固定搭配用法

与介词连用的词主要有动词、名词和形容词。因此，我们把常见的介词短语也按如此分类。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(一)与动词搭配的短语

1. 动词+介词:此类结构相当于一个及物动词,可用于被动语态。

The hunter aimed at the lion and fired, but missd.

猎人对准狮子开了枪,但是没有打中。

2. 动词+副词:这类动词短语有的可用作不及物动词,有的可用作及物动词,需要具体情况具体分析。在高考中用作及物动词的情况相对来说更多,当后面的宾语是名词时,作宾语的名词既可以置于动词短语之后,也可以置于动词短语之中,但作宾语的代词只能置于动词短语之中。

Don't talk back when I'm speaking to you. 我和你说话的时候不要还嘴。

3. 动词+名词+介词:此类动词短语只能用作及物动词,动词短语中的名词之间可以有形容词修饰,作定语。

Please pay attention to what the teacher says. 请注意老师说的话。

4. 动词+副词+介词:此类动词短语只能用作及物动词。

The money their son spent in French added up to 5,000 dollars. 他们的儿子在法国总共花了5000美元。

考题: I don't ________ rock'n'roll. It's much too noisy for my taste.

A. go after B. go away with

C. go into D. go in for

答案解析:D。go after 的基本含义是"追逐,追求",go away with 的基本含义是"跟……走开",go into 的基本含义是"进入;加入;探究",go in for 的基本含义是"参加(比赛等);爱好,沉迷于(音乐、跳舞等)"。本题应用 go in for 表示"爱好,欣赏(摇滚)"之意,注意题干中的 go in for 属于"动词+副词+介词"结构的动词短语,类似的例句还有:I don't go in for sports. 我不喜欢体育运动。/ She goes in for stampcollecting. 她爱好集邮。

(二)与形容词搭配的短语

1. 常与 to 连用的形容词:

equal, favorable, faithful, familiar, good, hostile, loyal, parallel, opposite, responsible, sensible, useful, similar, used

2. 常与 about 连用的形容词:

anxious, careful, careless, certain, considerate, enthusiastic, guilty, happy, mad, sad, sure

3. 常与 for 连用的形容词:

available, bad, convenient, eager, eligible, good, grateful, homesick, famous, hungry, necessary, noted, ready, responsible, sorry, suitable

4. 常与 with 连用的形容词:

angry, acquainted, bored, careful, ill, popular, strict, busy, familiar, impatient, sympathetic

5. 常与 of 连用的形容词:

恐惧:afraid/frightened/terrified/scared of

好恶:ashamed/envious/fond/jealous/proud/tired of

态度:suspicious/critical/tolerant/ignorant of

意识:aware/conscious of

其他:capable/incapable, full, guilty, hopeful, independent

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

6. 常与 at 连用的形容词：

angry, bad, clever, disappointed, disgusted, good, marvelous, quick, skillful, useless, weak

对于上述与介词搭配的形容词，我们注意到，同一个形容词有的可与不同的介词进行搭配使用，此时构成的短语一般在意思和使用上均有所不同。例如：

sth. be familiar to sb.：某事为某人所熟悉
sb. be familiar with sth.：某人对某事熟悉

good at 擅长
good to 对……友好
good for 对……有益

因此，在熟悉使用这些短语的同时，还要注意区分和比较同一形容词与不同介词搭配在意义上的差别。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 61 Trouble with the Hubble

本课重点和难点

● 复习将来进行时、将来完成时和完成进行时

本课词汇

Hubble ['hʌbl] *n.* 哈勃

telescope ['teliskəup] *n.* 望远镜

【词组】a reflecting telescope 反射式望远镜;a refracting telescope 折射式望远镜;focus a telescope on 调节望远镜的焦距对准……

launch [lɔːntʃ] *vt.* 1. 使(船)下水 2. 发射(导弹),投射 3. 发动,发起

space [speis] *n.* 1. 间隔,距离 2. 空地,空处 3. 空间,太空 4. 一段时间 5. 空格,字空 6.(计算机、打字机等键盘的)空格键

【词组】space travel 宇宙航行

NASA ['næsə] *n.* (National Aeronautics and Space Administration)国家航空和航天局

billion ['biljən] *n.* 10亿

faulty ['fɔːlti] *adj.* 有错误的,不完善的

astronaut ['æstrənɔːt] *n.* 宇航员

shuttle ['ʃʌtl] *n.* 航天飞机

Endeavour ['indevə] *n.* "奋进"号

robot-arm ['rəubɒt-ˌɑːm] *n.* 机器手

grab [græb] *n./v.* 强夺,攫取,抓取

【词组】grab at 向……抓去,企图抓到

【用法】grab 指急速地抓住和抓牢;grab at 指想抓住某人或某物,不一定抓住了,强调猛然去抓这一动作。

atmosphere ['ætməsfiə] *n.* 1. 大气层 2. 气氛,环境

distant ['distənt] *adj.* 1. 在远处的 2. 久远的 3. 不友好的,有敌意的

【词组】be distant from 离……远的;be distant with/toward sb. 与某人疏远

【辨析】distant *adj.* 远的,遥远的:一般用语,指空间的距离相当大,不易达到。指较短的距离时不一定要有具体的数字词修饰。有时指时间间隔很大。用于比喻指很疏远;far *adj.* 遥远的,远方的:书面用语,语气较弱,指空间或时间不确定的距离间隔,不能指具体的距离间隔;remote *adj.* 遥远的,远的:指距离某中心地不仅很远,而且交通不便,很偏僻,不易达到。有时指时间很长。

galaxy ['gæləksi] *n.* 星系

universe ['juːnivəːs] *n.* 1. 宇宙,万物,世界 2. 领域,范围

eagle eye ['iːgəl-'ai] 鹰眼

课文详解

1. The Hubble telescope was launched into space by NASA on April 20, 1990 at a cost of over a billion dollars. 哈勃望远镜于1990年4月20日由国家航空航天局发射升空,耗资10多亿美元。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

● at a cost of,造价为……,耗资,以……的价格/费用。

e. g. The grand theater was set up at a cost of RMB 20,000,000 yuan.

2. NASA is now going to put the telescope right, so it will soon be sending up four astronauts to repair it. 国家航空航天局准备纠正这一错误,为此将把4名宇航员送入太空修复望远镜。

● put right 表示"修好(故障等)"、"校正"、"纠正"等。

e. g. Have you put the laptop right?

3. Of course, the Hubble is above the earth's atmosphere, so it will soon be sending us the clearest pictures of the stars and distant galaxies that we have ever seen. 因此,它很快就会给我们传送我们所见到过的、有关行星和远距离星系的最清晰的照片。

● 该句要注意 pictures 前面有 clearest 作前置定语修饰,还有后置定语 of the stars and distant galaxies,而且 that we have ever seen 这个定语从句也是修饰 pictures。

4. By the time you read this, the Hubble's eagle eye will have sent us thousands and thousands of wonderful pictures. 等你读到这篇文章时,敏锐的哈勃望远镜已经为我们送来了成千上万张精彩的照片。

● eagle eye 的含义是"鹰眼"、"锐利目光"。

e. g. His eagle eye is always on me.

● 在表示"数千"、"许许多多"、"成千上万"这些数字概念时可用 millions of..., thousands of...,或者 hundreds of...。此外,还有 dozens of 和 scores of。

语法精析

复习将来进行时、将来完成时和完成进行时(参见 Lesson 12,37,Lesson 52)

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 62 After the fire

本课重点和难点

- 复习过去完成时和过去完成进行时

本课词汇

control [kən'trəul] *vt.* /*n.* 1. 控制,支配 2. 克制,抑制

【词组】out of control 失去控制;under control 在控制之下

【用法】control 管理,支配,控制:指某人由于地位而获得控制权,指挥他人。

反义词:ineffectiveness(不起作用)。

smoke [sməuk] *n.* 烟

desolate ['desələt] *adj.* 荒凉的

threaten ['θretn] *v.* 1. 恐吓,威胁 2. 有……危险快要来临

【词组】threaten sb. with sth. 用……来威胁某人;threaten to do sth. 威胁要做某事

surrounding [sə'raundiŋ] *adj.* 周围的

destruction [di'strʌkʃən] *n.* 破坏,消灭

flood [flʌd] *n.* 洪水淹没

authorities [ɔː'θɔritiz] *n.* [复]当局,官方

grass-seed *n.* 草籽

spray [sprei] *vt.* 喷洒,喷射

quantity ['kwɔntiti] *n.* 量,数量

root [ruːt] *n.* 1. 根,根部 2. 根源,来源 *vt.* /*vi.* (使)生根

【词组】get at (to) the root of sth. 解决根本问题;pull... by the roots 连根拔起;put down roots 扎根;root and branch 完全地,彻底地;root for 支持,给……当拉拉队;root out 铲除,清除;root to the ground 使一动不动站在某处;root up 连根拔起

century ['sentʃuri] *n.* 世纪,(一)百年

patch [pætʃ] *n.* 一小块地

blackened ['blækənd] *adj.* 熏黑了的

课文详解

1. Firemen had been fighting the forest fire for nearly three weeks before they could get it under control. 消防队员们同那场森林大火搏斗了将近3个星期最后才把火势控制住。

- 这句话用到了过去完成进行时。其构成是 had been doing。

过去完成进行时表示动作在过去某一时间之前开始,一直延续到这一过去时间。和过去完成时一样,过去完成进行时也必须以一过去时间为前提。

- bring/get...under control:把……控制住

e. g. They are fighting to get/bring flood under control.

be/come under control:被控制住,恢复秩序

e. g. Everything is under control now, and back to normal.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

keep...under control：对……加以控制，把……管住。

e. g. Keep your dog under control.

2. Winter was coming on and the hills threatened the surrounding villages with destruction, for heavy rain would not only wash away the soil but would cause serious floods as well. 冬季即将来临，这些山丘对周围的村庄具有毁灭性的威胁，因为大雨不仅会冲走土壤，而且还会引起严重的水灾。

● and 连接并列句。for 引导状语从句；状语从句又是一个 not only...but...as well 连接两个谓语。

● come on

1)跟着来。

e. g. You'd better go now, and I'll come on later.

2)进展。

e. g. How are things coming on?

3)逐渐开始。

e. g. Night is coming on.

4)上演。

e. g. This play is coming on again next month.

● threaten...with 表示"以……威胁/恐吓"。其实在本句话中你可以理解为"预示"，"是……的征兆；有……的危险"。

e. g. The thief threatened him with a knife.

3. The forest authorities ordered several tons of a special type of grassseed which would grow quickly. 森林管理当局订购了好几吨一种生长迅速的特殊类型的草籽。

★ 四级词汇辨析：order, book, reserve

1)order 订购；叫(菜或饮料)。

e. g. Please order me a copy.

2)book 预定，订(房间、车票等)。

e. g. Mary has booked a flight from New York to London.

3)reserve 预定(约)；租定(座位、房间等)。

e. g. They have reserved rooms at a hotel.

4. By then, however, in many places the grass had already taken root. 然而到那时，很多地方的草已经生了根。

● in place of 替代

e. g. Plastics are now often used in place of wood or metal.

in place 在适当的地方

e. g. She likes to have everything in place.

语法精析

复习过去完成时和过去完成进行时(参见 Lesson 14,52)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 63 She was not amused

本课重点和难点

- 复习过去完成时、过去完成进行时
- 复习并列句
- 复习间接引语
- 评注性状语

本课词汇

circle ['sə:kl] *n.* 1. 圆，圆周 2. 圈子，集团 3. 周期，循环 *v.* 环绕，旋转

【词组】come full circle 兜了一圈，回到原处

admire [əd'maiə] *vt.* 羡慕，赞赏，钦佩

【用法】1. 后可接 for，表示原因。I admire her for her courage. (= I admire her courage.)我佩服她的勇气。2. 其后不接 that 从句。3. 用于讽刺语句中，作反语用。4. 后接 to do 时，表示"喜欢(做)"、"想要"。He admires to swim. 他喜欢游泳。

【辨析】admire 和 worship 都有"崇敬"的意思。admire 是最常用语，指对优秀人物的崇敬钦佩，并含有欣赏爱慕之情。I admire her for her bravery. 我钦佩她的勇敢。worship 含有宗教色彩，指怀有虔诚的感情，其"崇敬"程度比 admire 和 adore 强烈，含有自己远不如所崇拜的人，且有可望不可即的感觉。He worships the professor. 他崇拜那位教授。

close [kləus] *adj.* 1. 关闭的 2. 近的，接近的 3. 秘密的，不公开的 4. 严密的 *adv.* 接近地，紧密地

【辨析】close 亲密的，密切的：语气较强，指兴趣、爱好相同，因而经常接近，关系密切，感情很好。反义词：unfamiliar(陌生的)。

speech [spi:tʃ] *n.* 1. 讲话，演说 2. 语言，言语

【词组】make a speech on(或 about)就某事发言(讲话)

【用法】speech 语言：指一个民族的有声语言，不能指动物的语言。

wedding ['wediŋ] *n.* 婚礼

【辨析】wedding 和 marriage 都有"婚礼"的意思。wedding 指结婚仪式和有关的庆祝活动；marriage 指婚姻制度、婚姻状态、男女双方在法律上和精神上的结合。

reception [ri'sepʃən] *n.* 1. 接收 2. 招待会，接待处 3. 效果

【词组】give a reception to sb. 为(某人)举行欢迎会

sort [sɔ:t] *n.* 种类，类别

课文详解

1. Jeremy Hampden has a large circle of friends and is very popular at parties. 杰里米·汉普登交际甚广，是各种聚会上深受大家欢迎的人。

- circle 的含义之一是"(具有共同利益或兴趣等的人形成的)圈子"、"……界"。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

e. g. Such things are never talked about in business circles.

● popular 在这里表示"受欢迎的"、"得人心的"。

be popular with sb.:受某人的欢迎

e. g. Video games are very popular with children.

此外,一个人很受欢迎,也可以说 enjoy a large popularity。

2. Everybody admires him for his great sense of humour. 人人都钦佩他那绝妙的幽默感。

● sense of hunger 饥饿感 　sense of direction 方向感
sense of loss 失落感 　sense of belonging 归属感
sense of balance 平衡感

3. He prepared the speech carefully and went to... 他认真准备了讲稿……

● prepare 与 prepare for 的区别

prepare 后面接宾语,为准备的对象。

e. g. I prepared a delicious dish for the party.

prepare for 后接宾语,表示为什么而准备,宾语并不是准备的对象,而是目的。

e. g. I am preparing for the party tonight.

● prepare for=get prepared for=be ready for

4. As soon as he had finished, Jenny told him she wanted to go home. Jeremy was a little disappointed by this but he did as his daughter asked. 他刚一讲完,珍妮就对他说她要回家。这不免使杰里米有点扫兴,但他还是按照女儿的要求做了。

● as 引导的是方式状语从句,其含义为"如同……那样"、"以……的方式"。

e. g. When in Rome, do as the Romans do.

语法精析

一、复习过去完成时(参见 Lesson 14)、**过去完成进行时**(参见 Lesson 52)

二、复习并列句(参见 Lesson 25)

三、复习间接引语(参见 Lesson 39)

间接引语:祈使句的转述

1)祈使句的情况有所不同。表示命令、请求、建议的祈使句通常可用适当的动词后跟不定式来转述。常用的这类动词有 advise, ask, tell, order, command, warn, invite 等。转述这类祈使句的否定形式时,必须将 not 放在带 to 的不定式之前。

I advise you not to buy her anything. 我建议你不要买她的任何东西。

2)动词 suggest 和 insist 用于转述建议要求时,其结构为 suggest/insist that+从句用虚拟语气(should)+do

"Ask him about it." he insisted.

He insisted that I should ask him about it. 他坚持让我问他那件事。

四、评注性状语

修饰谓语动词的状语(副词、分词短语、形容词短语、介词词组、从句等)被称之为"修饰性状语"。而"评注性状语"是修饰整个句子的状语,其位置灵活,常位于句首,也可以位于句中或句尾,用逗号隔开。按结构划分,评注性状语主要有以下四类:

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(一)不定式或现在分词短语充当评注性状语

说明 常见的非限定分句形式的评注性状语有：to make matters worse 更糟的是，to be fair 说句公道话，to be frank/to speak candidly/to tell you the truth 老实说，to be sure 诚然，to sum up 总而言之，generally/broadly speaking 总的说来，judging from appearance 从外表上看……

考题：Oil prices have risen by 32 percent since the start of the year, ________ a record US $57.65 a barrel on April 4.

A. have reached B. reaching C. to reach D. to be reaching

答案解析：B。根据题干，可知应选用非谓语动词，故排除 A 项。此处非谓语动词作结果状语，不定式作结果状语时，仅表意料之外的事情，而此处表结果状态，因此选择 B。

(二)介词词组充当评注性状语

To his surprise/disappointment, his daughter said she hadn't enjoyed his speech. 令他吃惊/失望的是，女儿并不喜欢他的演说。

考题：________ the emplyees' working efficiency, the supervisor will allow them to have a coffee break.

A. Improving B. To improve C. Having improved D. Improved

答案解析：B。题意为：为了改善员工的工作效率，老板允许他们有喝咖啡休息的时间。应选不定式表示目的，其中 to 的作用等同于 in order to, so as to。

(三)as, if 等连词引导的分句充当评注性状语

As it turned out/As it happened, the grass had taken root in many places.

结果许多地方都长出了青草。

(四)-ly 副词充当评注性状语

Fortunately, the forest fire had been put out before it spread to the nearby farms.

幸运的是，森林大火在蔓延到附近农场之前就被扑灭了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 64 The Channel Tunnel

本课重点和难点

- 虚拟语气的用法

本课词汇

tunnel ['tʌnl] *n.* 隧道,山洞

port [pɔːt] *n.* 港口,港市

【用法】port 港口,海港:指船舶靠岸或卸货的人造港口。有时指港口城市。

ventilate *vt.* 使通风

chimney ['tʃimni] *n.* 烟囱

【词组】chimney sweep 或 sweeper 烟囱清扫工人

sea level *n.* 海平面

above sea level 海拔

ventilation [ˌventi'leiʃən] *n.* 通风,通风设备

draw in 吸入,吸引

fear ['fiə] *n.* 害怕,恐惧 *vi.* 害怕,恐惧,担心

【词组】for fear of 以免……,唯恐……;for fear that 以免……,以防……;without fear or favour 公正地,严正地

【用法】fear 恐惧,害怕:一般用语,指面临危险时所引起的恐惧心理。

fresh [freʃ] *adj.* 清新的,新鲜的

invasion [in'veiʒən] *n.* 侵入,侵略

officially [ə'fiʃəli] *adv.* 正式地

connect [kə'nekt] *v.* 连接,联结

European [ˌjuərə'piːən] *adj.* 欧洲的

continent ['kɔntinənt] *n.* 大陆

课文详解

1. In 1858, a French engineer, Aimé Thomé de Gamond, arrived in England with a plan for a twenty-one-mile tunnel under the English Channel. 1858 年,一位名叫埃梅·托梅·德·干蒙的法国工程师带着建造一条长 21 英里、穿越英吉利海峡的隧道计划到了英国。

● twenty-one-mile 作定语修饰 tunnel,注意 mile 为单数。例如:a six-year-old boy,或者 a 100-page book。

2. He said that it would be possible to build a platform in the centre of the Channel. 他说,可以在隧道中央建造一座平台。

● It would be possible to do...这里 it 作形式主语,真正的主语是后面的动词不定式。

● the Channel 前的定冠词一定不能少。英语里某些地理名词,如江河湖海、海峡海湾、山脉群岛、沙漠等之前都要用定冠词。e. g. the Yangtz(长江),the Thames(泰晤士河),the Persian Gulf(波斯湾),the Sahara Desert(撒哈拉沙漠)等。

www.TopSage.com

3. This platform would serve as a port and a railway station. 这座平台将用作码头和火车站。

● serve as 表示"充当……,起……的作用"的意思,如:This sofa can serve as a bed. 有时候我们用 act as 来代替 serve as,两个短语的意思基本相同,如:A coin can act as a screwdriver.

4. In 1860, a better plan was put forward by an Englishman, William Low. 1860 年,一位名叫威廉·洛的英国人提出了一项更好的计划。

● put forward 为固定短语,既可以表示"提出(计划、建议等)",可以和 propose 互换,如:propose a solution to a problem;同时,也可以表示"把……提前",与介词 to 连用时,表示提前到某个确切的日期,如:We put forward the date of the meeting to Jan. 10th. 而当 put forward 与 by 连用时,则表示提前多长时间,如:put forward the date of the meeting by one week。

5. He suggested that a double railway tunnel should be built. 他提议建一条双轨隧道。

● suggest 表示"建议,提意"时,要么后面跟名词/动名词,suggest sth. (to sb.)或 suggest doing sth.。如:He suggested going for a walk,要么就像本句一样,后面接一个宾语从句,suggest + that 从句,但是从句中一定要使用虚拟语气,即 should+动词原形,should 往往被省略了。如:The doctor suggested that he do more exercises.

6. If, at the time, the British had not feared invasion, it would have been completed. 如果不是因为那时英国人害怕入侵,隧道早就建成了。

● 这是一个 if 引导的非真实条件句,也就是虚拟语气。这句话是对大战期间所发生的事情的一种假设,而这种假设与事实不符。因此,在与过去相反的虚拟语气的从句中要用过去完成时 had not feared,而主句中则要用 would + have+过去分词。

有关 if 非真实条件句的用法在这里就不赘述了,参见 Lesson 40。

语法精析

一、虚拟语气(Ⅳ)——名词性从句中的虚拟语气

(一)虚拟语气在主语从句中的用法

虚拟语气常用在由形式主语 it 引导的主语从句中。谓语动词用"should+动词原形",但 should 一词可省略;表示过去的情况,谓语动词用"should+have+过去分词"。例如:

It is necessary that you should clean the workshop after work.

下班后,你必须清扫车间。

(二)虚拟语气在宾语从句中的运用

用在表示愿望、建议、命令、请求等动词所引导的宾语从句中。在这类动词引导的宾语从句中,谓语动词采用虚拟式,即"should+动词原形"或省略 should 只用动词原形。

I suggested that we(should)form a spare time study group.

我建议成立一个业余学习小组。

(三)同位语、表语从句中的虚拟从句

在表示命令、要求、提议、愿望等意义的名词后面的同位语从句或表语从句中,谓语用"should+动词原形"或"动词原形"。

www.TopSage.com

His suggestion is that they(should) go to the cinema. 他建议他们应该看电影去。

二、虚拟语气(Ⅴ)——"if it were not/had not been for..."型虚拟

说明 "if it were not for...,... would/should(not)+动词原形"表示与现在事实相反的情况;"if it had not been for...,... would/should(not)have+过去分词"表示与过去事实相反的情况,意为"要不是……"。其中,it为虚义。

If it were not for your company, I would/should feel very lonely.

要不是因为你的陪伴,我会感到很孤单的。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 65 Jumbo versus the police

本课重点和难点

- would, should, ought to 的用法
- 让步条件句(Ⅰ)

本课词汇

versus ['vəːsəs] *prep.*(比赛中的)对……

Christmas ['krisməs] *n.* 圣诞节

【词组】at Christmas 圣诞期间；on Christmas Day 在圣诞节那天

circus ['səːkəs] *n.* 1. 马戏团，杂技团 2. 马戏场，杂技场

present ['preznt] *n.* 礼物

【用法】present 介绍，引见：正式用语，指把某人引见与职位较高的人认识。

dress up 打扮，穿上盛装

Father Christmas 圣诞老人

accompany [ə'kʌmpəni] *vt.* 陪同

【用法】accompany 伴随，陪同：指某人作为陪伴与他人同行或一起干某事。用于比喻指两件事同时发生。

approach [ə'prəutʃ] *vt.* 靠近，接近，临近 *n.* 1. 接近，入门 2. 方法 3. 探讨

ought [ɔːt] *aux.* 应当，应该，本应

【用法】"ought to＋动词原形"表示道义上"应当"所为之事。"ought to have ＋过去分词"表示"本来应该做某事而实际上却没有做"的含义，含有责备之意。

weigh [wei] *vi.* 称，重达 *vt.* 1. 称……的重量 2. 考虑……权衡

fortunate ['fɔːtʃənit] *adj.* 幸运的，吉利的，带来好运的

课文详解

1. **Dressed up as Father Christmas and accompanied by a "guard of honour" of six pretty girls, he set off down the main street of the city riding a baby elephant called Jumbo. 他打扮成圣诞老人，在由6个漂亮姑娘组成的"仪仗队"的陪同下，骑上一头名叫江伯的小象，沿着城里的主要街道出发了。**

● 这个句子可以说是新概念第2册课文中少有的结构复杂的句子，因此首先应当对该句的成分作一个分析：这个句子的主干是 he set off down the main street of the city，主句之前有两个过去分词短语 dressed up... and accompanied by... 作状语，而主句之后又是一个现在分词短语 riding a baby elephant 作状语，最后还有一个过去分词短语 called Jumbo 作定语，修饰 elephant。

● dress up 表示"特意打扮一番，穿得比较正式"的意思。如果今天看到了身边的姐妹打扮得漂漂亮亮的，你就可以很八卦地问一句 What are you dressed up for today? 跟"漂亮"有关的 up 短语还有 make up，这个大家就很熟悉了。稍作修改，这个动词短语就成了名

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

词 make-up(化妆品)。不过要注意,make-up 是要用 wear 来搭配的,即 wear some make-up。除了衣服、化妆之外,耳环、项链等 decoration 或者 accessory 也是必不可少的。经过这样的三步曲,我们的美女也就打造成功了!

● 跟 dress up 相反,如果一个人穿得很随意,便用 dress down 来表示。在许多国家,上班族(尤其是那些 white-collars)的穿着都非常正规。但是有不少上班族都不喜欢这样正统的穿着,于是有些公司就放宽条件允许员工在星期五可以着便装上班。于是,就出现了这样一个新名词 dress-down Friday(便装星期五)。

2. A policeman approached Jimmy and told him he ought to have gone along a side street as Jumbo was holding up the traffic. 一个警察走过来告诉吉米,他应该走一条小路,因为江泊阻碍了交通。

★ 四级词汇辨析:way, method, approach, means

这些单词均有"方法、方式"的意思,意思上的区别并不十分明显,最大的区别在后面跟的介词上。如:The use of solar energy is a promising approach to solving the shortage of energy resources.

● ought to have done 和 should have done 所表达的含义完全一致,均表示"过去本应该做某事却没有做到",往往带有一种责备的口吻。

e. g. I should have listened to you, but it's no use regretting now.

● side 在这里表示"次要的,附带的",可以看作 main 的反义词,类似的用法如:main/side building(主/附楼), main/side effect(主要疗效/副作用), main/side road 等。

3. Though Jimmy agreed to go at once, Jumbo refused to move. 虽然吉米同意马上就走,但江伯却拒绝移动。

● 一个让步状语从句包含了两个反义词组 agree to do sth. 和 refuse to do sth.。

★ 四级词组辨析:agree with 与 agree upon/on

1)agree with:大家只熟悉这个短语的一层含义即 sb. agree with sb.(同意某人的话/意见等)。如:I couldn't agree with you more. 很多人却忽视了 agree with 的另一层含义,注意当我们用物来做主语时,sth. agree with sb. 则表示"某人适应某物/某事",如:The weather here doesn't agree with me.

2)agree on/upon 表示"在某一点上取得一致意见",往往都是用复数名词或代词作主语。

e. g. We agree on the date of the meeting.

★ 四级词汇辨析:refuse, decline, reject

这三个词虽然意思是大同小异,均表示"拒绝,反对"的意思,但它们之间的感情色彩却不尽相同。

1)refuse:是一个中性词,没有任何感情色彩,可以看作是 accept 或者 agree 的反义词。

e. g. He refuses to lend me any money saying that he himself is lack of money at the present.

2)decline:是一个十分礼貌的用词,类似于中文里的"婉言谢绝"。

e. g. I offered my help to her and she simply declined my offer of help.

3)reject:是一个贬义词,指带有敌意的、冷冰冰的拒绝。

e. g. Mike rejected the invitation from his love rival.

4. ...but as he has a good record, we shall let him off this time. 但由于它一贯表现很好,这次我们饶了它。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

● 这里的 record 可以理解为 criminal record 或 rap sheet(犯罪记录,前科),是讲 Jumbo 记录良好,也就是说它从来没有犯过事,所以得到了警察的原谅。

★ 四级短语辨析:let down,let go (of),let in/out,let off

1) let down:原意表示"降落,降下",引申一下就有了"使……失望"的意思。

e. g. I will never let you down;I assure you.

2)let go (of):的意思是"放开,放手"。

e. g. Don't let go of the rope/handle.

3)let in/out 是一对反义词组,let in 表示"让……进来",let out 表示"放出,发出"。

e. g. Who let you in?

4)let off:表示"放走……,宽恕"。

e. g. The police let him off, but warned him.

语法精析

一、would,should,ought to

(一)ought to

1. 语气稍重一些。有时也含有责备之意。ought 后面必须跟带 to 的动词不定式,否定式是 ought not 加带 to 的动词不定式。如:

He said you ought to tell the police. 他说你应当去报警。

Your father ought not to smoke so much. 你父亲不应该吸太多的烟。

2. ought to 一般可以指将来,指现在常用于进行时中。在肯定句中用完成时,表示过去应该做但没有做;在否定句中用完成时,表示不应该做的事情发生了。如:

At your age, you ought to be earning your living. 你到这个年龄应当自食其力了。

The student ought to have done his homework more carefully.

这位学生做作业时本应该更加细心。

He oughtn't to have been so late. 他本不应该来这么晚。

(二)shall 与 should

1. shall 表示意愿,一般用于第一人称,表示征求对方的意见。用于第二、第三人称,不表示主语的意愿。

She shall have what she wants. 她可以得到她要的东西。(表示允诺)

You shall suffer from what you do. 你这样做会吃苦头的。(表示威胁、警告)

Shall we go now? 我们现在走吗?(征询意见)

2. 在疑问句中,第三人称作主语也能表示征询对方的意见。

Shall she come at once? 要她马上来吗?

3. 用于第二、第三人称,若 shall 重读,就有"命令,强制"的意味。

No one shall stop me from doing this. 谁也无法阻止我这样做。

You shall obey my orders. 你必须服从我的命令。

4. should 可用于虚拟语气中。

You should listen to the doctor's advice. 你应当听从医生的建议。

You should have helped him. 你本该帮助他的。

(三)will 与 would

will 作为情态动词,它有过去形式 would,其用法有:

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

1. will 表示愿意，在句中不重读，可缩写为 'll，否定句可缩写为 won't。可用于肯定句、否定句、疑问句及条件从句。

I will tell you all about it. 我愿意告诉你有关这件事情的一切情况。

He won't argue with others. 他不愿与别人争辩。

2. 表示一种礼貌的请求或拒绝，一般用在疑问句与否定句中。

Will you please fill in the form? 请填好表格好吗？

I won't tell you anything. 我不会告诉你任何事情。

3. will 和 would 表示习惯或反复发生的动作。如：

We would often find him lying on bed and reading. 我们经常看到他躺在床上看书。

Fish will die out of water. 鱼儿离不开水。

4. would 用于固定习语。

Would you mind my taking a photo of you? 我为你拍张照片，你介意吗？

Would you like to sing a song with me? 愿意和我一起唱首歌吗？

I would rather do it myself. 我宁愿自己干。

（四）should，ought to 的区别

should 与 ought to 含义接近，should 比 ought to 语气弱些。在日常交际中，人们为了避免让自己的情感表露太明显，常用 should 代替 ought to。两者在语义上的区别是：should 表示一般忠告，指说话人对当前事情的个人看法；ought to 则带有一定的针对性，表示从法律或道义的角度考虑某事该不该做。

Tom's mother told him that he ought to work harder the next term. 汤姆的妈妈告诉他下学期学习应该再努力些。

Tom's mother kept telling him that he should work harder, but it didn't help. 汤姆的妈妈一直在给他讲他应该在学习上再下些工夫，但就是没用。

（五）should＋have＋过去分词，ought to＋have＋过去分词的区别

两者都表示过去本该做而实际并未做的事情，含有对自己所做的事后悔、对别人抱怨或责备之意；用于否定句表示过去本不该做而做了的事情。前者语气比后者弱。

前者可表示过去并未发生的事，说话人询问是否该做。

二、让步条件句（Ⅰ）

（一）though，although

"though/although..."相当于"尽管/虽然……，但是……"。although 比 though 语气较重，although 更多用于句首。

注意：though/although 不可与 but 连用：Though Jimmy agreed to go at once, but his elephant Jumbo refuse to move.（×）

Though/Although air cyclists may even eventually get across the English Channel, it is doubtful whether they will ever cycle across the Atlantic. 尽管空中骑手最终可能飞跃英吉利海峡，他们是否能飞越大西洋，则令人怀疑。

（二）even if，even though

even if，even though 表示"即使"，可互换使用。

Even if/Even though you don't want to take an exam, enroll in an evening class anyway. 最好还是报名进夜校学习，即使你不想参加什么考试。

www.TopSage.com

(三) while, whereas

while 表示"尽管",常用于句首,可与 although 互换使用,但 although 语气更强。

While/Although the Hatfield is a modern aeroplane, its designer is finding it difficult to get it off the ground. 尽管"哈特菲尔德"是一架新式飞机,它的设计师发现很难使它飞离地面。

"While being flown..."为时间状语从句,相当于"While it was being flown"。

While being flown by a champion amateur cyclist in 1963, the plan crashed on the airfield. 1963 年这架飞机在由一名业余空中骑手冠军驾驶时,在机场坠毁。

whereas 相当于"而",表示前后的对照关系,可与 while 互换使用。

He earns 2,500 yuan a month whereas/while his wife makes at least 10,000 a month. 他的月收入是 2 500 元,而他妻子每月至少可挣一万元。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 66 Sweet as honey!

本课重点和难点

- 复习 must/have to
- 复习让步状语从句
- 复习替代词 that, those, one, ones
- 集合名词

本课词汇

Lancaster ['læŋkəstə] *n.* 兰开斯特

bomber ['bɒmə] *n.* 1. 轰炸机 2. 投弹手

remote [ri'məut] *adj.* 1.（在空间或时间上）遥远的 2.（在情感、兴趣等方面）距离很大的，关系甚远的 3. 遥控的

pacific [pə'sifik] *adj.* 1. 爱好和平的，和平的 2. 温和的，安静的 3. 太平洋的

damage ['dæmidʒ] *n.* 1. 损害，损坏 2. 赔偿费 *vt.* 损害，损害，毁坏 *vi.* 受损，被损害

wreck [rek] *vt.* 1. 破坏，毁坏 2. 造成……失事，使遇难 *vi.*（船只等）失事；遭受破坏 *n.*（船只等）失事，遇难 1. 失事的船（飞机等），（失事船、飞机等的）残骸 2. 受到严重损害的人（动物等），遭到严重破坏的建筑物（车辆等）*n.* 破灭；落空

rediscover ['ri:-dis'kʌvə] *vt.* 再发现

aerial ['eəriəl] *adj.* 航空的

survey [sə' vei] *vt.* 1. 纵览 2. 检查，调查，审视 3. 测量，勘测 ['sə:vei] *n.* 1. 俯瞰；环视 2. 概观；检查；调查（报告） 3. 勘测

rescue ['reskju:] *vt.* 1. 援救，营救，解放 2. 非法劫回（被扣留的人或物），对（被围困地）以武力解围 *n.* 救出，解救

【词组】come to someone's rescue 前往解救某人

package ['pækidʒ] *v.* 把……打包

enthusiast [in'θju:ziæst] *n.* 热情的人；热心者

restore [ris'tɔ:] *vt.* 1. 归还 2. 恢复，再采用 3. 使恢复健康，（健康的）复原 4. 使复职，使复位 5. 修复，重建

imagine [i'mædʒin] *vt.* 1. 想象，设想 2. 料想，想到 3. 猜想；认为 *vi.* 1. 想象 2. 想起来 3. 料想，猜想

【词组】Just imagine (it). 想一想……竟然

packing case ['pækiŋ-keis] 包装箱

colony ['kɒləni] *n.* 群

bee [bi:] *n.* 蜂

hive [haiv] *n.* 1. 蜂箱，蜂房；一窝蜂 2. 喧闹场所 *v.*（蜂）进入蜂箱

preserve [pri'zə:v] *vt.* 1. 保存，保护，收藏 2. 保藏，腌制，做成罐头 3. 保持，维持

beeswax ['bi:zwæks] *n.* 蜂蜡

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

课文详解

1. In 1963, a Lancaster bomber crashed on Wallis Island, a remote place in the South Pacific, a long way west of Samoa. 1963 年，一架兰开斯特轰炸机在瓦立斯岛坠毁。那是南太平洋中一个很偏僻的小岛，位于萨摩亚群岛以西，距离群岛还有很长一段距离。

● 该句中使用了两个同位语来解释 Wallis Island 这个地方，同位语在新概念第 2 册中出现的频率还是相当高的，如：He has gone to Alice Springs, a small town in the centre of Australia.（Lesson 4）He wanted to fly to Rockall, a lonely island in the Atlantic Ocean.（Lesson 29）

● 表示方位的介词有三个 in, to, on，这一知识点在 Lesson 14 中作过讲解，这里在 west of 的前面既没有 the，又没有介词的情况下，west of = to the west of。

2. By this time, a Lancaster bomber in reasonable condition was rare and worth rescuing. 到了那个时候，状况良好的兰开斯特轰炸机实属罕见，值得抢救。

★ 四级词汇辨析：condition, state

这两个名词都有"情况，状况"的意思。

1) condition：是个普通的用词，往往和介词 in 或 under 搭配使用，如：I will lend you the money under the condition that you return it in two weeks. 当它用复数形式时多半指笼统的情况，如：I can hardly imagine what the conditions in your country are like due to the political unrest.

2) state：侧重指人或物在某一阶段或形式上的状态，往往和介词 in 或 at 搭配使用，如：Our company kept losing money at its initial state.

★ 四级词汇辨析：worth, worthy, worthwhile

这三个词都是形容词，且都有"值得"的意思。

1) worth：只能作表语，be worth doing"（某事）值得去做"。

e. g. The question is not worth discussing again and again.

2) worthy：常常作定语，意思是"值得尊敬的，有价值的"。

e. g. Doctor Bethune is a worthy man, who regards his job of saving others' lives a worthy thing to do.

即便是作表语，后面往往接被动语态 be worthy to be done 或 be worthy of being done，而 be worth doing 则是用主动语态来表达被动的含义。1）里的例句也可以用 worthy 来替换，The question is not worthy to be discussed again and again.

3) worthwhile：a. 作定语，表示一件事情是"值得做的"。

e. g. The final result makes all my efforts worthwhile.

b. 作表语后面往往跟不定式，be worthwhile to do.

e. g. It is not worthwhile to discuss the question again and again.

3. ...but the group will need to have only three of them rebuilt. 但是他们只需要修复其中的 3 台。

● 这里的 need 是作实义动词用，有关 need 的用法在 Lesson 41 中有详细讲解。

● have only three of them rebuilt 这一结构是本课的重点，课文中共出现了 4 次。而我们需要把 have sth. done 同 have sb. do sth. 的结构进行区分。have sth. done 表示"让某事被做"，换句话说，主语自己不去做这件事，找另外一个人"让别人去做这件事"，如：I had my hair cut yesterday. How about my new hairstyle? 而 have sb. do 的用法是 Lesson 18 中的难

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

点内容，参见 Lesson 18 中的讲解即可。

● group 是集合名词。

4. Imagine their surprise and delight when they broke open the packing case. 想象一下他们拆开包装箱时所感受到的惊奇和兴奋。

● 如果把 broke open the packing case 的顺序还原为 broke the packing case open，大家就不难理解这个句子的成分了，broke 是谓语动词，packing case 是宾语，显然 open 充当的是宾语补足语的成分。

无论是形容词、副词、分词或者是不定式，只要这些成分是对宾语进行补充或说明的，都被视为宾语补足语。通常宾语补足语与宾语之间有逻辑上的主谓关系。

e. g. The feeling of satisfaction can always make you happy.

语法精析

一、复习 must/have to（参见 Lesson 17，41）

二、复习让步状语从句（参见 Lesson 65）

三、复习替代词 that，those，one，ones（参见 Lesson 8，17）

四、集合名词

集合名词作主语时，主谓一致关系是一个较为复杂的问题。对此类问题我们可以从"数"的角度分为三类。

1. 单复同形型。这类集合名词的单数形式既可表示单数也可表示复数。作主语时，根据说话人的心理意向若把这个集合名词所代表的人或事物看作一个整体，就认为是单数，谓语动词用单数形式；若把它所代表的人或事物看作若干个个体的话，就认为其为复数，谓语动词用复数形式。

这类集合名词常见的有：class，family，team，crew，board，herd，committee，party，jury，enemy，audience 等。

试比较：

The football team is playing well. 那个足球队打得非常漂亮。

The football team are having bath and are then coming back here for tea.

足球队员们正在洗澡，然后来这里吃茶点。

2. 单数型。这类集合名词表示的是人或事物的整体，即把这类人或事物的全部包括在内，所以只有单数形式。如作主语，谓语动词常用单数形式。这类名词常见的有：humanity，mankind，proletariat 等。

The proletariat is the greatest class in the history of mankind. In the fields of production and scientific experiment，mankind makes constant progress.

3. 复数型。这类集合名词在形式和内容上是相互矛盾的，就是说它们只有单数形式，但表达的都是复数概念。这类名词有：police，cattle，faculty，flock，machinery，vermin，personnel 等。它们作主语时，谓语动词要用复数形式。

The police have caught the murder. 警察已经抓到了那个杀人犯。

Our personnel are very highly trained. 我们的职员都受过很好的培训。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 67 Volcanoes

本课重点和难点

- 让步条件句(Ⅱ)
- whoever, whatever, whichever 引导的名词性从句

本课词汇

volcano [vɔl'keinəu] *n.* 火山

Haroun Tazieff ['hærəun 'tɑːzief](人名)哈罗恩·塔捷耶夫

Polish['pəuliʃ] *adj.* 波兰的

lifetime *n.* 终身,一生

active ['æktiv] *adj.* 活的,在活动中的

【用法】active 活跃的,精力充沛的:用于人指有进取心、行动积极;用于物指气氛热烈而活跃。

Kivu ['kiːvuː](湖名)基伍湖

Congo ['kɔŋgəu] *n.* 刚果

Kituro [ki'tuːrəu](火山名)基图罗

erupt [i'rʌpt] *vi.* 1. 爆发,突然发生 2. 喷发

violently ['vaiələntli] *adv.* 猛烈地,强烈地

manage ['mænidʒ] *vt.* 设法,管理,对付

【词组】manage with 用……对付过去; manage without... 在没有……情况下敷衍过去

【用法】manage 处理,处分,管理:指处理机器、马车、事务等。

brilliant ['briliənt] *adj.* 辉煌的,聪明的,才气焕发的

liquid ['likwid] *n.* 液体 *adj.* 液体的,液态的

【辨析】liquid 液体;solid 固体;gas 气体

liquid rock 岩浆

escape [is'keip] *vi.* 逃跑;漏掉 *vt.* 逃避,避免…… *n.* 逃跑,逃避

【用法】1. 后接名词或动名词。作不及物动词时,后可接 from 或 out of,也可直接接形容词或过去分词作主语补语。

2. escape 避免,逃脱:指故意或偶尔离开了对自己不利的事,避免受到伤害。

alive [ə'laiv] *adj.* 活着的

课文详解

1. ...has spent his lifetime studying active volcanoes...花了毕生的精力来研究世界各地的活火山

● spend time(in)doing sth.,这一结构早在 Lesson 3 中就作过讲解。如果后面跟的不是动名词,而仅仅是一个名词,则用 spend...on sth.,这里的 on 一定不能省略。

e. g. Every year, our country spends over one billion yuan on education.

● 虽然活火山是 active volcano,但不能想当然说死火山为 inactive volcano,死火山为 extinct volcano,还有一种休眠火山则是 dormant volcano。不过休眠火山可以觉醒,死火山也可以复活,不管怎么说火山都是一个 natural disaster。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. ... to observe a new volcano which he later named Kituro. 对一座后来被他命名为基图罗的新火山进行观察。

● name 在这里是被活用成了动词，"给……命名"，如：name the baby Peter。还有一个常用的短语 name...after..."拿……的名字来命名"，如：name the fund after its founder。

3. Though he managed to take a number of brilliant photographs, he could not stay near the volcano for very long. 尽管他设法拍了一些十分精彩的照片，但他却不能在火山附近停留太长的时间。

● manage to do sth. 虽然翻译成中文为"设法做某事"，与 try to do 似乎没什么区别，但 manage 表示设法做成了某事，一定是成功了；而 try 仅仅表示试图做某事，其结果尚未确定，可能成功，也可能不成功。

e. g. I try to help them out, but it seems that I bring a lot of trouble to them instead.

4. This time, he managed to climb into the mouth of Kituro so that he could take photographs and measure temperatures. 这次他设法爬进了基图罗火山口，以便能拍到照片，测量温度。

● so that 在这里引导的是一个目的状语从句，这是 Lesson 59 的内容。要把 so that 和 Lesson 35 学到的 so...that...(结果状语从句)进行区分。

● photo 可以看作是 photograph 的缩写，当 photograph 变为 photographer(摄影师)和 photography(摄影)的时候，单词的重音也相应地发生了变化。

5. He has been able to tell us more about active volcanoes than any man alive. 他能告诉我们的有关活火山的情况比任何在世的人都要多。

● alive 虽然是个形容词，但修饰名词时得放在名词的后面。英语里基本上以 a-开头的形容词，常常都是作后置定语，如：the house ablaze(着火的房子)，the rumor afloat(流言蜚语)。

● 除上述情况之外，形容词需要后置的情况还有：

1)以后缀-able 和-ible 结尾的形容词，在意义上有强烈的谓语色彩时，也往往后置。

e. g. The only persons reliable are my family members.

The only book available then was all Oxford dictionary.

2)形容词修饰不定代词时，一般放在其后。

e. g. I am very upset now, and I want to find somewhere quiet.

3)形容词短语作修饰语时，往往后置。

e. g. I was caught in a traffic jam in the street full of cars.

★ 四级词汇辨析：alive, living, lively, live

alive, live, living 都有"活的、有生命的"意思，与 dead 意义相反。但：

1)live 通常只作前置定语，且一般用于动物。此外，live 还有"现场直播的，现场演出的"的意思。

e. g. This is a live fish.

We watched the live broadcast of the opera on TV.

2)alive, living 不仅可作定语，也可以作表语。区别在于作定语时，alive 只能置于名词后；living 一般置于名词前。

e. g. Who's the greatest man alive(=living man)?

3)lively 有"活泼的，快活的，生动的"等意思。

e. g. Young children are usually lively.

He told a very lively story.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

4)只有 living 前加 the 方可表示"活着的人",作主语时,视作复数。

e. g. The living are more important to us than the dead.

语法精析

一、让步条件句(Ⅱ)

(一)"wh-ever"与"no matter wh-"引导的让步条件句

"wh-ever"与"no matter＋wh-"充当让步条件句时,可互换使用。

No matter how busy you are/However busy you are, he always insists on coming with you. 无论你有多忙,他总是坚持与你同行。

Whatever others may say/No matter what others may say, stick to your own principles. 不管别人说什么,都要坚持自己的原则。

(二)whether...or...引导的让步条件句

1."whether...or..."引导让步选择条件句,表示"无论……还是……"。

Most women feel a lack of satisfaction about their life, whether they are married with children or living a wild single life. 大多数妇女对自己的生活缺乏满足感,无论她们是已成家养子还是仍过着自由的单身生活。

2.在"whether...or..."让步条件句中,若谓语动词为"are/is/am",可将它们前置于句首,但都要改为系动词原形"be"。如:

Be he friend or not /Whether he is a friend or an enemy, we will deal with him fairly in business. 无论他是朋友还是敌人,在商场上我们公平相待。

Be it ever so late, I must type another document. 尽管已经很晚了,我必须再打印一份文件。

(三)though, as 引导的让步倒装结构

在 though, as 引导的让步条件句中,为了强调让步意义,可将表语或状语前置于句首,其余成分位置不变。

Rich as/though he is, he still works hard. 尽管他很富有,他工作还是很努力。

(四)granted 引导的让步条件句

"granted that"可引导让步条件句,表示"尽管,即使",其中 granted 作连词;"granted"也可作副词,相当于"的确",用来先肯定某事物属实,再提出相反的观点,两个分句间用"but"连接。

Granted that he has more than enough money, it doesn't mean that he will buy these fancy goods every day. 尽管他的钱绰绰有余,这并不意味着他会天天买这些奢侈品。

Granted, it's a smart car, but have you noticed its price? 这辆车的确很时髦,但你注意到它的价格了吗?

(五)一些公式化的让步结构

例句:

Believe it or not, I will marry a millionaire tomorrow.

我明天要嫁给一个百万富翁,信不信由你。

Come what may/No matter what happens/Whatever happens, I will carry out the plan.

无论发生什么情况,我都会执行该计划。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

二、whoever, whatever, whichever 引导的名词性从句

(一)whoever, whichever, whatever 引导的主语从句

例句：

Whoever(＝Anyone who) breaks the law is to be punished.

无论谁触犯了法律，都要受到惩罚。

Whatever(＝Anything that) he had inherited from his parents was lost in the stock market. 他从父母那里继承的一切都在股市输光了。

(二)whoever, whichever, whatever 引导的宾语从句

例句：

Take whichever book(＝any book) you like. 你想要哪本书就拿哪本。

This information will be useful for whoever(＝anyone who) wants to take IELTS. 这一信息对任何想要参加雅思考试的人都有价值。

I will just say whatever(＝anything that) comes to my mind. 我将想到什么说什么。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 68 Persistent

本课重点和难点

- 复习 be able to，can
- 复习动名词
- 复习不定代词
- 复习让步条件句

本课词汇

persistent [pə'sistənt] *adj*. 坚持的，持久的

avoid [ə'vɔid] *vt*. 1. 防止，避免 2. 逃避，避开

【用法】avoid 逃避，躲开：指事先预料到某种行为是危险的，因此尽量预防，使其不要出现这种情况。反义词：meet（碰上）。

insist [in'sist] *vt*. 坚持，强调

课文详解

1. It was no use pretending that I had not seen him, so I waved to him. 若再装没看见他已经是没有用的了，所以我只好跟他打招呼。

● it is no use doing sth. 是一个 it 作形式主语的结构，表示“干……是没有用处的”。同样的意思，还可以用其他的结构去替换，比方说 It is useless/pointless doing sth.，或者语气更加强烈一些可以用 What's the point of doing sth.？

e. g. Since Peter is such a stubborn person, what's the point of trying to persuading him?

一些类似常用句型总结：

it is no good doing sth.

it is no use doing sth.

there is no point(in) doing sth.

there is no use/good(in) doing sth.

there is no denying the fact that...

2. No matter how busy you are, he always insists on coming with you. 不管你多忙，他总是坚持要跟你去。

● no matter...作“无论”、“不管”解，用以引导表示让步的状语从句，“no matter + 疑问词”的结构基本上可以和“疑问词 + 后缀 ever”的结构相互换。

e. g. No matter how hard you try (= However hard you try), you will never be successful.

No matter which you choose (= Whichever you choose), you will be satisfied.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

● insist on doing sth. = persist in doing sth. 均表示"坚持要求做某事"，更值得我们注意的是，当 insist 和 persist 后面跟宾语从句时，需要使用虚拟语气。我们在前面的 Lesson 40 和 Lesson 64 中着重学习了 if 条件句当中的虚拟语气，并且在 Lesson 64 中也学习了 suggest 引导的宾语从句中用(should)+动词原形的虚拟语气，这里的 insist，persist 在虚拟语气的用法上同 suggest 是一样的。这里就不另作说明。

e. g. The doctor insists that the operation be performed without any delay.

3. I had to think of a way of preventing him from following me around all morning. 我得想办法不让他整个上午都缠着我。

● prevent/stop/keep sb. from doing sth.，三者都表示"阻止某人做某事"，但用法略有不同。在主动语态中，prevent/stop sb. from doing sth. 中的介词 from 可以省略，如：Nothing could prevent me(from)going there. 但 keep sb. from doing sth. 中的介词一定不能省略，一旦省略成了 keep sb. doing sth.，则表示"让某人一直干某事"了。而在被动语态中，三个词组中的 from 都不能省，如：The residents were stopped from entering the burning building.

4. Fancy meeting you here! 想不到在这里见到你！

● 意外碰到人家，除了说 Fancy meeting you here. 表示惊奇，还有几个习惯说法：

Imagine meeting you here!

What a surprise to meet you here!

Never thought I'd see you here!

如果语气随便一点，还可以说：

What are you doing in this neck of the woods?

What brings you to this neck of the woods?

5. Would you mind my coming with you? 你介意我跟你一起去吗？

● 复习一下动名词的逻辑主语。动名词因为具有名词的特点，所以可以加物主代词或者名词的属格来作动名词的逻辑主语，表示动作是由逻辑主语发出的；如果动名词前没有逻辑主语修饰，则说明动名词所表示的动作由句子的主语发出。

I like singing.(singing 前没有逻辑主语，说明动作是句子的主语 I 发出的)

I like your singing.(singing 前有物主代词 your，说明动作是 you 发出的)

语法精析

一、复习 be able to，can(参见 Lesson 19)

二、复习动名词(参见 Lesson 20)

三、复习不定代词(参见 Lesson 8)

四、复习让步条件句(参见 Lesson 65，67)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 69 But not murder!

本课重点和难点

- 被动结构的活用
- 情态动词+have+过去分词结构

本课词汇

murder [ˈməːdə] *n.* / *vt.* 谋杀，凶杀

instruct [inˈstrʌkt] *v.* 1. 教，教育，指导 2. 指示，指令

【用法】作"指示，命令"讲时，后接 sb. + to do；作"通知，告知"讲时，后接 sb. + that 从句。作"教授，教导"讲时，后可接 sb. + in。

【辨析】teach 为一般用词，指把知识或技能传给别人；instruct 正式用词，与 teach 同义，但有系统地传授一门知识或指导某人做事之意。

acquire [əˈkwaiə] *vt.* 取得，获得，学到

【用法】acquire 获得，得到：指经过不懈努力才获得某种精神上的东西，如智力、才能等，而且一经获得，就成为永久之物。

confidence [ˈkɔnfidəns] *n.* 1. 信任 2. 信心，自信 3. 秘密，机密

【词组】in confidence 秘密地；be in sb.'s confidence 受某人信任；break sb.'s confidence 辜负某人的信任；have confidence in sb. 信任某人

【用法】confidence 信任，信赖：指根据自己的观察，有充分的理由和证据承认某种东西是正确的。

examiner [igˈzæminə] *n.* 检查者，主考人

suppose [səˈpəuz] *v.* 1. 猜想，料想 2. 假定，认为

tap [tæp] *v.* 轻敲

react [riˈækt] *vi.* 1. 起反应，起作用 2. 回应，起反作用，反对

【词组】react to sb./sth. 对……起作用；react against sb./sth. 反对，反抗……；react with sth. 与……起作用；react on sth. 对某物有影响，使某物产生变化

brake [breik] *n.* 刹车，闸 *v.* 减速或停车

pedal [ˈpedl] *n.* 踏板

mournful [ˈmɔːnful] *adj.* 悲哀的，哀痛的

课文详解

1. I was being tested for a driving licence for the third time. 这是我第三次接受驾驶执照的考试了。

● 在西方国家，driving licence 除了表明一个人具有开车的技能外，它还是公民们最重要的身份证明。因为驾驶执照上有持证者的照片。甚至连身高、体重、发色、眼睛颜色和地址这样的信息，驾照上都会所有记载。去银行取钱，可能会要求看你的驾驶执照；买酒买烟，有时会查看你执照上的年龄，另外遇到租车和别的需要证明身份的场合，驾驶执照也能派上

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

用处。

而对于那些年龄未满 16 岁，没有 driving licence 的青少年来说，他们要么用自己的 student ID，或者用 social security number 来证明自己的身份。

2. After having been instructed to drive out of town, I began to acquire confidence.

● After having been instructed…，有关分词的用法是贯穿整个第 3 单元的语法重点，虽然早在 Lesson 20，30，49，50 中出现过分词的用法，教师们也在前面的课文中做过讲解，但仍可以在文中出现分词时做适当的复习。甚至可以在学生对分词熟练掌握的情况下，教师可以引入独立主格的概念。

★ 四级词汇辨析：get，obtain，gain，acquire

这些动词均含有“获得，得到”之意。

1）get：普通用词，使用广泛，可指以任何方式得到某物，也不一定要经过努力。

e. g. I got this job two years ago, and I am thinking of changing for a new one.

2）obtain：意思跟 get 基本相同，只不过语体上更为正式一些。

e. g. I successfully obtained my MA degree in 2003.

3）gain：侧重指经过努力或有意识行动而取得某种成就，或者就像一句英语谚语里常说的那样 No pains, no gains.

4）acquire：主要强调通过不断的、日积月累地积累，而渐渐地获得的东西，尤其指“学得，获得（一些知识）”。

e. g. Children acquire a foreign language much faster than adults.

● 当一个人对某人/事有信心时，可以说 have confidence in…，也可以用相应的形容词 be confident of…而如果一个人总是 have confidence in himself/herself，那这个人一定是一个 self-confident 的人。

● self-表示“自我的”经常和其他的形容词或名词一起，构成一个合成词，如：self-abandoned，self-assured，self-aware，self-content，self-critical 等。

3. As soon as I tap on the window, you must stop within five feet. 我一敲车窗，你必须把车停在 5 英尺之内。

● within 的反义词并不是 without，而是 beyond。后面可以跟表示时间的名词，如：The pigeon covered the distance within five minutes. 也可以跟表示距离的名词，如：I can't see things beyond 2 meters in thick fog. 当然也可以跟抽象名词，如：I'm sorry I can't help you out, because this is beyond my ability.

4. It took me a long time to react. 我过了好一会儿才作出反应。

● it takes sb. some time to do sth. 这是大家非常熟悉的结构，我们也可以稍微作一些变化，I took a long time to react. 至于 take，cost，spend 表示“花费”有什么区别，可以参见 Lesson 3。

语法精析

一、被动结构的活用

（一）非谓语结构中的被动形式

1. 动名词的被动形式。

考题： After ________ to drive out of town, I began to acquire confidence. 我按照要求将车开出城后，开始有了信心。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

A. having been instructed (√)　　B. being instructed (√)

C. instructing(×)

答案解析：A 和 B。介词 after 后的动名词一般式与完成式可互换使用。动名词一般被动形式：being＋*v.*-ed；动名词完成被动形式：having been＋*v.*-ed。

2. 不定式的被动形式。

考题 1 He never expected the bicycle ________，他从未指望再找到丢失的自行车。

A. to be found　　B. finding　　C. being found　　D. to have been found

答案：A

His elder brother is supposed ________ in action during the WW Ⅱ. 大家都以为他哥哥在二战中阵亡了。

A. to be killed　　B. being killed

C. to have been killed　　D. having been killed

答案解析：C。不定式完成被动形式"to have been＋*v.*-ed"表示不定式动作发生在谓语动词动作之前，不定式一般被动形式"to be＋*v.*-ed"表示不定式动作发生在谓语动词动作之后或同时。expect，suppose 等词后要求接不定式。

考题 2 The important thing ________ is that some books are interesting to read，but boring to learn. 有一点很重要，值得注意：有些书读起来很有趣，但学起来令人厌烦。

A. to note　　B. being noted　　C. noted　　D. to be noted

答案解析：D。若不定式逻辑主语(the important thing)是不定式动作(note)的承受者，不定式需用被动形式。但有些情况下，不定式主动形式可表示被动意义，如：

① Some books are interesting to read.（在"形容词＋不定式"结构中，若句子主语是不定式的动作承受者，用不定式主动形式表示被动意义。）

② I will show you the right bus to take. 我会把正确的公交路线指给你看。（"the right bus"是不定式动作"to take"的承受者，由于句中存在可作为不定式逻辑施动者的名词或代词"you"，用主动形式表示被动意义。）

3. 现在分词的被动形式。

考题 1 When he came to，he found himself ________ by a pretty nurse. 他苏醒过来时，发现一位漂亮的护士正照料着自己。

A. being attended to　　B. attended to　　C. to be attended to

答案解析：A。现在分词一般被动形式"being＋*v.*-ed"表示分词动作(being attended to)与谓语动词动作 (found)同时发生，并与逻辑主语(himself)形成动宾关系。

考题 2 The airport ________ because of heavy fog，we decided to take the train. 机场因大雾被关闭，我们决定乘坐火车。

A. were closed　　B. had been closed

C. having closed　　D. having been closed

答案解析：D。现在分词完成被动形式"having been＋*v.*-ed"表示分词动作(close)发生在谓语动词动作(decided to)之前，并与逻辑主语(the airport)构成动宾关系。

4. 过去分词。

过去分词"*v.*-ed"表示"被动、完成"意义。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(二)情态动词的被动形式

例句：

Though the sound could be heard clearly, it took me a long time to react. 虽然声音听得清清楚楚，可我很长时间才反应过来。(情态动词＋be＋过去分词)

I can't find my bag. It must have been stolen. 我找不到我的包，一定是被偷了。("must have been 过去分词"推测过去某时被做的事)

(三)被动结构在多种时态中的应用

一般现在时的被动形式：am/is/are＋*v.*-ed

现在进行时的被动形式：am/is/are＋being＋*v.*-ed

过去进行时的被动形式：was/ were ＋being＋*v.*-ed

现在完成时的被动形式：has/have been＋*v.*-ed

过去完成时的被动形式：had＋been＋*v.*-ed

一般将来时的被动形式：will/shall be＋*v.*-ed

过去将来时的被动形式：would be＋*v.*-ed

将来完成时的被动形式：will/would have been＋*v.*-ed

例句：

I was being tested for a driving license for the third time. 我在进行第三次驾照考试。

I had been asked to drive in heavy traffic. 刚才他们让我开过交通拥挤的马路。

二、情态动词＋have＋过去分词结构

(一)can have＋过去分词，could have 过去分词的区别

1. "can＋have＋过去分词"表示从现在的时间看来，推测过去某种行为可能会发生，多用于否定或疑问句，推测的语气较强。

His interference can not have done much harm. 他的干涉不会造成巨大危害。

2. "could＋have＋过去分词"表示从过去的时间看来，推测过去某种行为可能发生了或表示过去有可能完成却未完成的动作。

Jack could have opened the door. He was the only one in the classroom last night. 门可能是杰克打开的，昨晚只有他在教室里。

(二)may＋have＋过去分词，might＋have＋过去分词的区别

两者都表示对过去事物的猜想或推测，有时可换用，但两者有区别：前者可能性稍强；后者稍弱，口气也较婉转。

前者表示说话者对真相尚未明确；后者表示已经知道结果或已明真相。前者一般不用于疑问句，在疑问句中用 can 代替。

两者都可用于主要动词为现在时的间接引语中，但主要动词为过去时，只用后者。

当"might＋have＋过去分词"结构中主语为第二人称时，常表示对听话人不满的语气，但语气上较为委婉。

1. 该结构中的 might 与 may 的意义基本相同，只是它表示的可能性比 may 表示的可能性更小些。

He is late. He might have had an accident. 他迟到了。或许他出了意外。

You may have noticed some birds sitting on the backs of sheep.

你想必已注意到有些鸟停落在羊背上。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. "might+have+过去分词"常用于虚拟语气，表示对过去本来可能做而实际上没能做某事的一种责备或遗憾。

You might have come earlier. 你本可以来的更早些(但却没有)。

You might not have left the key at home. 你本可不把钥匙留在家里的。

3. "may+have+过去分词"通常只用于肯定句或否定句，一般不用于疑问句。在疑问句中通常用 can 表示。

—Can they have found the radio? 他们可能找到收音机了吗?

—Yes, they may have. 是的，他们可能找到了。

4. 句中主要动词如果是现在时，间接引语中用句型 may+have+过去分词或 might+have+过去分词均可。但如主要动词是过去时，则间接引语中只能用句型 might+have+过去分词。

We thought you might have had an accident or forgotten the day or something.

我们当时以为你也许出了事，或忘了日期什么的。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 70 Red for danger

本课重点和难点

- 复习被动结构
- 形容词词组作状语从句

本课词汇

bullfight ['bulfait] *n.* 斗牛

drunk [drʌŋk] *adj.* (酒)醉的

【用法】drunk 醉的：指由于饮酒过量，神志不清，通常用作表语，表示具体行为。用于比喻表示对某物过分爱好。

wander ['wɔndə] *v.* 1. 徘徊，漫步 2. 迷路，过失，离开正道，离题

ring [riŋ] *n.* 斗牛场

unaware [ˌʌnə'weə] *adj.* 不知道的，未觉察到的

bull [bul] *n.* 公牛

matador ['mætədɔː] *n.* 斗牛士

remark [ri'mɑːk] *n.* 1. 评论，意见 2. 注意 *vt.* 1. 说，评论 2. 注意 *vi.* 评论，谈论

【词组】remark on 评论

【辨析】remark, comment, commentate, animadvert 上述四个词均含有"加以评论或作出判断"的意思。remark 表示谈论某事，从而引起他人的注意，如：He remarked it was getting dark. 他说天要黑了。comment 强调为解释或提出某个观点作评论，如：The president refused to comment on the election results. 总统拒绝评论选举结果。commentate 有时用来代替 comment，表示纯系解说性的评论，如：John commentates on football matches for television. 约翰为电视解说足球比赛。

apparently [ə'pærəntli] *adv.* 明显地，显而易见地

criticism ['kritisizəm] *n.* 批评，评论

charge [tʃɑːdʒ] *vi.* 向前冲，袭击

clumsily ['klʌmzili] *adv.* 笨拙地

bow[1] [bəu] *n.* 弓，弓状物

bow[2] [bau] *vi.* /*n.* 鞠躬

【词组】bow down to 向……卑躬屈膝；bow out 鞠躬后退席，退休；make one's bow(演员等)初次在公众前露面；take a bow 谢幕，答谢

safety ['seifti] *n.* 安全

【词组】safety measures 安全措施；be in safety 安全

sympathetically [simpə'θetikəli] *adv.* 同情地

课文详解

1. The crowd began to shout, but the drunk was unaware of the danger. 人们开始大叫起来，但醉汉却没有意识到危险。

★ 四级词汇辨析：aware, conscious

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

这两个形容词均含有"意识到"的意思，而且两个词用法基本相同，后面都可以接 of 引起的短语或 that 从句。但它们的区别在于：

1)aware：一般指通过感官或别人提供的情况对外界事物有所了解。

e. g. I was not aware of her presence until she spoke to me.

2)conscious：更加侧重指内心的感觉，强调思想上意识到或感觉到。

e. g. He is conscious of his own mistake.

2. ...it suddenly caught sight of the drunk who was shouting rude remarks... 突然它看见了醉汉，只见他正大声地说着粗话

● catch sight of...表示"看见某人"，其反义词为 lose sight of...。有关 sight 一词的用法在 Lesson 30 中曾讲过。

● shout rude remarks，说一些粗话。英文跟中文一样，把"讲粗口"也称为"说脏话"，即 say dirty words。而由于英语里绝大多数龌龊的单词都是由四个字母组成的，所以 say four-letter words 也表示"说脏话"了。

3. Apparently sensitive to the criticism, the bull forgot all about the matador and charged at the drunk. 对挑衅显然非常敏感的公牛完全撇开斗牛士，直奔醉汉而来。

★ 四级词汇辨析：sensitive, sensible, sentimental, sensational

这四个单词在词义上没有任何的联系，之所以把它们放在一起辨析，是因为它们的拼写十分相近。

1)sensitive：表示"敏感的"，一般和介词 to 相搭配，如：Film is very sensitive to light.

2)sensible：则表示"有感觉的，有判断力的，明智的"，如：The patient lies on the sickbed, speechless but still sensible.

3)sentimental：是用来形容像林妹妹那样"多愁善感的"女孩子的；

4)sensational：尤其指用夸张的，或者过分渲染的细节来有意引起他人强烈的好奇或兴趣，比如经常会在一些小报上看到一些 sensational news(耸人听闻的新闻)。

4. ...he clumsily stepped aside to let it pass. 他踉跄地往旁边一闪，牛扑了个空。

★ 四级词汇辨析：clumsy, stupid, foolish, dull

这些单词都有"傻，笨"的意思，但各有侧重。

1)clumsy：主要指动作不灵活、不优雅，笨手笨脚的，或者说话笨嘴笨舌的，如：You clumsy oaf. That's the second glass you've broken today!

2)stupid 和 foolish：并不是指智力低下，这两个词的语气并不强烈，所表达的贬义的程度也最轻，泛指"缺乏智慧的，不明智的"，如：It was foolish of me to believe what he said.

3)dull：才是用来指感觉或智力上的"迟钝的，愚笨的"。

5. The crowd broke into cheers and the drunk bowed. 观众欢呼起来，醉汉向人们鞠躬致谢。

● 这里的 break into...可以和 burst out doing sth. 进行互换，表示"某种情感(或其他事物)由于不可抑制而突然爆发"，如：break into cheers = burst out cheering, break into laughter = burst out laughing, break into tears = burst out crying 等。这一用法在后面 Lesson 89 中会再次进行讲解。

6. ...for it looked on sympathetically... 因为它一直同情地看着醉汉

● look on 表示"袖手旁观"，looker-on 表示"旁观者"，这个名词的复数形式不是在词尾加 s，而是在核心词 looker 后加复数，构成 lookers-on。类似的名词复数形式还有很多，如：passers-by, editors-in-chief 等。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

语法精析

一、复习被动结构(参见 Lesson 69)

二、形容词词组作状语从句

某些位于句首或句尾的形容词词组修饰句子的主语,在句法功能上相当于状语分句。

Apparently sensitive to criticism, the bull forgot all about the matador and charged at the drunk. 那头公牛显然对批评十分敏感,全然不顾斗牛士,而向醉汉冲去。

Quite sure of himself, the matador gracefully stepped aside as the bull got close to him. 那斗牛士显得十分胸有成竹,当公牛逼近时,优雅地跨到了一边。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 71 A famous clock

本课重点和难点

● 同位语成分

本课词汇

parliament ['pɑːləmənt] *n.* 国会，议会

【用法】英国国会：Parliament（大写，无冠词）。the House of Lords 上议院；the House of Commons 下议院。美国国会：Congress。the Senate 参议院；the House of Representatives 众议院。the House of Councilors 参议院

erect [i'rekt] *vt.* 建立，树立，使竖立 *adj.* 直立的，垂直的

accurate ['ækjurit] *adj.* 精确的，准确的

【辨析】correct"正确"，指按照一定的标准或规则，没有错误，语气最弱。He gave correct answers to the questions. 他对这些问题给出了正确的答案。accurate"准确，精确"，指与某一标准或客观事实相符合，没有差错，而且还表示细心而谨慎地达到这一要求。He is accurate in his observation. 他观察准确。exact"精确，确切"，是强调完全符合标准、客观事实，丝毫没有差错，指数量或质量上高度准确，语气最强。an exact typist 准确率高的打字员，an exact estimate 准确的估计，an exact description 精确的描述。

official [ə'fiʃəl] *n.* 官员，行政人员 *adj.* 官方的，正式的，公务的

【词组】official duties 公职；official visit 官方访问；official routine 例行公事

Greenwich ['griːnwidʒ] *n.* 格林尼治

observatory [əb'zəːvətəri] *n.* 天文台，气象台

check [tʃek] *vt.* 1. 检查，核对 2. 制止，控制 3. 托运，寄存 *n.* 1. 检查，核对 2. 支票，账单

【词组】check in 办理登记手续；check out 结账后离去；check up/up on 核对，检核

microphone ['maikrəfəun] *n.* 麦克风，传声筒

tower ['tauə] *n.* 塔 *vi.* 1. 高耸，屹立 2. 高出，超出

【词组】tower above/over 这比……高，远远高出

rarely ['rɛəli] *adv.* 很少地，罕有地

课文详解

1. Big Ben takes its name from Sir Benjamin Hall who was responsible for the making of the clock when the new Houses of Parliament were being built. 大本钟得名于本杰明·霍尔爵士，因为当建造新的国会大厦时，他负责建造大钟。

● name 在 take one's name from...中为"得名于……"之意，如：Catterick is thought to

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

take its name from the Latin Catarata meaning waterfall. name 还有"名誉,名声"的意思,如:make/win a name for oneself(出名,成名),而当一个人因为做了某件坏事而被众人所指责时,我们则说 His name is mud.(他名誉扫地。)

此外,name 还可以作动词来使用,name...after...拿……来命名……,如:We name the baby after his grandpa.

● 今天 sir 用来表示对男士的尊敬的称呼,在香港的警匪片中,也经常能看到下属对上司说 Yes,sir.,但在中世纪 sir 是对爵士的一种尊称。作为爵士头衔,Sir 绝不可只用于姓前,必须是"Sir+授予名+姓"或者"Sir+授予名"。也就是说,Sir James Manson 也可称作 Sir James,但绝不能称 Sir Manson。爵士的 title(头衔)不能继承,除 title 外爵士也没有任何特权。他们的儿子也和平民的姓一样用 Mr. 去称。

● the Houses of Parliament:英国的国会大厦,英国的 Parliament(议会)由 Queen(女王),the House of Lords(上议院)和 the House of Commons(下议院)三部分组成,它是最高权力机关和最高的立法机关,其地位在行政和司法机关之上。

英国的 the House of Lords 的成员不是选举产生的,而是由王室成员、新封终身贵族、少量世袭贵族、司法贵族及教会领袖组成,不经选举产生。因此,又被称之为"贵族院"。而 the House of Commons 则是由 general election(普选)产生,通常女王会任命在 the House of Commons 中获多数席位的政党领袖出任 Prime Minister (首相),并且和该政党的其他主要成员一起组成 Cabinet(内阁)。

而在 2006 年 7 月 4 日这一天,拥有 600 多年历史的英国上议院第一次用选举的方式产生了一位新议长,从而成为英国宪政史上一个具有里程碑意义的日子。

2. It is not only of immense size, but is extremely accurate as well. 此钟不仅外形巨大,而且走时也非常准确。

★ 四级词汇辨析:correct, accurate, exact, precise

这些形容词均含有"准确的,正确的"之意。

1)correct:是最常用的词,用一定标准或规则来衡量,正确、没有错误,其语气较弱,如:You will lose one mark if you fail to get the correct answer.

2)accurate:语气比 correct 要强,指某人/事不仅不出错,而且与事实无出入,强调其准确性,如:We hope to become more accurate in predicting earthquakes.

3)exact:其语气比 accurate 还要强,说明某人/事在数量或质量上完全符合事实或标准,甚至在细枝末节上也丝毫不差,如:Mathematics is an exact science.

4)precise:应该翻译为"精确的,精密的",表示的精密程度是这四个词当中最高的,如:Scientists make use of precise instruments when making experiments.

3. Officials from Greenwich Observatory have the clock checked twice a day. 格林尼治天文台的官员们每天两次派人矫正此钟。

● have sth. done 的结构在 Lesson 18 和 Lesson 66 课中,都作了十分详尽的说明。

● 著名的 Greenwich Observatory 位于英国首都伦敦的 Greenwich,1884 年经过这个天文台的 meridian(子午线)被确定为全球的时间和经度计量的标准参考子午线,也称为 Prime Meridian(本初子午线),或者 International Meridian(国际子午线),即 zero degrees longitude(零度经线)。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

语法精析

同位语成分

(一)用名词、代词或数词作同位语

在名词后有时跟另一名词,说明它指的是谁,如:This is my friend Harry. 这是我的朋友哈利。这个名词可称为同位语(appositive)。

1. 同位语有限制性和非限制性两种,限制性同位语和前面的词关系比较紧密。和前面的词紧密相连,中间不能停顿。例如:

The book was written by the Russian novelist Turgenev.

这本书是俄国小说家屠格涅夫写的。

We teachers should be responsible for it. 我们老师应对此负责。

非限制同位语与前面的词关系比较松散,之间常有一逗号把它们分开(表示略有停顿),多数的同位语都属于后一类。例如:

This is Mr. Johnson, director of the health centre.

这是约翰逊先生,(他是)医疗中心的主任。

They are going to visit Tsingtao, a summer resort in northern China.

他们准备访问中国北方的避暑胜地青岛。

2. 同位语还可以是代词或数词。

We both come from Hunan. 我们两人都是湖南人。

You three take these seats. 你们三个人坐这里。

(二)用形容词或词组作同位语

1. 有时可用形容词作同位语,作用接近定语,但放在同位名词的后面,且有逗号把它们分开。

The slopes, bare six years ago, are now covered with three million fruit trees. 这些山坡,六年前还光秃秃的,现在却种上了三百万棵果树。

2. 有时同位语可以提到句子前部。

Selfless and anxious to help others, he led a simple life and worked with application.

他毫无私心,乐于助人,过着简朴的生活,勤奋工作。

3. 有些同位语结构更复杂一些,带有副词等。

Many people, including the department head, are against the idea.

许多人,包括系主任,都反对这个意见。

(三)同位语从句

1. 有很多名词后可以跟 that 引起的从句,说明其内容,可以称作名词的同位语从句。

I received a message that she would be late. 我得到的信息说她可能晚到。

考题: Doris'success lies in the fact ________ she is cooperative and eager to learn from others.

A. which B. that C. when D. why

答案解析: B。fact 后面通常由 that 引导同位语从句,that 后接完整的陈述句说明 fact 和具体内容。题意为:她的成功决定于她非常愿意与别人合作并且热切地向别人学习。

2. 有时同位语从句可以和同位的名词分开:

The rumour spread that a new school would be built here. 谣传这里要盖一所新学校。

3. 在少数情况下也可用连接副词(代词)引起的从句作同位语:

He had no idea why she left. 他不知道她为什么离开。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 72 A car called Bluebird

本课重点和难点

- 复习完成进行时
- 复习同位语成分
- 连接性副词

本课词汇

racing [ˈreisiŋ] *n.* 赛马(车)竞赛

per [pəː] *prep.* 每,每一

【词组】per post 经(由)邮局,邮寄;as per 按照;per annum 每年

Utah [ˈjuːtɑː] *n.*(美国州名)犹他

horsepower [ˈhɔːs ˈpauə] *n.* 马力

burst [bəːst] *n.* 突然爆发 *v.* 爆炸,胀裂,突然……起来

【词组】burst forth 突然出现,猝发;burst into 突然闯入;burst into tears 突然大哭;burst into laughter 突然大笑;burst out 突然冒出,突然开始

average [ˈævəridʒ] *n.* 平均数,平均 *adj.* 1. 平均的 2. 通常的,一般的 *v.* 平均,平分

【词组】on/the/an average 平均

【用法】average 平均,平均的:指两个以上的数相加的和除去相加的数的个数所得的商。用于比喻指寻常、普通的意思。

footstep [ˈfutstep] *n.* 足迹,脚步

follow sb's footsteps 步某人的后尘

课文详解

1. The great racing driver, Sir Malcolm Campbell, was the first man to drive at over 300 miles per hour. 杰出的赛车选手马尔科姆·坎贝尔爵士是第一个以每小时超过300英里的速度驾车的人。

★ 四级词汇辨析:game, match, racing, contest

这四个词都有"比赛"的意思,但在表示具体的某项赛事时,各有侧重。

1)game:既指户外的体力运动,也指智力方面的运动,如游戏、下棋等:Let's play a game of chess. 而 game 用作复数时则指运动会,如:the Olympic/Asian Games。

2)match:多用于英式英语,一般用来指球赛。

e. g. The American team won the football match.

3)racing 和 race:基本上可以互换,都是用来指赛跑、赛车等比速度的比赛。

e. g. With Michael Schumacher bidding adieu to F1 racing, the obvious question pops up. Who is going to be the next greatest F1 driver of all times?

4)contest:多指在演讲、音乐、选美等方面所进行的比赛,这种比赛的结果往往由评委会所有的委员来决定。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

e. g. Every year the Miss World Beauty Contest draws the attention of millions of people.

● drive at over 300 miles per hour，这里的介词也值得注意。我们可以把 at 看作是 at the speed of 的简化了的形式。

2. It was over 300 feet in length... 它的车身长 30 英尺……

● 这句话等于 It was 300 feet long. 可见所有的度量的表示都可以用“in＋名词”来替换相对应的形容词形式：

e. g. The river is 10 meters *deep*. ＝The river is 10 meters *in depth*.

The road is 5 meters *wide*. ＝The road is 5 meters *in width*.（后一种表达更加书面化一些）

3. ...he had great difficulty in controlling the car because a tyre burst during the first run. 他很难把汽车控制住，因为在开始的行程中爆了一只轮胎。

● 在 have difficulty in doing sth. 的结构中，in 通常可以省略。

e. g. Gary has grown a beard and I had difficulty (in) recognizing him.

● 在各类考试中，burst 最常考查到的用法当属 burst out doing sth. ＝break into...，表示“某种情感（或其他事物）由于不可抑制而突然爆发”，详见 Lesson 71“课文详解”。

4. After his attempt, Campbell was disappointed to learn that... 比赛结束后，坎贝尔非常失望地得知……

★ 四级词汇辨析：try, attempt, endeavour

这些动词均含有“尝试，努力”之意。

1) try：是最普通的用词，后跟不定式表示努力或争取，而后跟动名词表示尝试。

e. g. We try to work the problem out between ourselves.

2) attempt：可以和 try 互换，只不过语体较为正式，但常隐含着不一定有预期的结果。

e. g. I attempted to read the entire novel in one sitting.

3) endeavour：语气更加正式，指尽最大努力、认真地克服困难去做某事。

e. g. Everyone endeavours to improve the quality of life by working hard.

● 这里的 learn 表示“得知，获悉”，其用法在 Lesson 14 中已作过讲解。

5. Following in his father's footsteps many years later, Sir Malcolm's son, Donald, also set a world record. 很多年之后，马尔科姆爵士的儿子唐纳德踏着父亲的足迹，也创造了一项世界纪录。

● follow in one's footsteps 从字面上理解为“跟随某人的步子”，引申一下即为“步某人的后尘”。如果一个人总喜欢 follow the example of others（效仿他人），总是 follow the popular cry（随大流），久而久之将会失去自己的主见。

语法精析

一、复习完成进行时（参见 Lesson 52）

二、复习同位语成分（参见 Lesson 71）

三、连接性副词

连接副词的意思和词形都和疑问副词一样，但在句中引起一个从句或不定式，例如：

1. how。例如：This is how we parted. 我们就是这样分手的。（引起表语从句）
2. where。例如：He knows where they live. 他知道他们住哪里。（引起宾语从句）

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

3. when。例如：When she'll be back depends much on the weather. 她什么时候回来在很大程度上要看天气。(引起主语从句)

4. why。

考题： ________ she couldn't understand was ________ fewer and fewer students showed interest in her lessons.

A. What; why　　B. That; what　　C. What; becuase　　D. Why; that

答案解析： A。第一个下画线处的引导词引导主语从句并在该主语从句中充当宾语，特指她所不理解的事情，应填入关系代词型的引导词 what；第二个下画线处表示"为什么……"(指原因、理由，由 because 引导对应的名词性从句)，应填入引导词 why。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 73 The record-holder

本课重点和难点

- 主谓一致(Ⅰ)
- 插入语

本课词汇

record-holder *n.* 记录,纪录保持者

truant ['tru:ənt] *n.* 逃学者,旷课者

play truant 逃学

unimaginative [ˌʌni'mædʒinətiv] *adj.* 缺乏想象力的

【辨析】shame 耻辱,羞辱:与 disgrace 同义,但多指某人行为不好而在他人眼中认为可耻。反义词:honour(荣誉),respect(尊重)。

hitchhike ['hitʃ'haik] *vi.* 搭便车

meantime ['mi:ntaim] *n.* 其时,期间 *adv.* 当时,同时

【词组】in the meantime 届时,同时,在此期间

lorry ['lɔri] *n.* 运货卡车

border ['bɔ:də] *n.* 边,边界,边境 *vt.* (与……)接境,毗邻;作为……的边界 *vi.* (与……)接壤(on/upon with),接界,近于

【词组】on the border of 临近,即将

【用法】border 边,边缘:指物体沿边线一带的空间。

evade [i'veid] *vt.* 逃避,躲避

课文详解

1. Children who play truant from school are unimaginative. 逃学的孩子们都缺乏想象力。

● 课文最后一行"...who dream of evading school"中的 evade school 可以看作是 play truant(逃学)的同义词,但是这两种表达都很少在口语中使用。在口语中,我们习惯说 skip class,或者 play hooky。

★ 四级词汇辨析:imaginative,imaginary, imaginable

这三个单词虽然都是从 imagine 派生出来的,而且也都是形容词,但它们的词义相差很远。

1)imaginative:是用来形容一个人充满想象力的(full of imagination),如:an imaginative poet(富有想象力的诗人);

2)imaginary:说明这个东西或人压根就不存在,只存在于想象中(only exist in imagination),如:an imaginary enemy(假想敌);

3)imaginable:表示"能够想象的出的",往往作后置定语,如:This is the worst result imaginable.

2. They have all been put to shame by a boy who, while playing truant, traveled 1,600 miles. 有一个小男孩,他在逃学期间旅行了 1600 英里,这使上述所有逃学的孩子们相形见绌了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

● 这句话,连同课文中接下来的两句话,都出现了一个共同的语法现象,即插入语。

3. The next car the boy stopped did not take him into the centre of Paris as he hoped it would, but to Perpignan on the French-Spanish border. 男孩截住的下一辆车,没有像他希望的那样把他带到巴黎市中心,而是把他带到了法国和西班牙边界上的佩皮尼昂。

● 这个句子包含了三个从句。句子的主干是 The next car did not take him into the centre of Paris。the boy stopped 是一个省略了 that/which 的定语从句;后面的 as he hoped it would 是一个 as 引导的方式状语从句;而 it would 是一个省略了 that 的宾语从句,作动词 hoped 的宾语。

4. There he was picked up by a policeman...他在那儿被一个警察抓住了……

● pick up 在这里的意思是 find...by accident,跟 Lesson 34 中的用法一样。此外,pick up 还有其他的含义。

1)拣起,拾起 pick up the pen

2)顺路接某人 pick you up at your office

3)学习,习得 pick up English

5. He has surely set up a record for the thousands of children who dream of evading school. 他无疑为成千上万想逃学的孩子们创造了一项纪录。

● surely 可以替换为 certainly, undoubtedly, definitely, absolutely 之类的语气百分之百肯定的副词。当然,如果语气没有这么肯定,就得用上 possibly, probably, likely, presumably 之类的单词了。

● thousands of...,Lesson 61 中的短语。

● dream of doing sth.,Lesson 22 中的短语。

语法精析

一、主谓一致(Ⅰ)

(一)如果主语表示一个抽象概念,一般都用单数谓语

例如:

Growing flowers is no easy job. 养花不容易。

That we have made amazing achievements is an undeniable fact.

我们取得了惊人的成就是不容否认的事实。

1. 当主语中包含 and 时,若指的是一个东西,可用单数谓语,若指两样东西,则需用复数谓语,例如:

The iron and steel industry plays an important part in our national economy.

钢铁工业在国民经济中起重要作用。

2. 如果主语是单数,尽管后面跟有 with, together with, as well as, but, except 等词引起的短语,谓语仍用单数形式,因为这类短语多用作修饰语,例如:

An iron and steel works, with several satellite factories, is being built in the city. 这座城市正在修建一座钢铁厂和几家卫星工厂。

An expert, together with some assistants, was sent there to help in the work. 一位专家和几个助手,被派到那里帮助工作。

(二)某些结构中的谓语

1. 在带 either...or 和 neither...nor 的结构中,谓语通常和最邻近的主语一致:

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Either Tim or his brothers have to shovel the snow.
不是蒂姆就是他兄弟们得去铲雪。
Either the shirts or the sweater is a good buy.
要么是衬衫,要么是那件毛衣是便宜货。
Neither John nor the two sisters know the answer. 约翰和两姐妹都不知道答案。
2. 由 there 或 here 引起的句子中谓语通常也和最邻近的主语一致:
There was a bed and a big wardrobe. 有一张床和一个大衣柜。
There were two apple trees and a pear tree. 有两棵苹果树和一棵梨树。
Here is a pencil-box and a few pencils for you. 给你一个铅笔盒和几支铅笔。
Here are my replies to your questions. 这是我对你问题的回答。

(三)有时谓语可和几个主语一致

例如:
There were only one or two chaps there. 那儿只有一两个人。
In addition to them, there were Dalby and Mrs. Dalby.
除了他们,还有戴尔比和戴尔比夫人。
这种受邻近词影响的情况在现代英语中越来越多了:
In the trunk was found a pen, a few suits of clothes and two books.
在大箱子里发现一支笔、几套衣服和两本书。
No one except his own supporters agree with him.
除了他的支持者没有人同意他的意见。
One in ten are expected to take part in the contests.
预计十个人中就有一个参加比赛。
有时主语似乎是单数,其实是复数,因为有的词被省略了:
White and brown sugar are both acceptable for this recipe. 做这种点心白糖红糖都可以。

二、插入语

插入语多半用逗号与句子隔开,可以是一个词、一个短语或一个句子。英语长句的一大特点就是喜欢用插入语,譬如,用插入语交代某句话是谁说的,说话者是什么身份;或是用插入语来修饰、解释、补充前面的内容等。插入语使作者能更灵活地表达自己的意思,但是插入语过长或是过多容易使读者找不到阅读的重点。以下面这个句子为例:

Stokoe—now devoting his time to writing and editing books and journals and to producing video materials on ASL and the deaf culture—is having lunch at a café near the Gallaudet campus and explaining how he started a revolution.

这个句子看起来比较复杂,但实际上我们可以先不管破折号中间的插入语,于是这个句子可以简化成一个 and 引导的并列句"Stokoe is having lunch at a cafe near the Gallaudet campus and explaining how he started a revolution."

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 74 Out of the limelight

本课重点和难点

- 主谓一致(Ⅱ)
- 复习现在进行时和一般现在时
- 非限定性定语从句

本课词汇

limelight ['laimlait] *n.* 舞台灯光

precaution [pri'kɔːʃən] *n.* 预防措施，警惕

fan [fæn] *n.* 狂热者

shady ['ʃeidi] *adj.* 阴凉的，成荫的

sheriff ['ʃerif] *n.* 司法长官，郡长

notice ['nəutis] *n.* 布告

【词组】at (on) short notice 在短时间之内；立刻；beneath a person's notice 被(某人)认为不值得注意，不值一顾；bring... to a person's notice 使(某人)看见，使(某人)注意到；take notice that 把……列入考虑；对……注意

【用法】(notice＋名(人)＋do/doing)注意到(某人)做……；(notice＋that.../wh-)注意到……，留意(某事)；(notice＋副) Sorry, I wasn't noticing. 对不起，我没有注意。notice board 布告栏，告示板

sneer [sniə] *vi.* 冷笑，嘲笑，讥笑

课文详解

1. Dressed in dark glasses and old clothes, they had taken special precautions so that no one should recognize them. 他们戴着墨镜，穿着旧衣裳，特别小心以防别人认出他们。

● dressed in...引导的是一个过去分词短语；they had taken special precautions 才是这个句子真正的主干；紧接着 so that 引导的是一个表示目的的状语从句。

● take precautions

precaution = pre-＋caution。前缀 pre-意为在……之前，先于……。类似的单词有：prehistory, preface, prefix, precede, precedent, preoccupation 等。

● so that no one should recognize him 这是一个目的状语从句，一般而言，在目的状语从句中，谓语动词前一般用 might/could/should/would 等情态动词去修饰。

2. But as they soon discovered, disguises can sometimes be too perfect. 但他们很快就发觉，化装的效果有时会过分完美了。

● as 在这里引导是非限定性的定语从句，表示"正如"的含义，详见"语法详解"。

3. It couldn't be better. 是再好不过了。

● 从字面上看，这句话的意思是"没有比这更好的了"，言外之意，这里就是最好的地方。也就是说，否定句中的比较级往往表达的是最高级的概念。如：I can't care you less. 不

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

少同学以为 can't 表示否定,less 也表示否定,双重否定表示肯定的意思。于是,把这句话误认为是"我很在意你"的意思。实际上,less 仅仅是一个比较级,这里的 not... less = the least...,这句话的意思是"我最不在意的人就是你"。

4. It says "No Camping" —in case you can't read。上面写着"禁止野营"——除非你们不识字!

● in case 表示"以防万一"的意思,如:I had better write down your phone number in case I forget it. 类似的还有 in case of,两者唯一的区别就在于 in case 后面跟一个从句,而 in case of 后接名词。如:You'd better take your mobile phone with you in case of emergency.

5. Oh, is it? 噢,是吗?

● 课文中提到的这几位明星实在是伪装得太好了,以至于当他们跟别人说他们是明星时,也没人相信。这不禁让人联想到一个成语,叫做"弄巧成拙",英语里面也有一个类似的表达,"too smart by half",如:What a dumb idea;I tell you, that guy is too smart by half.

6. Out of the limelight 舞台之外

● 这些明星原本是人们关注的焦点,即 They are in the limelight. 他们也很喜欢出风头,They are fond of the limelight. 当他们厌烦了聚光灯下的生活,找到一个平静的地方,却没有被人认出来时,他们似乎有了那么一点点的失望。

语法精析

一、主谓一致(Ⅱ)

(一)who/that/which 引导的定语从句中的谓语动词形式

关系代词 who/that/which 若在定语从句中充当主语,其后谓语动词形式应与 who 所指代的先行词保持数的一致。如:

Little boys who play truant from school are unimaginative. 逃学的小男孩都缺乏想象力。

考题:The upper-class people live in exclusive areas, communicate with each other, and marry their own kind, all of which ________ them distant from the masses. 上层社会的人们居住在高档区域,仅在自己圈子里互相交流与通婚,所有这一切使他们远远脱离了普通大众。

A. keeps　　B. keep　　C. have kept

答案解析:A。"all of which"指代"The upper-class... their own kind"整个句子,表示抽象概念,故定语从句中谓语动词用单数形式。

(二)动名词/不定式短语作主语的主谓一致

考题 1 ①Learning English ________ a matter of long-term accumulation. 英语学习是一个长期积累的过程。

A. is　　B. was　　C. are　　D. were

答案解析:A。动名词作主语,谓语用单数

②________ immediately ________ the only way to save this patient. 立刻动手术是抢救病人的唯一办法。

A. Operating... is　　B. To operate... is

C. Operating... are　　D. Operating... are

答案解析:B。单个动名词词组或不定式词组作主语,谓语动词用单数。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

考题 2 To eat delicious food and to travel around the world ________ two great pleasures in my life. 吃美味佳肴与周游世界是我生活中的两大乐趣。

A. is B. are C. has been D. was

答案解析：B。两个并列的动名词或并列的不定式作主语时，谓语动词通常用复数。但若两部分表示的是同一概念或同一件事时，谓语动词用单数形式。

二、复习现在进行时和一般现在时(参见 Lesson 2)

三、非限定性定语从句

非限定性定语从句的用法归纳如下：

1. 定语从句可分为限定性定语从句和非限定性定语从句两种。限定性定语从句，顾名思义，是对先行词从本质或特征上进行限制的，一般紧跟在先行词的后面，它与先行词之间没有逗号，这类定语从句是不能去掉的，否则剩下的部分就失去意义不能成立，或者含义不清。而非限定性定语从句则不然，它只对所修饰的词作进一步的说明，去掉之后并不影响句子的整个含义。在形式上，非限定性定语从句与主句之间通常用逗号隔开。

试比较：The food which wasn't in the fridge all went off.（限定性定语从句，没有放在冰箱里的那部分食物坏了，言外之意，放在冰箱里的食物仍然是好的。）

The food, which wasn't in the fridge, all went off.（非限定性定语从句，所有的食物都坏了，因为食物没有放在冰箱里。）

2. 注意：如果定语从句修饰一个专有名词，我们一般都用非限定性定语从句。这是因为专有名词本身的意思已经很完整，不需要限定，用定语从句只是对它进行补充。

3. as 和 which 在引导非限定性定语从句时，这两个关系代词都指主句所表达的整个意思，且在定语从句中都可以作主语和宾语。但不同之处主要有两点：

1)as 引导的定语从句可置于句首，而 which 不可。

As is widely known, smoking is harmful to one' s health.

2)as 代表前面的整个主句并在从句中作主语时，从句中的谓语必须是系动词；若为行为动词，则从句中的关系代词只能用 which。

It rained hard yesterday, which prevented me from going to the park.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 75 SOS

本课重点和难点

- 主谓一致(Ⅲ)
- 复习 there 存在句型的用法
- 复习定语从句
- 复习一般过去时

本课词汇

thick [θik] *adj*. 1. 厚的，粗的 2. 稠的，浓的 *adv*. 厚厚地，浓浓地

【词组】be thick with 有茂密的；through thick and thin 同甘共苦

【辨析】thick 厚的，稠的：主要指厚度及稠度，如牛奶、粥、森林、树叶、黑暗等，一般用语，比 dense 用法略广。

signal ['signəl] *n*. 信号，暗号 *v*. 发信号，用信号通知

stamp [stæmp] *n*. 1. 邮票，印花 2. 印，图章 3. 跺脚，顿足 4. 标志，印记 *vt*. 1. 盖印，盖章 2. 跺脚，顿足

helicopter ['helikɔptə] *n*. 直升飞机

scene [si:n] *n*. 1. 景象，景色 2. (戏)场 3. 布景

survivor [sə'vaivə] *n*. 幸存者

课文详解

1. The only passengers, a young woman and her two baby daughters, were unhurt. 机上仅有的乘客，一位年轻的女士和她的两个女婴却平安无事。

● a young woman and her two baby daughters 作同位语，是对前面 only passengers 的解释和说明。

★ 四级词汇辨析：hurt，injure，harm，wound

1)hurt 普通用语，既可指肉体上的伤害，也可指精神上、感情上的伤害。

e. g. The driver hurt himself badly in the accident.

2)injure 比 hurt 正式，hurt 多指伤痛，而 injure 则指损害健康、成就、容貌等，强调功能的损失。

e. g. Malicious gossip could injure his chances of success.

3)harm 用于肉体或精神上的伤害均可，有时可指引起不安或不便。

e. g. He may not be able to help but there's no harm in asking him.

4)wound 指枪伤、刀伤等皮肉之伤，特指战场上受伤。

e. g. The bullet wounded his arm.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. Snow lay thick on the ground. 地上积着厚厚的雪。

● thick 是形容词，是用来修饰 snow 的，也就是说 thick 在这里是用来说明主语性状的，因此 thick 充当的是主语的补足语。主语补足语要么放在主语之前，后有逗号，如 Lesson 49 中的第一句话，Tired of sleeping on the floor，a yong man in Teheran saved up…；要么放在谓语动词之后，如：The actor died young. 当然，除形容词外，名词、不定式，分词等也可作主语补足语。如：He came home quite changed.

3. When it grew dark, she turned a suitcase into a bed and put the children inside it, covering them with all the clothes she could find. 天黑下来的时候，她把手提箱当作小床，把两个孩子放了进去，又把所有能够找到的衣服都盖在了孩子的身上。

● 句子结构：when…引导一个时间状语从句；she turned…and put the…，是一个并列句；covering them…是个现在分词，表示伴随状态；she could find 是一个省略了 which/that 的定语从句。

● grew dark 和下文的 it got terribly cold，均为系表结构。这在 Lesson 1 里就出现过。系动词除了在这里表示变化的系动词，如：get，turn，grow，fall，become，go；还有可表示状态保持的系动词，如：be，keep，stay，remain；以及表示感官的系动词，如：look，taste，smell，feel，sound。

4. It was not long before a helicopter arrived on the scene to rescue the survivors of the plane crash. 不久，一架直升飞机飞抵失事现场，来搭救这几个幸存者。

● It was not long before…(过去)没过多久就……

e. g. I got a new job in a toy company last month, however, it was not long before I broke the regulation and got fired.

我们可以将这个句型稍微作一下变化，就能转换为另外几个常见的句型结构：

It was long before…　过了很久才……

It will not be long before…用不了多久，就会……

It will be long before…需要很久才会……

e. g. I believe it will not be long before I catch up with you.

● on the scene＝on the spot 在场

语法精析

一、主谓一致(Ⅲ)

(一)在 of 结构中谓语动词的单复数用法(参见 Lesson 16)

(二)主语从句或短语作主语，主句谓语用单数，例如：

Children interfering in their parents' right to remarry has become a social problem. 孩子干涉家长再婚的权力已经成为一个社会问题。(主语是动名词复合结构)

What I said and did is of no concern to you. 我说的和做的都与你无关。

二、复习 there 存在句型的用法(参见 Lesson 23,24)

三、复习定语从句(参见 Lesson 28,36)

四、复习一般过去时(参见 Lesson 3)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 76 April Fools' Day

本课重点和难点

- 复习主谓一致
- 复习现在完成时与现在完成进行时

本课词汇

April Fools' Day 愚人节(每年4月1日)

bulletin ['bulitin] *n.* 1. 官方公布的新闻、公告、告示 2. 医疗机构对病人的病况简报，病情报告。

announcer [ə'naunsə] *n.* (电视、电台)播音员

macaroni [mækə'rəuni] *n.* 通心面，通心粉

leading ['li:diŋ] *adj.* 主要的，领导的

grower ['grəuə] *n.* 种植者，栽培者

splendid ['splendid] *adj.* 1. 辉煌的，壮丽的 2. 极好的

【辨析】splendid 用于人，指人有才能、成就出众；用于物，指物光辉灿烂、雄伟华丽；magnificent 指物富丽堂皇，给人留下过分华丽的印象；上述两词常用来修饰景色、服饰、宝石、建筑等。

stalk [stɔ:k] *n.* 麦秸，主茎

gather ['gæðə] *vt.* 收割

【词组】gather around 聚集在……周围；gather breath 喘过气来；gather data/information 收集资料(信息)；gather dust 积尘；gather from 从……推测；gather speed 加快速度；gather strength 恢复体力；gather up 收拢，集中

thresh [θreʃ] *vt.* 打麦，打谷

process ['prəuses] *n.* 过程，工序，工艺 *v.* 加工，处理

【词组】in the process of 在……过程中；be in (the) process 在进行中；in process of 逐渐地

Signor ['si:njɔ:] *n.* (意大利语)先生

present ['preznt] *adj.* 1. 出席的，到场的 2. 现在的，目前的 *n.* 现在，目前

【词组】at present 目前，现在；(now) for the present 目前，当前，眼前，暂且；present participle 现在分词；the present perfect progressive tense 现在完成进行时；the present perfect tense 现在完成时；the present tense 现在时；present itself (想法、机会、问题等)出现，呈现；present oneself 出席(会议等)；出现，参加

champion ['tʃæmpjən] *n.* 冠军，优胜者

studio ['stju:diəu] *n.* 1. 画室，摄影室 2. 播音室，录音室，摄影棚

课文详解

1. ...they have been expecting a splendid crop this year... 期待着今年获得一个大丰收

● crop 对于我们而言不是一个陌生单词，很多学生都了解 crop 指庄稼或农作物，但这里的 crop 指的却是 amount of grain, fruit, etc. grown in one year or season，即"收成，产

www.TopSage.com

量"的意思。如果作物丰收，可以说 a splendid crop，或者 a bumper/large crop，但如果歉收，我们则说 a crop failure。

2. ...three cartloads of golden brown macaroni stalks. 三车金黄色的通心粉梗。

★ 四级词汇辨析：walk，stride，stalk，stagger，stroll

1)walk：走，步行。最普通的用词。

2)stride：强调大踏步的阔步行进，如：Tom has made enormous strides in his maths this term.

3)stalk：侧重表示以僵硬的、高傲的步态昂首阔步地行走，如：The woman quarreled with the shop assistant and stalked off in a huff.

4)stagger：说明步伐不稳，蹒跚、踉跄着前进，如：All of a sudden，the bus stopped，and the old lady staggered and fell.

5)stroll：说明不紧不慢，到处溜达，四处闲逛，如：The old couple like strolling in the park after dinner on fine evenings.

3. The whole village has been working day and night... 全村的人都日夜奋战……

● day and night，有时也作 all day and all night。此外，短语(a)round the clock 也有"夜以继日"的意思。

e. g. Competition in the late-night-snacks market seems to be intensifying in China. Not long ago 15 McDonald stores in Beijing and 13 in Shanghai announced to be in business round the clock.

在国外，如果看到某商店门口有"round-the-clock shop"的字样，就说明这家商店提供全天服务，24 小时营业。

4. Mrs. Brabante is talking to the manager of the local factory where the crop is processed. 布拉班特太太现在正和负责通心粉加工的当地加工厂的经理交谈。

● where 引导的是一个定语从句，where 在这里是一个"关系副词"，等于 in which。新概念第 2 册主要是讲解 which，who，that 等关系代词引导的定语从句(见 Lesson 28)，对于关系副词引导的定语从句没有作专门的讲解，而对于 where 引导定语从句这一知识点却在前面的课文中出现多次(见 Lesson 48，55)。

5. Signor Fratelli，the present champion，has won it every year since 1991. 目前的冠军弗拉特里先生，自 1991 年以来，年年获胜。

★ 四级词汇辨析：champion，championship

1)champion：指在竞赛中得第一名或一等奖的人，是一个具体名词，如：Liu Xiang is a world champion at 2004 Olympics.

2)championship：则指的是冠军的身份或头衔，也就是说 championship 是一个抽象名词，如：Our Chinese pingpong team won the championship once again.

类似 champion 和 championship 这样的单词还有很多，比如 friend—friendship，leader—leadership，scholar—scholarship，member—membership，citizen—citizenship 等。

语法精析

一、复习主谓一致(参见 Lesson 16，73，74，75)

二、复习现在完成时与现在完成进行时(参见 Lesson 4，5，52)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 77 A successful operation

本课重点和难点

● 复习宾语补足语

本课词汇

mummy ['mʌmi] *n.* 木乃伊

Egyptian [i'dʒipʃən] *adj.* 埃及的

temple ['templ] *n.* 1. 庙宇，寺院 2. 太阳穴

mark [mɑ:k] *n.* 1. 标记，记号 2. 分数 *v.* 1. 记分，打分 2. 作标记

【词组】mark time 拖延时间，停滞不前

plate [pleit] *n.* 底片

disease [di'zi:z] *n.* 疾病，病患，（植物）病害

last [lɑ:st] *adj.* 1. 最后的 2. 最近的，紧接前面的 *adv.* 最后地，上一次，最近一次 *vi.* 持续，维持

【用法】1. last 作"持续"之意时是不及物动词，不能用被动语态。如：The Civil War was lasted four years.［误］The Civil War lasted four years.［正］2. last 作及物动词时，意为"够……使用"。如：The vegetables can last us a whole week. 这些蔬菜够我们吃一整个星期。

prove [pru:v] *vt.* 证明，证实 *vi.* 结果是，原来是

【用法】prove 证明，证实：指用明显的证据来使人消除对某人或某物的怀疑，相信其是真实的。反义词：disprove。

resin ['rezin] *n.* 树脂

skin [skin] *n.* 皮，皮肤 *v.* 剥皮

section ['sekʃən] *n.* 1. 章，节 2. （组织，机构等）部分 3. （城市等）地段，区

【词组】export a machine in sections 把机器拆装出口；residential section 住宅区

figure ['figə] *n.* 1. 数字 2. 人物 3. 外形，轮廓 *vt.* 演算出，想出

【词组】figure in 把……算入；figure on 期待，指望；figure out 算出，理解，想出

【用法】figure 体形，外形：指人的体型、仪态，特别是轮廓线条。反义词：content（内容）。

normally ['nɔ:məli] *adv.* 通常地，正常地

fall to pieces 成为碎片

survive [sə'vaiv] *v.* 1. 比……命长 2. 幸免于，幸免

课文详解

1. The mummy is that of Shepenmut who was once a singer in the Temple of Thebes. 这是曾在底比斯神殿里当过歌手的赛潘姆特的木乃伊。

● that 在这里代表 the mummy，使得在同一句中不必重复 mummy 这个单词。用英语行文时，常常用代词 that/those 来避免重复。如：The students in our class are more united than those in their class.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. ...whether the woman died of a rare disease. 这位妇女是否死于一种罕见的疾病。

● 同样是表示死因，die of 和 die from 所适用的情况有所不同。die of 多指死于内因，如疾病、年老、饥饿、情感等方面的原因，如：die of hunger/starvation/illness. 而 die from 多指死于外因，如事故、劳累、饮酒过度、暴食等，如：He died from overwork/drinking.

★ 四级词汇辨析：die out, die off, die away

1) die out 表示"完全的灭亡，灭绝"，如：Tribes and tribal customs have died out centuries ago.

2) die off 跟 die out 相对，表示"相继死去直至死光"，如：The government has taken measures to stop hunting this kind of birds for they are dying off.

3) die away 表示（风、声音）的逐渐减弱，或者（树木等）的渐渐凋零，如：If you had watered the plant in time, it wouldn't have died away.

3. The operation, which lasted for over four hours, proved to be very difficult because of the hard resin which covered the skin. 手术持续了 4 个多小时，非常难做，因为皮肤上覆盖着一层硬硬的树脂。

● prove 作"证实，证明"讲，用法并不特殊，prove＋宾语（从句），e. g. The author has proved his point. 而值得注意的是，当 prove 作系动词，表示"显示出……，证明是……"时，是没有被动语态形式的。如：The theory proved impractical in practice.

4. ...a small wax figure of the god Duamutef 一个蜡制的杜瓦木特夫神小塑像

● 据说制作一具木乃伊至少需要七十天的时间：首先要将死者的大脑以及除心脏之外的全部内脏取出，随后要对遗体进行脱水处理，最后再在遗体的内腔中放入专用的香料袋。而取出的死者内脏，即 stomach（胃），liver（肝），intestines（肠）和 lungs（肺）经过清洗、敷涂香料之后被放到专用的容器内，这种容器被称为 Canopo（卡诺波）罐，将随木乃伊一起安置到墓室中。

保佑死者身体部位的四位神灵造型分别出现在不同的容器上，这四位神灵都是 Horus（古埃及的太阳神）的儿子：jackal-headed（狼首神）Duamutef 保护胃，human-headed 的 Imsety 保护肝，falcon-headed（鹰首神）Kebehsenuf 保护肠，还有一位 baboon-headed（狒狒头神）Hapy 则是保护肺的。

5. ...when they cut it open 当他们把它（木乃伊）切开时

● 这是个复合宾语结构的句子，it 是宾语，open 是宾语补足语。

语法精析

复习宾语补足语

英语中有些及物动词接了宾语之后还需接宾语补足语来补充说明宾语的有关情况，否则句子意思就不完整。宾语和宾语补足语合称为"复合宾语"这一结构需要与 Lesson 3 中讲到的双宾语的结构进行区分。

能作宾语补足语的有名词、形容词、动词-ing 形式、介词短语等。

1. 常接形容词作宾语补足语的动词有 keep，make find 等。

e. g. We must keep our classroom clean。

2. 常接名词作宾语补足语的动词有 call，name，make，think 等。

e. g. We call them mooncakes.

3. 常接动词-ing 形式作宾语补足语的动词有 see，watch，hear，find，keep 等。

e. g. In the country，we can hear birds singing.

4. 常接介词短语作宾语补足语的动词有 keep，find，leave 等。

e. g. I left my pen on my desk at home.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 78 The last one?

本课重点和难点

- 形容词+that/wh-从句
- 主谓一致(Ⅳ)

本课词汇

entitle [in'taitl] *vt.* 题目为,给……题名

calm [kɑːm] *adj.* 平静,冷静,镇静 *vt.* (使)平静,(使)镇静 *n.* 平静,风平浪静

nerve [nəːv] *n.* 神经,勇气,胆量

【词组】get on one's nerves 刺激人,使人不安;have the nerve to do sth. 有足够勇气去做某事;lose/regain one's nerve 失去(恢复)勇气及自信

concentration [ˌkɔnsen'treiʃən] *n.* 专心,全神贯注

suffer ['sʌfə] *v.* 受苦,受害

symptom ['simptəm] *n.* 症状,征候

temper ['tempə] *n.* 1. 脾气,情绪 2. 韧度

【词组】lose one's temper 发怒,发脾气;get/go/fly into a temper 发脾气;keep/control one's temper 忍住性子;out of temper with sb. 对某人生气

【用法】temper 性情,脾气:指天生或后天获得的性情,特别是决定人在解决问题或困难时的心情,如性急、易怒等。

appetite ['æpitait] *n.* 食欲,胃口

produce [prə'djuːs] *vt.* 1. 生产,制造,产生 2. 显示,出示 *n.* 产品,农产品

【用法】作名词时指一切农产物、天然产物或工业产物,前面不加冠词 a,也没有复数形式。

【辨析】product 一般用词,主要指人工的工业产品,也指天然出产的物品,为可数名词;produce 指农副产品总称,特别是水果、蔬菜等,为不可数名词;production 兼指两者,主要指脑力劳动成果,特别是小说、戏剧、雕刻、绘画等文艺作品和艺术品。

urge [əːdʒ] *vt.* 1. 催促,力劝 2. 强烈希望 3. 鼓励,促进 *n.* 强烈欲望,迫切要求

【词组】urge sb. to do/urge sb. into doing 督促某人做……

【辨析】urge 和 prompt 均有"敦促,催促"的意思。urge 指用外力驱使牲畜前进,用于人时,指用大力在心理上施加压力,促使某人去做某事,带有强烈的主观色彩。prompt 指促使事物发生的起因,强调因果关系。

satisfaction [ˌsætis'fækʃən] *n.* 1. 满足,满意 2. 乐事,愉快

【词组】to the satisfaction of 使……满意;give satisfaction 使满意,使满足;with satisfaction 满意地

delighted [di'laitid] *adj.* 高兴的,快乐的

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

课文详解

1. After reading an article entitled 'Cigarette Smoking and Your Health', I lit a cigarette to calm my nerves. 读完一篇题为《吸烟与健康》的文章之后，我点上了一支香烟，来镇定一下自己紧张的神经。

● entitle 表示"以……为名/题"时，往往是用过去分词的形式来作后置定语，比如我们经常能在四、六级作文部分看到类似的指示：For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition entitled 'Asking for Leave of Absence'. You should write at least 120 words according to the following guidelines.

entitle 是四级考试中的高频词，在过去的 10 年里有 7 次考到了它。而在以往的四级考试中，常被考到的 entitle sb. to do sth.，表示的意思却是"给某人权利或者义务做某事"，例如：Every citizen is entitled to equal protection under the law.

● 英语里有很多动词的过去式和过去分词都有两种形式，但它们的用法却不尽相同，比方说 light 的动词变位可以是 light-lighted-lighted，也可以是 light-lit-lit。但 lit 一般用作表语，而 lighted 则一般是用来作定语的，例如：It is reported that about 800 people in the United States die every year from fires caused by lighted cigarettes.

2. I had all the usual symptoms of someone giving up smoking: a bad temper and an enormous appetite. 我具备了戒烟者通常表现出来的所有的症状：暴躁的脾气和旺盛的食欲。

● giving up smoking 是现在分词作后置定语修饰 someone。

3. My friends kept on offering me cigarettes and cigars. 我的朋友们不断地给我递上香烟和雪茄。

● keep on doing sth. 表示"继续进行某事"，而与 keep 相搭配的其他的短语还有：

keep away(from) 远离，如：Keep away from the scene of the accident.

keep in touch with 和……保持联系，如：I still keep in touch with my former classmates even though I have graduated for 10 years.

keep off 避开，不接近，如：Keep off the grass.

keep up 坚持，信守，如：He is the kind of person who will always keep to the original purpose.

keep up with 跟上，不落后，如：The increase in wages cannot keep up with the increase in prices.

● 烟草有比较高级的 cigar(雪茄)，也有日常生活中常见的 cigarette(香烟)，当然还有 pipe(烟斗)，hookah(水烟)，snuff(鼻烟)和 chewing tobacco(嚼烟)。

tobacco(烟草)中含有致癌物质，这一点在一些英文俚语中也有所体现，比如 cigarette 的几个别称 cancer stick(癌根儿)，coffin nail(棺材钉)。明知是癌根儿、棺材钉，却还心甘情愿每天照吸不误，实在是够讽刺的了。

抽烟的人为 smoker，而一天抽两包香烟的人，则被称为 heavy smoker。而那些一支接着一支抽，用前一支烟屁股(butt)点燃后一支烟的人则被称为 chain smoker。

4. They made no effort to hide their amusement whenever I produced a packet of sweets from my pocket. 每当我从口袋里掏出一包糖果的时候，他们都毫不掩饰地表现出他们对我的嘲笑。

● 我们将在后面的 Lesson 82 中接触到类似的表达 make every effort to do sth.(尽力做某事)。此外，我们还可以说 make great efforts to do sth.，或者 spare no efforts to do sth.(不遗余力地做某事)。而当我们做一件事情，并没有花费多大气力时，就可以用 effortlessly 来表示

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

"轻而易举地做到了某事"。例如：

The feeling you get when you dive in is fantastic, as if you're smooth and gliding through the water effortlessly.

语法精析

一、形容词＋that/wh-从句

在"形容词＋that/wh-从句"结构中，主语通常是表示人或动物的名词、代词，形容词为表达情感心理的形容词，如：sure, certain, delighted, worried, happy, glad, sad, surprised, disappointed, angry 等。

1. be＋形容词＋that-从句。

My wife was delighted that things had returned to normal once more.

一切都恢复了原状，我妻子十分高兴。

2. be＋not＋形容词＋wh-从句。

The doctors were not sure/certain whether the woman had died of a rare disease.

医生不能确定这女人是否死于一种罕见的疾病。

二、主谓一致(Ⅳ)

(一)一些代词后的谓语

each 和 some, any, no, every 构成的代词作主语时都用单数谓语，例如：

Each of the houses is painted a different colour. 每栋房子都漆成不同颜色。

Everything was ready. 一切都准备好了。

(二)有些代词作主语时谓语常作复数

例如：

Many are called, but few are chosen. 召来的人很多，选中的却寥寥无几。

All of the students were going to attend. 全体学生都打算出席。

Both of them were men of the highest position in England.

他们两个人都是英国最高地位的人。

Few of them are any good. 它们中间很少是好的。

Some are wise, and some are otherwise. 有些人明智，有些人则不然。(谚语)

(三)其中有些代词如代表不可数的东西，则用单数谓语

例如：

So all is going well. 因此一切都进展顺利。

Some of the milk has turned sour. 有些牛奶酸了。

Every little helps. (谚语)点点滴滴都有用。

(四)有些代词，有时跟复数谓语，有时跟单数谓语

例如：

Which is your room? 哪间是你的房间？
Which are your books? 哪几本是你的书？

Any is good enough for me. 任何一个对我都是够好的。
Any are at liberty to express an opinion. 任何人都可以发表意见。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

None of my friends has ever been to Paris. 我的朋友谁也没去过巴黎。
None of us are perfect. 我们谁也不是完人。(我们都不完美)

Most of their steel is imported. 他们大部分的钢都是进口的。
Most of us have had this kind of experience. 我们多数人都有过这种经历。

(五)在个别情况下,单复数谓语都可以:

例如:

Is (Are) there any? 还有些(几个)吗?

None of my friend has (have) been invited to the party.

我的朋友一个也(全)没有被邀请参加晚会。

(六)more than one,many a 等词组作主语

"many a+单数名词","more than one+单数名词"作主语时,表示复数意义,但形式为单数,故谓语动词一律用单数。例如:

More than one friend have (×)/has (√) tried to persuade me to give up smoking.

不止一个朋友劝我戒烟。

Many a fat person were (×)/was (√)born with an enormous appetite.

许多肥胖的人天生有副好胃口。

(七)"the+形容词"作主语

"the+形容词"若表示一类人,其后谓语动词用复数;若表示一类事物或概念,其后谓语动词常用单数。例如:

The sick here is (×)/are (√) very well cared for. 这里的病人受到精心照料。

The unexpected always happen (×)/happens (√). 意外之事总会发生。

(八)表示数量的名词词组作主语

表示度量、金钱、时间、距离等数量意义的名词词组作主语时,谓语动词一律用单数形式。例如:

Another two weeks is necessary for him to fully recover from the illness.

他还需要2周的时间才能完全康复。

Because he had been poor all his life,200 dollars were (×)/was(√) a big sum for him.

因为他一辈子都挺穷,200美元对他来说是笔大数目。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 79 By air

本课重点和难点

- 部分倒装(Ⅰ)

本课词汇

parent ['peərənt] *n.* 父(亲),母(亲),家长

flight attendant ['flait-əˌtendənt] 空中乘务员

frightened ['fraitənd] *adj.* 受惊吓的

curious ['kjuəriəs] *adj.* 好奇的,奇怪的

bomb [bɔm] *n.* 炸弹 *v.* 轰炸

【词组】go like a bomb 风驰电掣,疾驰;be bombed out 被炸毁

plant [plɑːnt] *vt.* 安置,藏

课文详解

1. I used to travel by air a great deal when I was a boy. 当我还是一个小男孩的时候,我常常乘飞机旅行。

● 课文的头两句中就连着三次使用 used to do sth. 的结构,在课文第 4 行又出现 be used to doing sth. 的结构,这是 Lesson 31 的重点,可以再次复习一下。

2. A flight attendant would take charge of me... 我总是由一位空中乘务员照管。

● take charge of...表示"掌管,负责"。

★ 四级词汇辨析:in charge of,in/under the charge of

这两个词组都有"负责"的意思,区别在于:

1)in charge of...指(某人)负责某事,含有主动意义,如:I was in charge of my brother while my parents were at work.

2)in/under the charge of...则表示"某事/人由某人负责",含有被动意义,还是上面那个例句,可以换个方式表达:My brother was in the charge of me while my parents were at work.

类似的短语还有 Lesson 44 中讲过的 in (the) possession of...。

3. ...only on one occasion have I ever felt frightened. 只是有一次把我吓坏了。

● 这是一个倒装句,我们往往为了语法结构的需要或为了强调而把谓语的一部分或全部提到主语的前面,因此产生了倒装句。

4. ...a flight attendant told us to keep clam...一位空中乘务员告诉我们要保持镇静

● 当别人很紧张,或者很惊慌失措时,我们可以安慰别人说:

Calm down,please.

Chill out,please.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Don't panic, keep calm/cool.

Take it easy, it's nothing serious.

● 而一个人如果可以做到处乱不惊，我们可以说此人 as calm/cool as a cumber，他没什么处乱不惊。

5. Later we learnt that there was a very important person on board. 事后我们才得知原来机上有一位十分重要的大人物。

● on board 表示"进入或登上(飞机或轮船等交通工具)"，口语中我们常常说 get sb. on board，把一个人带上船，既然上了同一条贼船，那就是拴在一条绳上的蚂蚱，出了事谁也跑不掉。所以，get sb. on board 就有了"把……拖下水"的意思。比方说，在曾经热播的美国连续剧 Prison Break 的第 1 季第 3 集中，Michael 有这样的一句台词：If we don't get him on board, there's not going to be any digging in that cell and if there's no digging in that cell... then there's no escape. 如果我们不拉他入伙，就无法在牢房里挖通道，如果挖不了通道，我们就逃不出去。

语法精析

部分倒装(Ⅰ)

部分倒装就是把谓语中的 be 动词、助动词或情态动词置于主语前面。常见于下列几种情况：

1. only 所修饰的副词、介词短语或状语从句放在句首时需部分倒装。注意：only 修饰主语时，不需要倒装。

e.g. Only under urgent circumstances will she turn to me for help.

考题：Only when I left my parents for Italy ________ how much I loved them.

A. I realized　　B. I had realized　　C. had I realized　　D. did I realize

答案解析：D。题干中 only 加上时间状语从句置于句首，下画线处应采用部分倒装的形式，由此排除选项 A、B；下画线处表示的动作为过去发生并且没有"过去的过去"的意味，由此进一步排除选项 C 而选出 D。

2. 含有否定意义的副词或连词放在句首时需部分倒装。比如 never, little, seldom, not, not only, not until, no sooner(...than), hardy(...when), rarely, scarcely, in no way 等。

e.g. No sooner had she got married than her husband died.

3. 在 so...that, such...that 句型中，若把 so, such 引导的结构放在句首时需部分倒装。

e.g. So little did I know about philosophy that the lecture was completely beyond me.

4. 省略了 if 的虚拟条件句中，把 were, had 或 should 放在句首时需部分倒装。

e.g. Were I you, I would not agree to help him.

5. 让步状语从句中的倒装形式为：强调对象＋as/though＋主语＋其他部分，强调对象可以是表语或状语。表语为名词时，前面通常不用冠词。

e.g. Child as he is, he knows how to please the others.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 80 The Crystal Palace

本课重点和难点

- 介词搭配(Ⅰ)

本课词汇

palace ['pælis] *n.* 王宫,宫殿

extraordinary [iks'trɔːdinəri] *adj.* 1. 非常的,格外的 2. 奢侈的 3. 放肆的

exhibition [ˌeksi'biʃən] *n.* 展览

iron ['aiən] *n.* 铁,熨斗 *v.* 熨平

【词组】a man of iron 意志坚强的人,冷酷无情的人;iron out 熨平衣服

various ['vɛəriəs] *adj.* 不同的,各种各样的

machinary [mə'ʃiːnəri] *n.* (总称)机器,机械

display [dis'bplei] *n.*/*vt.* 陈列,展览,显示

【词组】make a display of 炫耀一下……

【辨析】display, demonstrate, exhibit, show 均有“展示”的意思。display 和 exhibit 着重公开展示、陈列供人参观,两词可通用。exhibit 作名词时可作“展览品,陈列品”讲,display 无此词义。show 为一般用词,指拿出来给别人看。exhibit 比 show 正式,含有“展览作品(产品),举办展览会”的意思。demonstrate 指不仅给人看,而且还操作表演给人看,并作详细介绍,因此含有“演示,示范表演(操作)”的意思。

on display/show 展览,陈列

steam [stiːm] *n.* 汽,蒸汽 *v.* 1. 蒸发,蒸(食物) 2. 用蒸汽开动

profit ['prɔfit] *n.* 利润,收益,益处 *vt.* 有益于,有助于

【用法】1. 表示“利益”时,不加冠词 a,也无复数。表示“利润”时可用冠词 a,也有复数形式。2. profit 利益,益处:指某人在进行某项活动中在金钱上所获得的实际好处,有时指在精神上获得的有价值的东西。

college ['kɔlidʒ] *n.* 大学,学院

课文详解

1. Perhaps the most extraordinary building of the nineteenth century was the Crystal Palace, which was built in Hyde Park for the Great Exhibition of 1851. 19 世纪最不寻常的建筑也许要数水晶宫了,它是为 1851 年的“世界博览会”而建在海德公园的。

● Hyde Park(海德公园)可以说是伦敦最著名的公园。这里曾经是英国国王的鹿场,后来又成为赛车和赛马的场所。19 世纪初,这块冷落了 200 年的土地被辟为公园,并以著名的海德爵士的名字来命名。1861 年,Queen Victoria 在 Hyde Park 举办了第一次万国博览会,来自世界各地的几十万人涌进了装修一新、花团锦簇的海德公园。从此,这个公园就名扬天下了。

Hyde Park 还因其东北角拱门边辟出一块 Speaker's Coner 而闻名。自 19 世纪末起,这

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

里便成为英国人的集会场所。这里既没有讲坛，也没有灯光，讲演者自带设备。每个星期天讲演者可在这里发表各种观点政见，内容五花八门，除了不准攻击王室和进行人身攻击外，百无禁忌；演讲者的性别、年龄、肤色、职业、国籍也没有任何的限制。因为演说者很随便，往往搬来一只肥皂箱当讲台，站在之上讲演，内容又五花八门，因此人们称之为"肥皂箱民主"。

2. The Crystal Palace was different from all other buildings in the world, for it was made of iron and glass. 这座水晶宫不同于世界上所有的其他建筑，因为它是用钢和玻璃建成的。

● be different from 表示"与……不同"。如果两个事物相同，则用 be the same as；如果两个事物仅仅是相似，则用 be similar to。

● be made of 与 be made from 的区别，参见 Lesson 10 中的讲解。

3. A great many goods were sent to the exhibition from various parts of the world. There was also a great deal of machinery on display. 大量的商品从世界各地运送到了博览会，参展的还有很多机器。

● a great many 和 a great deal of 均表示"大量的"，只不过前者修饰可数名词，后者修饰不可数名词。有关"大量的"表达法，我们在 Lesson 4，5，56 里均作过讲解。

★ 四级词汇辨析：various，varied，variable

这三个形容词的词义互相渗透，它们之间的含义和用法有同有异，因此，往往容易混淆。

1）various 和 varied 都可以指同一范畴的不同种类，在表示"各种各样的，各不相同的"意思时，一般可以互换，只是前者强调种类数目的"多"，而后者则侧重"不同的，多变化的"的含义，如：Representatives from various parts of the country have arrived in Beijing. 这里用 various 来强调地区的数目之多。Their opinions are varied. 则用 varied 强调大家意见的"不同"。

2）various 同 varied 另一个明显的区别在于，various 一般用来修饰可数名词的复数形式，而 varied 则没有什么限制。

3）variable：则指自然现象（如气候等）、人的情绪或脾气性格"多变的，易变的"或"反复无常的"。如：The variable weather tires us.

● machine 和 machinery 虽然都表示"机器"，但 machinery 是一个集合名词，是对机器的总称。我们可以讲 a machine，但却只能说 a piece of machinery。类似的单词还有 scene 和 scenery，friend 和 friendship，champion 和 championship。在这几组单词中，前者都是实义名词，而后者都是抽象名词。

★ 四级词汇辨析：show，exhibition，exposition，fair

这些名词都可表示"展览"或"展览会"之意。

1）show：最普通的用词，几乎任何形式的公开展览都可以被称之为 show。

2）exhibition：一般则用来指较正规的展览会，如：Beijing Automotive Exhibition（北京汽车展览会）。

3）exposition：多指大型博览会或国际博览会，如：the World Exposition（世界博览会）。

4）fair：侧重指为促销商品而举办的展览会或商品交易会，如：Chinese Export Commodities Fair（中国出口商品交易会）。

4. ...and the profits from the exhibition were used to build museums and colleges. 博览会的赢利则用来建造博物馆和高等学校。

★ 四级词汇辨析：benefit，advantage，interest，profit

这些名词均有"利益，好处"之意。

1）benefit：是个普通用词，只要是通过正当手段所获得的任何好处或利益，无论是物质

www.TopSage.com

上的或是精神方面的，都可以称为 benefit。如：For those who achieved excellent results，do not allow arrogance to get into your head，and remember one can benefit a lot from being humble.

2）advantage：则指因某方面占优势或利用对方弱点而获得利益与好处，如：Some dealers make money by taking advantage of the customers.

3）interest：作"利益"解时，多用复数形式，既可指集团、群体的利益，又可指个人的利益。如：What will you do if there is a conflict between the company's interests and your personal interest.

4）profit：着重收益，尤指从物质、钱财等方面获得的利益。如：Most people go into business hoping to make a profit.

5. It remained one of the most famous buildings in the world until it was burnt down in 1936. 在1936年被焚毁之前，它一直是世界上最著名的建筑物之一。

● 这是个系表结构的句子，remain 为系动词，Lesson 75 专门提到了系表结构。

● burn up 和 burn down 都表示（火把）房子烧毁。但如果严格地区分，burn up 的原意是指"火烧起来"，准确地说主语应该是 fire，而 burn down 的主语应该是 house。

语法精析

介词搭配（Ⅰ）

介词常与动词、名词、形容词搭配使用，一般无规律可循，需熟记。现归纳 Lesson 49—Lesson 81 中出现的介词固定搭配：

change into the uniform 换上制服
at that moment 那时
stand at the window 站在窗前
elderly with gray hair 上了年纪，头发灰白
get/jump into the car 上车
be made of/from 由……制造（材料）
in those days 当时
in all 总共
on one occasion 有一次
on board 在飞机/船上
keep on doing... 坚持做某事
die of... 死于（内因）
fall to pieces 成为碎片
at the end of the harvest 收获结束时
return to... 回到
turn... into... 将……转换成……
arrive on the scene 赶到现场
be dressed in... 穿着……
stop at the gate 停在门口
stand to attention 立正
feel sorry for sb. 为某人感到难过
take photo of sb. 给某人拍照
in the end 最终，终于
fly off course 飞离航线
keep near to... 靠近……
be hard on sb. 对某人苛刻
send a message by radio 通过无线电发送信息
set up a record 创下纪录
be responsible for... 为……负责
connect/link... to... 连接
catch sight of 瞥见
get close to 接近
look on 旁观
pay/turn one's attention to 注意
wave to sb. 向某人挥手
(be) busy with 忙于
serve as 充当
take interest in... 对……产生兴趣
(be) disappointed at... 对……感到失望
to one's surprise 令某人惊讶的是
for miles around 方圆几英里

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 81 Escape

本课重点和难点

- 介词搭配(Ⅱ)

本课词汇

prisoner ['priznə] *n.* 囚徒

bush [buʃ] *n.* 灌木,灌木林

【词组】beat about the bush 绕弯子讲话(不直截了当)

rapidly ['ræpidli] *adv.* 迅速地,敏捷地

uniform ['ju:nifɔ:m] *n.* 制服,军服 *adj.* 一致的,一律的

rifle ['raifl] *n.* 步枪

shoulder ['ʃəuldə] *n.* 肩膀

【词组】shoulder to shoulder 肩并肩地;rest on my shoulders 落在我肩上

march [ma:tʃ] *v.* 进军,行军 *n.* 1. 行进,行军 2. 进行曲

【词组】march from victory to victory 从胜利走向胜利;march ten miles 走十里路;march out of the room 迅速走出房间

up and down 来回地,到处

shouting ['ʃautiŋ] *n.* 叫喊声

boldly ['bəuldli] *adv.* 大胆地,勇敢地

itself [it'self] *pron.* 它本身,它自己

【词组】by itself 单独,独自;in itself 本身

blaze [bleiz] *n.* 1. 火焰,耀眼的强光 2. (内心情感的)突然爆发 *v.* 冒火,燃烧;(燃烧般)发光

salute [sə'lu:t] *n.* 尊敬,行礼,鸣礼炮 *v.* 1. 迎接,欢迎 2. 敬礼,行礼,鸣礼炮

elderly ['eldəli] *adj.* 年老的,年岁较大的

grey [grei] *adj.* 灰白的

sharp [ʃa:p] *adj.* 猛烈的,剧烈的

blow [bləu] *vt.* 吹,吹动,吹响 *vi.* 花开 *n.* 1. 吹,吹风 2. 打,击,灾祸

【词组】blow hot and cold 变化不定;blow sb. a kiss 飞吻;blow out 吹灭;blow up 打气,爆炸;at (with)one blow 一举

drive off 开车离开

课文详解

1. When he had killed the guard, the prisoner of War quickly dragged him into the bushes. 那个战俘杀死卫兵之后,便迅速地把尸体拖进了灌木丛。

● 美军制度规定,除军旗之外,美军军营必须常年悬挂一面黑色的旗帜。旗上的图案显示出一个低沉的人像侧影,两旁印着6个英文字母:POW,MIA。这是两组英文词的缩写。POW 意为战争中的俘虏(prisoners of war),MIA 意为战时失踪者(missing in action)。事实上,美军从未放弃寻找越南战争、朝鲜战争,乃至于二战中的战俘、失踪者及其遗骸的努力。这甚至成为近年美朝关系和美越关系的焦点问题之一。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. Now, dressed in a blue uniform and with a rifle over his shoulder, the prisoner marched boldly up and down in front of the camp. 现在他身穿蓝军装，肩扛步枪，在军营门前大胆地来回走动着。

● up and down 表示“上上下下，来来往往”的意思，e. g. Window cleaners are pulled up and down tall buildings on cradles.

这里简单介绍一下 up 跟 down 这两个单词的妙用。这两个单词除了表示上下之外，也有北上和南下的意思，e. g. Did you get down to Florida last summer? 英文的这一点跟中文很像。在中文里通常我们会说，南下去了深圳，或是北上去了北京，而不单纯说去了深圳或去了北京。像这里南下 Florida，就会说成 get down Florida 或是 go down Florida。

up 和 down 也常常用来表示声音的大小。e. g. Can you keep it down? 当然这两个词还有尊敬跟瞧不起的意思，比如：look down on sb. 就是看不起某人的意思，有点像是中文里狗眼看人低；要是很看得起某人，则是说 look up on sb.。

3. The officers got out and the prisoner stood to attention and saluted as they passed. 军官们下了车，战俘立正站好，并在他们从他面前经过时敬了个礼。

● stand to attention 或者 stand at attention 均可以表示“立正”，为了更加简练，在喊口令时直接用 Attention。其他的常用口令如下所示：

Fall in!	集合！
Eyes front!	向前看！
Count off!	报数！
Attention!	立正！
At ease!	稍息！
Dismiss!	解散！

● salute 可以专门用来指“行军礼”，表示下级对上级的一种尊敬。也可以用在普通人之间的问候中，这种问候也是出于尊敬或致意，是很庄重、正式的问候。

4. He was rather elderly with grey hair and clear blue eyes. 他上了年纪，有着灰白的头发和明亮的蓝眼睛。

● elderly 表示人已过中年，步入暮年，由于语气比较委婉，因此常用来代替 old，如：an elderly gentleman。英语的表达，不仅仅是正确性的问题，还涉及得体和恰当的问题。有时我们要注意自己的言行中是否有 discrimination（歧视）或 harassment（骚扰）之嫌，这里的 discrimination 不仅仅是种族歧视，还有体征歧视、阶级歧视、性别歧视，等等，不一而足。

比如一个老师在谈论班上成绩不好的学生时，用到了 bad students（差生）一词，就有可能对学生的心理造成伤害。这些学生并不 bad，仅仅是 weak in study 而已，故应该婉转的称他们为 weak students。

再比如中文里有“恶邻”一说，但英语就最好不要用 bad neighborhood，委婉的说法是 tough neighborhood。因为 bad neighborhood 有阶级歧视之嫌，与之相伴的是 poor people。即使要提到 poor people，也应该委婉地说 the people living under welfare，复杂是复杂一点，但还是不应嫌麻烦。

● 此外，在使用 elder 时必须注意两点：首先，elder 一般用来表示家庭成员中的年长身份，如：elder brothers/sisters；其次，elder 之后习惯上不用 than，而只跟 of。如：She is the elder of the two.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

语法精析

介词搭配(Ⅱ)

in place of...替代
be different from...不同于
(be) on display/show 展出
across the channel 横越海峡
take charge of...管理
get off the plane/bus 下飞机/下车
smoke with pleasure 惬意地吸烟
give up...放弃
die from 死于(外因)
hang up the receiver 挂上电话
go on a diet 节食
put sb. to shame 使某人感到耻辱
dream of/about 梦想,梦到
have difficulty/trouble in doing...做某事有困难
be unaware of...没意识到……
(be) sensitive to...对……敏感
(be) sure of oneself 自信
(be) pleased with 满意于……
tap on the window 敲窗
react/respond to...对……作出反应/回答
set off/out for 出发前往
put forward a plan 提出计划
prepare for...为……作准备
bark at sb...冲着某人吠叫
an expert at...……方面的专家
visitors to...到某地游览的人
so far 到目前为止
in spite of 尽管
glance at 瞥了一眼
ask for 要求
be confident of...对……有信心
laugh at 嘲笑
on one's way to...在去……的路上
threaten...with...以……威胁……
fly through space 飞跃太空
complain of/about 抱怨
in a newspaper 报纸上
cut down the tree 砍树
point out 指出
hesitate for a moment 犹豫片刻
with great difficulty 艰难地
take part in 参加
look around 环视
gaze at 凝视
go on an excursion 郊游

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 82 Monster or fish?

本课重点和难点

● 副词的用法

本课词汇

monster ['mɔnstə] *n.* 怪物,妖怪

sailor ['seilə] *n.* 水手,海员

【词组】a bad/good sailor 常(不)晕船的水手

sight [sait] *n.* 1. 视力,视觉 2. 望风,瞥见

【词组】in sight 被见到,在望;catch sight of 发现,突然看见

creature ['kri:tʃə] *n.* 生物(人或动物)

peculiar [pi'kju:liə] *adj.* 1. 特殊的,独特的 2. 奇怪的,古怪的

【词组】be peculiar to 是……所独特的

shining ['ʃainiŋ] *adj.* 闪光的,发光的

oarfish ['ɔ:fiʃ] *n.* 桨鱼

课文详解

1. Fishermen and sailors sometimes claim to have seen monsters in the sea. 渔夫和水手们有时声称自己看到海里的妖怪。

● claim 虽然在 Lesson 58 里出现过,但在这里却表示"声称,断言",后面可以直接跟 that 引导的从句,也可以直接跟不定式 claim to do sth.。如:He claimed to be a Scot but had a powerful Liverpool accent.

2. Though people have often laughed at stories told by seamen, it is now known that many of these 'monsters' which have at times been sighted are simply strange fish. 虽然人们常常对水手们讲的故事一笑了之,但现在看来,人们有时看到的"妖怪"不过是些奇怪的鱼罢了。

● laugh at 嘲笑,同义词有 mock,jeer,sneer 等。

● at times=sometimes=occasionally

● it is known that...可以和 be known to do sth. 的结构互换,这一结构的互换曾在 Lesson 58 中讲解过。如:It is known that the earth is round. 可换成 The earth is known to be round.

类似的转换还有 It is reported that the bank was robbed last night. 可换成 The bank was reported to be robbed last night.

3. Some time ago, however, a peculiar fish was caught near Madagascar. 然而前不久,在马达加斯加附近的海里却捕到了一条奇怪的鱼。

● 分开的 some time 表示"一段时间"。

★ 四级词汇辨析:strange, peculiar, eccentric, queer

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

这些单词都有"奇怪的,怪异的"意思。

1)strange: stranger 用来指"陌生人",倒推回来,可知 strange 所指的"奇怪"是因为不熟悉、不知道或无法解释而引起的,如:When I first arrived in Rome, how people greeted each other seemed strange to me.

2)peculiar:所指的"奇怪"侧重与众不同,与所有他物有所不同,如:It seems peculiar to my grandma that many teenagers have their hair dyed green these days.

3)eccentric:主要是强调该事物离公认的、常规的或既定的习惯或模式相去甚远。如:Many consider Berlioz's compositions to be innovative but eccentric.

4)queer:则表示由于和事先料想的不一样,而感到的"奇怪",如:We have never expected such a queer situation to happen.

4. Realizing that this was no ordinary fish, the fisherman made every effort not to damage it in any way. 那位渔民意识到这不是一条普通的鱼,于是千方百计不让它受到丝毫的伤害。

● 以前当我们要表达"尽力做某事"时,大家习惯用 try to do sth.,这里我们学到了一个更好的表达 make every effort to do sth.,类似的表达还有 make great efforts to do sth.,或者 spare no efforts to do sth.(不遗余力地做某事)。而当我们做一件事情,并没有花费多大气力时,就可以用 effortlessly 来表示"轻而易举地做到了某事"。

5. The fish, which has been sent to a museum where it is being examined by a scientist, is called an oarfish. 此鱼叫桨鱼,被送进了博物馆,现在正在接受一名科学家的检查。

● where 引导的是一个定语从句,修饰 museum,只不过这里的 where 是一个关系副词,不同于 which/who 等关系代词引导的定语从句。这一语法点在 Lesson 48 和 Lesson 55 中均作过讲解。

语法精析

副词的用法

副词在句中的位置有句首、句中和句尾三种,大多数英语副词既可位于句中,也可位于句尾,但有些副词则只能位于句首,有些则只能位于句中,还有些只能位于句尾。

1. 时间副词在句中的位置。

(1)表示确定时间的副词一般位于句尾,强调时可位于句首,但不位于句中。例如:

She bought a shirt yesterday. 她昨天买了一件衬衫。(不可说 She yesterday bought a shirt.)

(2)表示不确定时间的副词,如 sometimes, never, ever, seldom, always, often, just 等,一般位于行为动词之前,但位于 be 动词、情态动词和助动词之后。例如:

He often takes a walk in the evening. 他常常在晚间散步。

(3)两个或两个以上时间副词连用时,一般是小时间在前,大时间在后。例如:

He got to the station at eight o'clock yesterday evening. 他昨天晚上八点钟到达火车站。

2. 地点副词在句中的位置。

地点副词一般位于句尾,有时可位于句首,但通常不位于句中。例如:

I met her in the library. 我在图书馆里遇见了她。

3. 方式副词在句中的位置。

(1)修饰不及物动词时,方式副词要放在动词的后面。

(2)修饰带宾语的及物动词时,方式副词可以放在动词之前或宾语之后。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(3)及物动词后的宾语较长时，方式副词也可以放在动词和宾语之间。例如：

She watered the flowers and trees carefully.

She watered carefully the flowers and trees. 她细心地给花和树浇水。

(4)及物短语动词后跟宾语时，方式副词可以放在动词前，或宾语后，但不可放在宾语前。

4. 频度副词在句中的位置。

(1)表示确定频度的副词和词组，如 once，several times，yearly，on Fridays，every month，every morning，every other day 等，通常放在句尾，词尾带-ly 的副词一般也放在句尾，但有些状语视上下文意义也可放在句首。

(2)表示不定频度的副词和词组，如 always，usually，often，hardly，ever 等，通常位于助动词和系动词 be 之后，行为动词之前。表示频度的词组则通常放在句首或句尾。例如：

I seldom get up early on Sundays. 我星期天很少早起。

5. 程度副词在句中的位置。

程度副词通常要紧放在所修饰的形容词或副词前面。例如：

The boy is very honest. 那个男孩非常诚实。

6. 疑问副词在句中的位置。

疑问副词位于句首，后接一般疑问句。例如：

When will he come back? 他什么时候回来？(不可说 When he will come back?)

7. 连接副词在句中的位置。

连接副词放在从句的句首，后接的从句必须用陈述句语序。例如：

I don't know where he has gone. 我不知道他到哪里去了。(不可说 where has he gone.)

8. 关系副词在句中的位置。

关系副词放在定语从句前面，后面必须接陈述句语序。例如：

This is the place where he was born. 这就是他出生的地方。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 83 After the elections

本课重点和难点

- 副词的分类

本课词汇

election [iˈlekʃən] *n.* 选举

former [ˈfɔːmə] *adj.* 在前的，以前的 *n.* 前者

【词组】the former... the latter 前者……后者……

Prime Minister [praim ˈministə] *n.* 总理，首相

defeat [diˈfiːt] *v.* 击败，战胜，挫败，使落空 *n.* 击败，战胜，战败

fanatical [fəˈnætikəl] *adj.* 狂热的，盲目听信的

opponent [əˈpəunənt] *n.* 对手，敌手 *adj.* 对立的，敌对的

【用法】opponent 敌人，对手：指在辩论、比赛和其他竞争中力量相对抗的，彼此间有一定仇视。

radical [ˈrædikəl] *adj.* 1. 基本的 2. 激进的

【用法】radical 根本的，基本的：指强调复杂或简单事物基础的完全性、彻底性。

progressive [prəˈgresiv] *adj.* 进步的，先进的

ex-Prime Minister *n.* 前任总理，前任首相

suspicious [səsˈpiʃəs] *adj.* 1. 猜疑的，疑心的 2. 可疑的

课文详解

1. After the elections 大选之后

★ 四级词汇辨析：choice，alternative，preference，election

这些名词中都表示选择的行为、能力或权力。

1）choice：用途最广泛，指从一组人或物中进行选择，如：The store offers a wide choice of fruits and vegetables.

2）alternative：则强调在只有两种可能性或者行为方式之间所作的选择，如：The way was blocked，so we went by an alternative road.

3）preference：更加侧重基于个人价值观、偏见或偏好上的选择，如：We were offered our preference of wines.

4）election：特别强调选择时使用判断力，如：The university recommends the election of courses in composition and literature.

2. My friend, Patrick, has always been a fanatical opponent of Mr. Lane's Radical Progressive Party. 我的朋友帕特里克一直是莱恩先生的激进党的强烈反对者。

★ 四级词汇辨析：opponent，competitor，enemy，rival

这些名词均有“敌手，对手”的含义。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

1)opponent：通常指在争论、辩论或竞选中站在对立面的“对手”，也就是说，它更加侧重观点或立场的不一致。

2)competitor：指为同一目标或目的竞争的人，无感情色彩，如：Liu Xiang beat all the other competitors and won the championship.

3)enemy：则是一个贬义词，多指充满敌意的仇敌，如：The Japanese are the sworn enemies of us Chinese.

4)rival：指与某人目标一致而想赶上或超过他的人，可以理解为“劲敌”，如：Rena shot her love rival in an angry rage.

美国每两年举行一次选举，每四年举行一次总统选举，而且在总统任期进行到一半时，他们还会进行所谓的中期选举。有趣的是，不仅美国人关心自己国家的总统选举，世界上绝大部分国家的人民也很关心看似和自己毫无关系的一个国家的领导人选举。可以说，直到今天，世界上还没有任何一个国家的领导人更迭能像美国这样引起整个世界的关注。

3. Though a little suspicious this time, the policeman gave him the same answer 虽然那位警察这次有点疑心，但还是对他作了同样的回答。

★ 四级词汇辨析：suspect，doubt

这两个单词虽然都有“怀疑”的意思，但区别还是比较大的。

1)suspect 和 doubt 的后面如果接名词、代词，两者可以互换，如：I suspect/doubt his motives in doing this.

2)但是，如果这两个词的后面接 that 引导的宾语从句，所表示的意思就相差甚远了。suspect 的意思是“相信……，怀疑……属实”，如：I suspect that he has a mistress.（我怀疑他在外面有别的女人了。）而 doubt 的意思却是“不相信……，质疑……的真实性”，如：I doubt that he betrayed me.（我怀疑这件事的真实性，他真的背叛我了吗？）

3)这两个单词在用法上还有一个比较大的区别，即 doubt 后面可以接 whether/if 引导的从句，而 suspect 没有类似用法。如：I doubt whether he will come.

4. This time, the policeman lost his temper. 这一次警察发火了。

● lose one's temper 说明一个人“发脾气了，发火了”，如果一个人总是发脾气，那我们用 hot-tempered 来形容他。与之相对的，一个人如果很心平气和，我们说他 even-tempered 或者 easy-going。

语法精析

副词的分类

（一）五分法

根据词汇意义，副词有五种，见下表：

名　称	例　词
时间副词	now, then, already, ago, tonight, never, ever, usually, soon
地点副词	here, there, nowhere, above, below, back, outside
方式副词	slowly, fast, well, badly, carefully, along, certainly
频度副词	often, always, hardly, once, from time to time, several times, daily, every year, again and again
程度副词	very, too, quite, almost, much, still, enough, fairly, hardly, rather

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

(二)三分法

根据句法功能，副词有三种，见下表：

名　称	例　词	用法特点
疑问副词	when, how, where, why	位于句首，后接一般疑问句
连接副词	when, where, how, why, whether	引导主语从句、宾语从句或表语从句
关系副词	when, where, why	引导定语从句

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 84 On strike

本课重点和难点

● 相关成分的分离(Ⅰ)

本课词汇

strike [straik] *n.* 罢工

busman ['bʌsmən] *n.* 公共汽车司机

state [steit] *n.* 1. 状态,情况 2. 国家,州 *vt.* 陈述,说明

【辨析】country 着重指一个国家的疆土;nation 着重指组成一个国家的民族、人民;state 着重指一个国家的政府机构和国家权力(即政权)。

agreement [ə'gri:mənt] *n.* 1. 达成协议,协议 2. 同意,一致

【词组】arrive at/come to an agreement 达成协议;in agreement with 与……一致,按照,符合;make an agreement with 与……达成协议

relieve [ri'li:v] *v.* 1. 减轻 2. 换岗,换班

【词组】relieve... from 解除(病痛)等;relieve sb. of 帮助拿……,解脱

【辨析】relieve 安慰,安心:指使某人解除了暂时性的忧愁、紧张而得到宽慰。反义词:afflict(使苦恼),distress(悲伤)。

pressure ['preʃə] *n.* 压(力),按

【词组】put pressure on sb. 给某人压力;under pressure 被迫

extent [iks'tent] *n.* 1. 广度,宽度,长度 2. 限度,程度

【词组】to some extent 在某种程度上

to some extent 在某种程度上

volunteer [ˌvɔlən'tiə] *n.* /*v.* 自愿(者,兵);自愿(提供)

gratitude ['grætitju:d] *n.* 感激,感谢

【用法】常与 to 或 for 连用。to 接人,for 接事物。

the Press [pres] *n.* 新闻界,出版界

object[1] [əb'dʒekt] *v.* 反对

【用法】object 反对,不赞成:指某人对某事很反感或持相反的意见。特别是指突然反对做某事。

object[2] ['ɔbdʒikt] *n.* 1. 物体 2. 对象,目的 3. 宾语

课文详解

1. The strike is due to begin on TueCDay. 罢工定于星期二开始。

● be due to do sth. 表示"定于(某时)开始做某事",相同的表达还有 be scheduled to do sth.,如:The Chinese national team is scheduled to arrive in Sydney this Friday. 如果按事先定的计划完成了任务,便是 on schedule,如:The workers completed the project on schedule.

● 此外,due to = because of。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. The busmen have stated that the strike will continue until general agreement is reached about pay and working conditions. 司机们声称此次罢工将持续到就工资和工作条件等问题达成全面协议时为止。

★ 四级词汇辨析：announce，state，claim，pronounce

这些单词都有"宣布"的含义，其中

1) announce：是个普通用语，仅仅表示将事情公之于众。

e. g. The U. S. announced a cease-fire against Iraq.

2) state：有"声明，陈述"的意思，侧重用话语表达出来。

e. g. The lecturer stated his opinion at the beginning of the lecture.

3) claim：侧重指面对质疑时的极力主张或坚持。

e. g. The candidate claims to have many supporters.

4) pronounce：也有"宣告"的意思，可以指"正式地宣布为死亡"，而这一用法是其他的几个单词所不具备的。

e. g. The driver was caught in an accident and was seriously injured. When he was sent to hospital. he was pronounced dead on arrival.

● reach an agreement 达成一致/协议，此外也可以说 arrive at an agreement，come to an agreement。

3. This will relieve pressure on the trains to some extent. 这将在某种程度上减轻对火车的压力。

● 除了可以 relieve pressure，还可以 relieve pain/tension（减轻疼痛/紧张）。relieve oneself 并不是"自我减压"的意思，而是"想上厕所"的意思。

● to some extent 表示"在某种程度上"，我们曾经在 Lesson 5 中学过它的同义词 in a way，如：English is difficult in a way.

some 在这里并不表示"一些"，而是表示不确定的"某一个，某一种"，等于 a certain。

e. g. Some man called this morning. 类似的用法出现在 Lesson 21 的 for some reason。

4. Even so, people are going to find it difficult to get to work. 即使这样，人们仍会感到上班有困难。

● 在 Lesson 4 中出现过一句话 So he is finding this trip very exciting. 当时我们就接触了 find sth. + *adj.* 的结构，在这一结构里，sth. 作 find 的宾语，后面的形容词用来修饰 sth.，充当了宾语的补足语。不同的是在这里我们用 it 作了形式宾语，真正的宾语是后面的不定式 to get to work。这个句子仍然是 S+V+O+OC（主语+谓语+宾语+宾补）的结构。

5. But so far, the public has expressed its gratitude to the students in letters to the Press. 但到目前为止，公众已经向新闻界写信表达他们对学生们的感激之情了。

● 在西方人的生活中，他们经常把 Thank you. 和 Excuse me. 挂在嘴边，不可谓不礼貌了。而要对别人表示感谢，除了 Thank you(very much) 或 Thanks a lot/a million，在更为正式的场合，我们可以用以下的表达：

I really appreciate your help.

I'd like to express my gratitude to you for your help.

I am truly grateful to you for your help.

6. Only one or two people have objected that the students will drive too fast! 只有一两个人提出反对意见，说学生们会把车开得太快！

● 需要强调的是 object to doing，后面必须跟动名词，e. g. I object to your smoking in

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

the office.

● **当我们同意别人的看法时，可以有以下几种表达：**

I am for you.

I am on your side.

I agree with you.

I couldn't agree with you more.

而当有不同的意见需要表达时，可以说：

I am against you.

I'm afraid I don't agree with you.

I hate to disagree with you, but...

There is some reason in what you said, but I still want to add that...

语法精析

相关成分的分离(Ⅰ)

语意上密切相关的两个语言单位，有时因为英语行文习惯或句子平衡因素，常出现形式上的分隔，要正确理解长句句义，必须分清句子成分之间的修饰关系与从属关系。

(一)名词与其定语的分离

例句：

The busmen have stated that the strike will continue until general agreement is reached about pay and working conditions. 司机们声称，不达成有关工资与工作条件的全面协定，罢工就会一直进行下去。

(二)谓语动词与其宾语的分离

例句：

She revolutionized the Broadway stage—brought to an end the ballet routine (常规) of high kicks and mechanized movement, and gave in its place dance and plot skillfully integrated(融入). 她对百老汇舞剧进行了革新，结束了芭蕾舞中高踢腿及其他机械性的常规动作，取而代之的是舞蹈与情节的巧妙结合。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 85 Never too old to learn

本课重点和难点

- 相关成分的分离（Ⅱ）
- 复习形式宾语 it
- 复习一般将来时、将来完成时、将来进行时
- 并列修饰成分

本课词汇

inform [inˈfɔːm] *v.* 1. 通知，告诉，报告 2. 告发，告密

【词组】inform sb. of sth. 把某事告知某人；inform against/on sb. 告发，检举某人

【用法】1. 在表示"通知(某人)"时，其后不能直接接 that 从句，而必须接宾语(sb.)再接 that 从句，或接 of(about)＋名词。He informed me that I must start at twelve o'clock. 他通知我必须在 12 点出发。2. 除接(inform＋sb.＋)that 从句以外，还可接 wh-从句、疑问词＋不定式，或不定式。3. inform on(against)作"告发"讲。

【辨析】inform 使用最普遍，通常指通知事(人)，传递消息，报告情况，所通知的具体内容可接 of 或 that 从句表示；advise 指正式通知，通知的具体内容可接 of 或 that 从句；notify 为正式紧急通知，是正式或公务用语，带有要求被通知的人尽早答复或行动的意思，后可接 to do 或 that 从句或 of，以表示具体内容。

headmaster [ˈhedmɑːstə] *n.* 校长

【辨析】headmaster 是对校长的一般称呼，尤指私立学校校长，也简称 head，在英国指中小学的校长。schoolmaster 指教师或校长，现多指男教师，此词主要用于英国，尤指小学校长。principal 指中小学校长(美国)，在英国不常用，有时指大学校长、学院院长或中小学校长。

contribute [kənˈtribjuːt] *v.* 1. 贡献，捐献，捐助 2. 投稿

【词组】contribute to＋(doing)sth.

gift [gift] *n.* 1. 礼品，赠品 2. 天赋，才能

album [ˈælbəm] *n.* 签名纪念册

patience [ˈpeiʃəns] *n.* 耐心

encouragement [inˈkʌridʒmənt] *n.* 鼓励

farewell [ˈfɛəˈwel] *int.* 再见，再会 *n.* 告别

【词组】a farewell meeting(party)欢送会；farewell speech 告别辞

honour [ˈɔnə] *n.* 敬意

coincidence [kəuˈinsidəns] *n.* 巧合，一致

total [ˈtəutl] *n.* 总数，合计 *adj.* 总的，全部的，完全的 *v.* 合计，总数达

【词组】in total 总共

devote [diˈvəut] *v.* 向某人奉献某物，投身于

【词组】devote oneself to a noble cause 献身于崇高事业；devote all one's efforts to one's task 全力以赴地工作

【用法】devote 献身，奉献：一般用语，指某人一心一意地为了一定目的而从事某种事业，对别的事情不闻不问。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

gardening ['gɑːdniŋ] *n.* 园艺 | hobby ['hɔbi] *n.* 嗜好，业余爱好，兴趣

课文详解

1. Never too old to learn 活到老学到老

● 英语里还有一句谚语与此句义同形异，即 We live and learn. 而现代教育制度下的 lifelong education(终身教育体系)则很好的反映了这一古老而经典的思想。

2. All those who have contributed towards the gift will sign their names in a large album which will be sent to the headmaster's home. 所有凑钱买礼物的人都将把自己的名字签在一本大的签名簿上，签名簿将被送到校长的家里。

★ 四级词汇辨析：contribute，attribute，ascribe，owe

1) contribute to 表示"有助于，促成……"。如：It has been found out recently that stress contributes to heart disease.

2) attribute 和 ascribe 的差别不大，attribute/ascribe to 都可以解释为"把……归因于"，是个中性的短语，没有褒贬。e. g. RMB's appreciation is attributed to the continuous slump of the U. S. dollar and expectation for an interest rate drop in the United States, said analysts.

3) 相比之下，owe to 是个褒义的短语，相当于"把……归功于"。如：The model owes her good health to diet and exercise.

● 大家都很熟悉 gift 作"礼物"讲，如：birthday gift。但什么是 Greek gift 呢？希腊神话中有一个很有名的 Trojan war，希腊人和特洛伊人交战 10 年之久，可是仍然胜负未决。最后，希腊著名的英雄 Odusseus 想出了一个木马计(the Trojan Horse)，用木头做了一匹巨马，放在特洛伊城外。全体希腊将士伪装撤退，乘船隐藏在附近的海湾里，而奥德修斯率领 20 名勇士事先藏进马肚。特洛伊人误认为希腊人已经败退，大开城门，看到城外的巨大木马，以为这是希腊人敬神的礼物，就把它当作战利品拖进城来，大摆筵席，欢庆胜利。到了半夜，特洛伊人好梦正酣，毫无戒备的时候，藏在木马里的希腊英雄们都爬了出来，打开城门，发出信号，与附近海湾里返回的希腊大军里应外合，一举摧毁了特洛伊城。

可见，希腊人送的礼物确实不是什么好东西。汉语中有句俗语"黄鼠狼给鸡拜年，没安好心"，这与英语中的 Greek gift(存心害人的礼物)颇有异曲同工之处。

3. We shall all remember Mr. Page for his patience and understanding... 我们不会忘记佩奇先生对我们的耐心和理解……

● remember sb. for sth. 记住某人的……。如：We remember Doctor Bethune for his selflessness and the contribution to Chinese people.

● remember sb. to sb. else 代……向……问好，如：When you return home, remember my family to your mother.

4. A great many former pupils will be attending a farewell dinner in his honour next Thur day. 很多他以前的学生都将会参加下周四为他举行的告别宴会。

● a great many 是 Lesson 4 和 Lesson 56 里学过的知识点。

● farewell 表示"告别"的意思，是一个非常正式的用语，bid farewell to sb. 就等同于 say goodbye to sb. 。如：Having bid farewell to the 20th century, we warmly welcome the new millennium.

而中国人也好，西方人也罢，往往喜欢利用各样的借口来 host a dinner/banquet in honour of sb. (为……举办宴会)。比方说为客人接风洗尘，我们办一个 welcome dinner；为

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

客人饯行，我们办 farewell dinner；取得了一些成绩，我们开 glee feast（庆功宴）；而庆祝的同时，我们也不忘答谢那些有恩于我们的人，于是又举办一个 return dinner（答谢宴）。即便什么借口都没有，大家也是今天开个 tea party，明天来个 cocktail party。总之，只要是宴会，有的吃，有的喝，大家都会很乐意参加的。

● in one's honour 或者 in honour of...，意思都是一样的，表示"为了纪念……"，如：France sent the Statue of Liberty to America in honour of the friendship between two countries.

★ 四级词汇辨析：honorable，honorary

虽然这两个形容词均是由 honour 衍生而来，意思却相差甚远。

1）honorable 用于修饰人，说明这个人是"值得尊敬的"；用于修饰物，说明这一事物是"光荣的，荣誉的，体面的"。如：receive an honorable burial。

2）honorary 是"名誉的"意思，是"作为一项荣誉而拥有或给予的"，比如一所学校可以有它的 honorary headmaster，一个公司可以有它的 honorary president 或者 honorary counselor。

5. After he has retired, he will devote himself to gardening. 他退休后，将致力于园艺。

● 值得注意的是无论是 devote...to...或者 be devoted to doing 的结构，to 是个介词，后面要跟动名词，如：The nurse devoted herself to taking care of the patients.

devote 的同义词 dedicate 也是同样的用法，如：To such a task we can dedicate our lives and our fortunes，everything that we are and everything that we have.

● gardening 在英国是一个十分古老而又流行的休闲娱乐，说它古老是因为 gardening has been a popular pastime since Roman times；说它流行是因为 a recent survey discovered that people in Britain spend about 45%of their free time gardening。英国几乎所有的家庭主妇不但会花时间去收拾她们的 house，也会花时间去精心布置她们的 garden，所有的主妇都想成为一个 have a green thumb 的人。如果一个人的 thumb 被绿色植物染成了绿色，则说明他们花在 gardening 上的时间很多，把花草照料得很好，所以 have a green thumb 的意思就是"某人把花草照料得很好"。

语法精析

一、相关成分的分离（Ⅱ）

（一）主语与其同位语的分离

例句：

<u>The harsh reality</u> was long familiar to Japanese Industry insiders，that <u>the analog HDTV (High Definition TV) system, with which Japan stunned（震惊）the world when it broadcast the 1984 Olympics in Los Angeles, had become outmoded technology.</u> 曾以播送 1984 年洛杉矶奥运会而震惊世界的日本模拟式高清晰度电视系统，已成为过时的技术。日本工业知情者对这一严峻的事实早已熟知。

（二）not 与其否定对象的分离

例句：

I do <u>not</u> suppose that university students <u>will</u> volunteer to drive buses during the strike. 我想罢工期间大学生不会自愿去开公交车。

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

二、复习形式宾语 it

例句：

He thought it easy to pass the exam. 他认为通过考试很容易。

I feel it right that he should be punished. 我认为他理应受到惩罚。

三、复习一般将来时(参见 Lesson 12)、将来完成时(参见 Lesson 37)、将来进行时(参见 Lesson 13)

四、并列修饰成分

例句：

I have just received a letter from my old school informing me that my former headmaster will be retiring next week. 我刚收到母校的来信，告知老校长将于下周退休。

句中的"from my old school"和"informing me that..."都是用来修饰"a letter"的，是并列关系。

例句：

I was fortunate enough to attend university the year before tuition fees were introduced and grants abolished. 我很幸运在学费开始收取、助学金取消之前一年考入大学。

说明

and 引导两个结构一致的并列句时，and 后的并列句常省去部分谓语动词"be"。如：I divide my page into two parts. The left part is about a third of the page wide, and the right, two-thirds. 我将纸张分成两部分，左侧约占页面三分之一宽，右侧约占三分之二宽。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 86 Out of control

本课重点和难点

- 过去完成时和过去完成进行时

本课词汇

swing [swiŋ] *vi.* 1. 摇荡,摇摆 2. 旋转,回转 *n.* 1. 摆动,摇摆 2. 秋千

【词组】 in full swing 全力以赴

speedboat *n.* 快艇

desperately [ˈdespəritli] *adv.* 拼命地,绝望地

companion [kəmˈpænjən] *n.* 伴侣,同伴,志趣相投的人

water skiing *n.* 滑水运动

buoy [bɔi] *n.* 浮标,救生圈

dismay [disˈmei] *n.* 惊愕

tremendous [triˈmendəs] *adj.* 巨大的,极大的

petrol [ˈpetrəl] *n.* 汽油

drift [drift] *n.* 漂流,趋势,倾向 *v.* (使)漂流,漂泊

【用法】 drift 漂浮,漂流:指某物随风或水流动的方向移动。

gently [ˈdʒentli] *adv.* 渐渐地,轻轻地

课文详解

1. As the man tried to swing the speedboat round, the steering wheel came away in his hands. 当那个人试图让快艇转弯时,方向盘脱手了。

● 这里的 come away 可以和 come off 互换,均表示"脱落,离开"。come off 简而言之就是两个原来在一起的东西分开的意思,如油漆剥落等。如:The paint comes off gradually.

● 此外,新概念第二册还涉及其他一些跟 come 相搭配的短语,如:come down, come up with, come on, come by, come into 等。以 come into 为例,除了 come into the room, come into 的后面可以加一个抽象的名词来表达不同的意思。如:This factor doesn't come into play in this case. 这里的 come into play 表示"起作用,有效果",而类似的表达还有 come into effect 等。

2. Both men had hardly had time to realize what was happening when they were thrown violently into the sea. 他们两个还没有来得及意识到究竟发生了什么事情,就被猛地抛入了海里。

● hardly...when...是在 Lesson 38 中重点讲解的句型,跟它用法一样的结构还有 no sooner...than...。

3. It now came straight towards them at tremendous speed. 它现在正以惊人的速度向他们冲来。

● at the speed of...“以……的速度行驶”,有时我们可以把整个短语省略,仅仅留下一个介词 at 来表示速度,如:The car goes at (the speed of) 160 m/h.

www.TopSage.com

4. ... it roared past them only a few feet away. 它从离他们只有几英尺的地方呼啸着驶了过去。

● 这里的 roar 实际上就是 go 的意思，但却比 go 用的要生动许多。roar 原本是一个拟声词，用来形容狮子、老虎的吼叫或者咆哮声；用在这里，说明快艇驶过的时候发出了巨大的噪音，很是生动。

● 英语里有很多用来形容动物叫声的单词，如果使用的恰当，能够让整个句子增色不少。比如 hum 表示蚊子、蜜蜂嗡嗡的声音，但我们可以说 The avenue hummed with traffic. 表明来来往往的车辆形成了一种持续、低沉、混在一起的嗡嗡声。又比如 twitter 用来指鸟儿的啁啾声，我们可以说 The office ladies are twittering over office gossip. 来表示那些女人们闲来无事，在办公室里唧唧喳喳地说着闲话，很是形象。

5. After it had passed, they swam on... 快艇过去之后，他们继续游着。

● 这里的 on 是一个副词，表示这个动作继续进行着，同样的用法曾经在 Lesson 14 出现过，"After I had left a small village in the south of France, I drove on to the next town."

● 我们经常用 on and on 来表示"无间断地，连续不断地"，如：He kept talking on and on for 2 hours. 而 on and off 就表示这个动作"时断时续"，如：Maria has been studying English on and off for ten years.

6. On this occasion, however, it had slowed down considerably. 然而这一次，快艇极大地放慢了速度。

● on...occasion，介词只能是 on，如：on formal occasions，或者 on the occasion of the Spring Festival。

● slow down 的反义词在 Lesson 56 中出现过，那就是 speed up。

★ 四级词汇辨析：considerable，considerate

虽然这两个单词都是由动词 consider 衍生出来的，但词义相差非常之远。

1）considerable：说明在数量、范围、程度或影响上"相当大的"，如：J. K. Rolin, who wrote Harry Porter, is a writer of considerable influence at the present.

2）considerate：则是用来形容一个人"考虑周到的，深思熟虑的"，基本上可以和 thoughtful 进行互换，如：It was very considerate of you to bring flowers.

7. The petrol had nearly all been used up. 汽油几乎已经用光。

● petrol 是典型的英式英语的用词，美国人更喜欢说 gasoline 或者 gas。"加油站"英国人说 petrol station，而美国人则说 gas station 或者 service station。

British English 和 American English 的区别不仅在发音上，它们的用词，甚至是句型结构方面也有很多的不同。

先拿用词来讲，美国人说 garbage can（垃圾筒）或 junk-heap，而英国人只有 dust-bin；美国人说 baggage car（行李车），而英国人则说 luggage van；再比方说美国人管长途电话叫 long-distance call，比英国人的 trunk call 更加一目了然。

British English 和 American English 在句型结构方面的不同也是很明显的，比如说在一些 public occasions，我们总能见到类似"小心你的头"的标志，美式英语会说 watch your head，而英式的表达则是 mind the head。

● use sth. up 表示"耗尽了……，用完了……"，同样的表达还有 run out of sth. 或者 sth. run out（Lesson 88 涉及的短语），如：Could you please hurry up? We are running out of time.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

语法精析

过去完成时与过去完成进行时

(一)过去完成时与过去完成进行时常用于定语从句

例句:

He waved desperately to his companion, who had been water-skiing for the last 15 minutes. 他拼命向同伴挥手,他的同伴滑水已有15分钟了。

I lost the pen you had bought for me. 我丢失了你给我买的笔。

说明 主句用一般过去时,其定语从句常用过去完成时,表示发生在主句谓语动词(lost)之前的动作;或用过去完成进行时,表示某一动作(water-ski)从过去某时一直持续到主句谓语动词(waved)发生时。

(二)when, before, after 等主从句的时间先后有别时,常用过去完成时与过去完成进行时

例句:

They had just had enough time to swim out of danger when/before the boat again completed a circle. 他们刚刚游出危险水域,汽艇又兜完了一圈。

When/After/As soon as I had finished homework, I went swimming. = When/After/As soon as I finished homework, I went swimming. 我完成了作业就去游泳了。

说明 when, after, as soon as 从句中的动作若与主句动作连续先后发生,主从句均可用一般过去时。

(三)过去完成时与过去完成进行时在简单句中的应用

例句:

On this occasion, however, the speed-boat had slowed down considerably. The petrol had nearly all been used up. 不过这回汽艇已大大减速了,汽油几乎完全用完了。

(四)过去完成时用于 He said/knew/asked that... 等宾语从句中

例句:

When inspector asked if he had noticed anything unusual, the man said he had not.

当警官问那人有没有注意到任何异常之事时,那人说没有。

(五)过去完成时与"by, by the time+过去时间"连用

例句:

By the end of last week we had received 200 application letters.

到上周末为止,我们已收到了200封求职信。

By the time he graduated from university, he had studied/had been studying English for 10 years.

到他大学毕业为止,他已学了10年的英语。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 87 A perfect alibi

本课重点和难点

- 反意疑问句
- 复习过去完成时

本课词汇

alibi [ˈælibai] *n.* 托辞，借口

commit [kəˈmit] *vt.* 犯(罪)，干(坏事)

catch [kætʃ] *vt.* 赶上

【词组】catch up with 赶上；catch a cold 伤风，感冒；catch on 理解，明白

【用法】catch 抓住，逮住：一般用语，指用力地、出其不意或机智地捉住飞奔中或躲藏中的人或物。

inspector [inˈspektə] *n.* 检查员，巡官

employer [imˈplɔiə] *n.* 雇用者，雇主

confirm [kənˈfəːm] *vt.* 1. 使更坚定，使更坚固 2. 证实 3. 确认，批准

【用法】confirm 证实，肯定：指以事实或可靠的材料来表明已知的事情是真实的或正确的。

suggest [səˈdʒest] *v.* 提醒

truth [truːθ] *n.* 真相，真实性

课文详解

1. A perfect alibi 极好的不在犯罪现场的证据

● Alibi 基本上是法律用语，指受指控的案件发生时，不在现场。在口语中 alibi 也可以作 excuse(借口)用，但这类借口往往是杜撰出来的。

2. My employer will confirm that I was there on time. 我的雇主会证明我是按时到了那儿的。

★ 四级词汇辨析：on time，in time

1)on time 是"准时，按时"之意，如：The train pulled in on time.

2)in time 有"及时"的意思，说明正好赶上或恰在需要的时候出现，如：We got the airport just in time for the flight. 其次，in time 也可以被解释为"终有一天，最后"，如：In time they came to accept the harsh facts.

3. I suppose it would, but I never catch a later train. 我认为可以，但我从来不乘晚一点的车。

● 虽然我们在 Lesson 69 中学过 suppose 表示"假设"，但这里的 I suppose that... 表示的却是口语里十分常用的结构，基本上等于 I think/believe/expect//imagine...。I suppose... 与 I think... 唯一的区别在后面的从句里，其否定形型是 I don't think so. 而对于 suppose，我们则习惯用 I suppose not.

4. At what time did you arrive at the station? 你几点钟到的火车站？

● what time 其实可以看作是介词短语 at what time 的省略形式，虽然口语中常常把

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

介词 at 省略了,但回答时则必须说出介词 at。

e.g. —What time did the performance start?

—At eight thirty.

5. I suggest that you are not telling the truth. 我提醒您,您讲的不是实话。

● 在前面 Lesson 64 中学习虚拟语气的时候,我们曾经提到过 suggest 后面的从句要用 should + do 的虚拟语气,should 往往可以省略。而 The doctor suggested that Mike go on a diet. 中 suggest 后面为什么没有使用虚拟语气呢?一定要记住,只有当 suggest 表示"建议"时,才需要使用虚拟语气,而这里的 suggest 仅仅表示"提醒,暗示"。

● 同样的用法还有 insist,当 insist 表示"坚持要求"时,从句用虚拟语气,如:I insist that everybody hand in the homework tomorrow. 但如果 insist 的意思是"坚持认为",则无需用虚拟,如:Mike is a stubborn man, who always insists that he is right.

● tell the truth 表示"讲实话",我们在说实话前,可以加上类似 to tell you the truth, to be honest with you, to be frank,或者 frankly/honestly speaking 之类的表达,如:To be frank with you, I really think that your book sucks.

语法精析

一、反意疑问句

反意疑问句由两个部分组成,前一部分是陈述句,后一部分是一个附加的简单问句,中间用逗号隔开。陈述句如果用肯定式,附加问句就要用否定式;陈述句如果用否定式,附加问句就要用肯定式。陈述句对某一事实或观点作肯定或否定陈述,附加问句提出疑问,或起证实、反证作用。陈述句用降调,附加问句用升调,但在表示强调时用降调。

(一)谓语动词含有 be 动词和情态动词

陈述句中有助动词或情态动词时,附加问句用同一助动词或情态动词。例如:

He is a teacher, isn't he? 他是一位教师,是吗?

She told you the news, didn't she? 她把消息告诉你了,是吗?

He can't speak English, can he? 他不会说英语,是吗?

You haven't heard from her, have you? 你还没有收到他的来信,是吗?

(二)I wish 后的反意疑问句

陈述句谓语动词为 wish 时,表示征求意见,附加问句用 may。例如:

I wish to have another try, may I? 我希望再试一次,可以吗?

(三)陈述句含有 must 的反意疑问句

陈述句中如果有 must,附加问句要根据 must 的不同含义而采用不同形式,见下表:

must 必须→mustn't mustn't 禁止,不许→must	must 有必要→needn't must 一定,想必(表示推测)→选用 must 以外的适当助动词

They must get there before seven o'clock, mustn't they? 他们必须七点钟之前到达那里,是吗?

They mustn't smoke in the room, must they? 他们不许在房间里抽烟,是吗?

You must write to him today, needn't you? 你必须得今天给他写信吗?

She must be at home now, isn't she? 她现在一定在家,不是吗?(must 对现在情况推

www.TopSage.com

测，附加问句用 be 的一般现在时）

He must have reviewed his lessons last night, didn't he? 他昨晚一定复习了功课，不是吗？（must 对过去情况推测，附加问句用一般过去时，相当于 I am sure he reviewed...）

They must have lived here for a long time, haven't they?

他们一定在这里住了很长的时间，是吗？

（四）I think 等作主句的反意疑问句

在"I think (expect, guess, suppose, imagine, hope, feel)＋宾语从句"结构中，附加问句是针对宾语从句提问的，所以附加问句应该同宾语从句的主语和谓语一致。例如：

I believe he can find her nowhere, can he? 我相信他到哪里也找不到她，不是吗？（注意，nowhere 为否定词）

（五）aren't 和 ain't

陈述句是"I am＋表语"结构时，附加问句用 aren't I 或 ain't I，有时也可用 am I not（为正式用语）。例如：

I'm busy, aren't I? 我很忙，不是吗？

I am late, ain't I? 我迟到了，不是吗？

（六）祈使句的反意疑问句

祈使句后的附加问句可选用"will you? won't you? can you? can't you?"等。例如：

Have a little more tea, will you? 你再喝点茶好吗？

Open the door, won't you? 你打开门好吗？

（七）there be 结构的反意疑问句

陈述句为 there be 结构时，附加问句仍用 there。例如：

There are some pictures on the wall, aren't there? 墙上有些画，是吗？

There won't be any more trouble, will there? 不会再有麻烦了，是吗？

（八）陈述句含有 have 的反意疑问句

have(has)作"有"动词用，意为"有"时，其反意疑问句用 haven't, hasn't 或 hadn't；have (has)作行为动词用，反意问句要用助动词 don't, doesn't 或 didn't；'d better 意为 had better，反意问句要用 hadn't；'d rather 和 'd like 意为 would rather 和 would like，反意问句要用 wouldn't。例如：

He has a lot of money, hasn't he?

他有很多钱，是吗？（有时可用 doesn't）

He had lunch at half past twelve yesterday, didn't he?

他昨天十二点半吃的午饭，是吗？

They have to finish the work before noon, don't they?

他们必须在中午以前完成这项工作，是吗？

二、复习过去完成时（参见 Lesson 14）

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 88 Trapped in a mine

本课重点和难点

- 虚拟语气(Ⅵ)

本课词汇

trap [træp] *n.* 陷阱,圈套 *v.* 诱捕,使受限制
【词组】be caught in a trap 落圈套;set a trap(for)设圈套

surface ['sə:fis] *n.* 1. 面,表面 2. 外表

explosive [iks'pləusiv] *adj.* 爆炸(性)的 *n.* 炸药,爆炸物

vibration [vai'breiʃən] *n.* 振动,颤动

collapse [kə'læps] *vi./n.* 1. 倒塌,塌下 2. 崩溃,突然失败

drill [dril] *n.* 1. 电钻 2. 练习,操练 *v.* 操练,钻孔
【辨析】drill 意为"使……反复练习"。Drill him in grammar. 让他练习语法。exercise 为锻炼身心而练习,如 exercise the voice 练嗓子;train 指向某种目标训练,如 train nurses 培养护士;practise 意为"练习",如 practise the violin 练小提琴。

capsule ['kæpsju:l] *n.* 容器,太空舱

layer ['leiə] *n.* 层,地层

beneath [bi'ni:θ] *prep.* 1. 在……下面 2. 有失……身份 *adv.* 在下方,在底下

lower ['ləuə] *adj.* 较低的,低等的,下游的 *vt.* 降低

progess [prəu'gres] *v.* 进展,进行

smoothly ['smu:ðli] *adv.* 顺利地

课文详解

1. However, rescue operations are proving difficult. 然而,事实证明营救工作非常困难。

● rescue operation 营救工作

● 我们曾经在 Lesson77 的课文讲解中对 prove 的用法进行过讲解,这里再次强调一下 prove 表示"被证明是……,被证实是……"时,是没有被动语态的形式的,后面一般跟不定式,如:The theory prove (to be)impractical in practice. 而 to be 往往被省略了。

类似的用主动语态表示被动意义的单词还有 cook,feel,smell,sell,wash,taste 等,如:The patted shoes that my wife bought me feel comfortable.

2. If explosives are used, vibrations will cause the roof of the mine to collapse. 如果用炸药爆破,震动会引起矿顶塌落。

★ 四级词汇辨析:vibrate,fluctuate,swing,flutter

四个单词均有"振动,摆动"的意思,但是

1)vibrate:侧重迅速并有节奏的来回移动,常常表示颤抖、搏动或微颤。

e. g. The whole house vibrates whenever a heavy lorry passes.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2)fluctuate:常用于指不规律的波动或变化。

e. g. Prices fluctuated violently due to the irregularity of the crops.

3)swing:通常指一端固定、另一端悬空的物体所作的弧形运动。

e. g. The lanterns swung violently in the raging storm.

4)flutter:则强调如鸟飞行一般快速、轻巧或不规则地移动。

e. g. The children fluttering around a birthday cake.

3. They intend to bring the men up in a special capsule. 他们准备用一种特制的容器把这6个人救上来。

● intend to do sth. 表示计划、打算干某事,类似的表达还有 plan to do sth., mean to do sth., think about/of doing sth. 等。

4. If there had not been a hard layer of rock beneath the soil, they would have completed the job in a few hours. 如果不是因为土壤下面有一层坚硬的岩石,他们的营救工作仅用几小时就可以完成了。

● 这是个非真实条件句,也就是虚拟语气,表示与过去事实相反的假设。

e. g. If he had come here earlier, he would have been able to catch the train.

★ 四级词汇辨析:beneath, underneath, under, below

1)beneath/underneath 与 on 互为反义词,均强调和事物表面相接触的上下。如:I looked for my pen everywhere and finally found the pen beneath the book.

2)under 和 over 是一对反义词,分别表示垂直方向上的上下和高低。如:There is a lamp over the desk.

3)below 和 above 则分别表示高于和低于的意思,和事物表面没有接触面,也不一定指垂直方向上的上或下。如:Byrd and his men were able to take a great many photographs of the mountains that lay below from the helicopter.

5. As it is, they have been drilling for sixteen hours and they still have a long way to go. 事实上,他们已经花了16个小时,而且还要花很长时间。

● as it is/was...通常置于句首,修饰后面的主句,意思是"事实上,实际上",等于 in fact 或 as a matter of fact。如:I thought he would get better. As it is, he is getting worse.

尤其值得注意的是,英语里还有一个类似的结构,即 as it were,这一短语在意义和用法上与 as it is/was 完全不同,as it were 意思是"似乎是、仿佛是",它所表达的内容不太肯定。如:He is, as it were, a walking dictionary. 他简直可以说是一部活字典。

6. ...has enabled the men to keep in touch with their closest relatives. 使井下的人可以与其亲属保持联系。

● enable sb. to do sth. 使某人能够做某事。

e. g. The highway between cities has enabled us to travel from city to city in such a short time.

● keep in touch with 与……保持联系,也可以用 stay, get 等其他动词与 touch 相搭配。

e. g. Though they work in different cities, they still keep in close touch with each other.

7. Though they are running out of food and drink,... 虽然他们的食物和饮料都快耗尽了……

● 在 Lesson 86 中,我们学过 run out of sth. 的一个同义词组 use sth. up。需要注意的是 run out 一般没有被动语态,如果一样东西被耗尽了,则用 sth. run out。如:Our supplies finally ran out.

www.TopSage.com

大家网

8. If they knew how difficult it was to drill through the hard rock, they would lose heart. 如果他们知道了钻透那坚硬的岩石有多么难，他们早就丧失信心了。

● 这是一个非真实的条件句，描述的事情和事实相反。

● lose heart 表示"丧失信心，灰心"，而 lose one's heart to sb. /sth. 却表示"喜欢上某人/物"的意思。

TopSage.com

语法精析

虚拟语气(Ⅵ)

(一)复习虚拟语气的基本用法(参见 Lesson 40，Lesson 54)

(二)在 wish 后的宾语从句中

这是大家非常熟悉的一个虚拟句型，它用来表示说话者的难以实现的或与事实违背的愿望，具有较强的感情色彩。可分别表示对现在、过去和将来情景的虚拟。

1. 对现状表示的愿望，从句谓语动词用过去时，意指从句谓语和主句谓语所表示的动作同时发生。

I wish I were a little younger. 我要是稍微年轻点就好了。

I wish I could travel to the moon. (But I can't do that.)

我真希望到月球上去旅行(但我做不到)。

I wish I knew his address. (But I don't know his address.)

我真希望知道他的住址(但实际上我不知道他的住址)。

2. 对过去发生的事情表示遗憾、后悔，从句谓语动词用过去完成时(had done)或 would/could＋现在完成时，意指从句谓语动词所表示的动作发生在主句谓语所表示的动作之前。

I wish I had been there. 要是我当时在就好了。

3. 对将来发生的事情表示祝愿，从句谓语动词用 would/could＋动词原形，意指从句谓语动词所表示的动作可能发生在主句谓语所表示的动作之后。

I wish he could explain what he means. 我希望他能解释清他的意思。

I wish you would shut up. 我希望你闭嘴。

注意：即使将 wish 改为 wished，上述例句谓语时态仍然不变。

(三)在 if only 感叹句中

if only 表示"但愿"、"要是……就好了"，它的用法和 wish 基本相同，可表示对现在、过去、将来的虚拟，只是比 wish 更具有强烈的感情色彩。

If only he had followed your advice! (对过去虚拟)要是他遵照了你的建议就好了。

If only I were taller. (对现在虚拟)要是我高点就好了。

If only the rain would stop. (对将来虚拟)但愿雨会停。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 89 A slip of the tongue

本课重点和难点

- 虚拟语气(Ⅶ)
- 复习 should,need,must,have to
- 复习形容词+that/wh-从句

本课词汇

slip [slip] *n.* 疏忽,失误

a slip of the tongue 口误

comedy [ˈkɑmidi] *n.* 喜剧

present [priˈzent] *vt.* 上演

queue [kjuː] *vi.* 排长队

dull [dʌl] *adj.* 1. 枯燥的,乏味的 2. 阴暗的,不鲜明的 3. 阴沉的,低沉的 4. 愚钝的,钝的

artist [ˈɑtiːst] *n.* 艺人

advertiser [ˈædvətaizə] *n.* 做广告者

课文详解

1. A slip of the tongue 口误

● 与 mistake 相比,slip 更侧重于由于不经意或疏忽而造成的错误。

● 舌头(tongue)是说话用的,"口误"就叫做 a slip of the tongue,如:I should have said "Dr Chen" instead of "Mr. Chen":it was just a slip of the tongue. 为了避免说错话,最好 bite one's tongue(把舌头咬着);所以,bite one's tongue 是"保持沉默"的意思。如:I was going to tell him,but I bit my tongue when I saw you wink at me.

吃东西时,不慎咬到舌头,英文也叫做 bite one's tongue。但有时舌头未及时咬住就失言了,使人恨不得 bite one's tongue off(把舌头咬断):加 off 一字,有"后悔失言"的意思。如:When I saw how she was hurt by my inadvertent remark,I could have bitten my tongue off. 当看到因我失言说的话伤害了她,我恨不得咬断自己的舌头。例如:Lisa praised Vanessa with her tongue in her cheek(莉莎言不由衷的赞美凡内莎)。

2. People will do anything to see a free show—even if it is a bad one. 人们总要想尽办法去看不花钱的演出——哪怕是拙劣的演出。

● even if/though 表示"即使、即便"的意思,在 Lesson 38 中曾经出现过,引导的是让步状语从句,如:Even if I know the answer, I won't tell you.

3. When the news got round that a comedy show would be presented at our local cinema... 当在我们当地影院演出喜剧节目的消息传开后……

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

● 在 when 引导的时间状语从句中，有一个 that 引导的同位语从句，对 news 的内容进行解释、说明。在 Lesson46 中，我们给大家比较了同位语从句和定语从句的区别——同位语从句只能由 that 引导，且 that 不能省略。此外，that 引导的同位语从句是一个完整的句子，言外之意，that 在同位语从句中不充当任何成分。

e. g. I had a firm belief that I would surely find my true love.

4. ...and there must have been several hundred people present just before the show began. 在演出开始前场内估计已经有好几百人了。

● 在 Lesson 17 中，我们就学到 must 表示推测，只能用在肯定句里，否定句里的推测用情态动词 can't/couldn't，如：That can't be Tracy, for she is in Australia now.

这里情态动词 must 后面使用了完成时，依据 Lesson 19 所学的知识，说明这里是对过去发生的事情在进行推测。

● 这里的 present 作表语，意思是“出席的，到场的”，它的反义词为 absent，比方我们经常说一个人 absent-minded（心不在焉的）。

5. Those who failed to get in need not have felt disappointed, as many of the artistes who should have appeared did not come. 那些没能进到场内的人没有必要感到失望，因为很多应该出场的专业演员都没有来。

● 这句话的主干是 Those need not have felt disappointed，其中 needn't have done sth. 表示“过去本没必要做某事却做了”。这个主句当中包含了一个 who 引导的定语从句。

● as 在这里表示原因，可以换成 because，since，或者 for。而这个原因状语从句中也包含了一个 who 引导的定语从句。其中 should have done sth. 表示“过去本应该做却没做”。

● 有关情态动词＋have done 的用法，在 Lesson 19 中讲解过。

6. He was obviously very nervous and for some minutes stood awkwardly before the microphone. 他显然非常紧张，局促不安地在麦克风前站了好几分钟。

● He was obviously very nervous. 和 It was obvious that he was very nervous. 可以进行互换。类似的表达有：

It is clear that...

It is evident that...

It is apparent that...

★ 四级词汇辨析：awkward，clumsy

awkward 和我们在 Lesson 70 中学到的 clumsy 无大的差别，经常是可互换的。1）两者都是强调缺少身体的灵活性，如：an awkward dancer; clumsy fingers 2）此外，两者也都暗示窘迫或不自在，如：several awkward moments in the discussion; offered a clumsy apology。

7. As soon as he opened his mouth, everyone burst out laughing. 但他刚一开口说话，人们便哄堂大笑起来。

● burst out 指一件事情的突然爆发，和 break out 可以互换，如：Bird flue is likely to burst out again, experts predicted on Monday. 但这里 burst out doing 通常表示感情的突然发作，如：burst out crying/applauding/cheering，这一用法在 Lesson 70 中作过讲解。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

语法精析

一、虚拟语气(Ⅶ)

(一)在 as if/as though 从句中

1. 表示和现在事实相反或对现在情况有所怀疑,谓语用过去时。

I really don't care for the way you're speaking to me. It seems as if you were my father. 我真的不介意你对我的说话方式,看起来你像我父亲。

2. 表示与过去事实相反,谓语用过去完成时。

We have not seen each other for ten solid years, but when we encountered on the street that day, we were still so affectionate that it seemed as if not a single day had gone by. 我们已经十年没见了,但当我们那天在街上遇见时,我们仍然非常亲切,好像没有分离一天。

注意:若从句中的情形是根据现在迹象作出推测,有可能发生,则用陈述语气。

It is becoming dark. It looks as if it's going to rain. 天变暗了,似乎要下雨了。

It seems as if he has been to America. 他好像去过美国。

(二)在 it is (high) time (that) 从句中

表示"该是……的时候了",含有"晚了一点"的意思,从句中用过去时。

Don't dawdle away your youth any more. It is time you thought about your future. 不要再荒废你的青春了,该是想想你将来的时候了。

(三)在 would rather, would (just) as soon, would sooner, would prefer 等从句中

意指某人宁愿让另一个人做某事。其后的宾语从句的谓语应该用虚拟语气:(1)表示现在或将来要做的事,从句谓语需用一般过去时;(2)表示过去已经做的事,从句谓语则用过去完成时。

I'd just as soon you didn't speak rudely to her. 我宁愿你对她说话不粗鲁。

二、复习 should, need, must, have to(参见 Lesson 17,19,40,41)

三、复习形容词+that/wh-从句(参见 Lesson 78)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 90 What's for supper?

本课重点和难点

- 复习 it 强调句
- 复习分词性状语
- 复习不定式、动名词
- 复习 have 的用法
- 部分倒装(Ⅱ)

本课词汇

chip [tʃip] *n.* 油煎土豆片

overfish [ˌəuvəˈfiʃ] *v.* 过度捕捞

giant [ˈdʒaiənt] *adj.* 巨大的

terrify [ˈterifai] *v.* 吓,使恐怖

【词组】be terrified at 给……吓一跳

【用法】表示"使惊吓;恐吓;吓唬;威胁"常与介词 at 或 by, of, with 联用:She was terrified at the sight (by his appearance). 她被那情景(他的外表)吓了一跳。

diver [ˈdaivə] *n.* 潜水员

oil rig [ˈɔil-rig] 石油钻塔

wit [wit] *n.* (复数)理智,头脑

cage [keidʒ] *n.* 笼

shark [ʃɑːk] *n.* 鲨鱼

whale [weil] *n.* 鲸

variety [vəˈraiəti] *n.* 品种

cod [kɔd] *n.* 鳕

skate [skeit] *n.* 鳐

factor [ˈfæktə] *n.* 因素

crew [kruː] *n.* 全体工作人员

【用法】crew ①全体船员;全体乘务员;a train crew 列车上的全体乘务员②一起工作的人。a ground crew 一组值勤人员 ③一伙人,一帮人

课文详解

1. Fish and chips has always been a favourite dish in Britain, but as the oceans have been overfished, fish has become more and more expensive. 煎鱼加炸土豆片一直是英国人喜爱的一道菜,但是随着人们对海洋的滥捕滥捞,鱼已经变得越来越昂贵。

● 因为英国人将 fish and chips 看作是一道菜,所以谓语动词用单数。也就是说,即便是用 and 连接两个并列成分,但如果指的是同一概念,谓语动词仍然用单数,比如:a knife and fork(一副刀叉),Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise.

● overfish = over + fish,词缀 over-表示"过度"的意思,比如:overact, over-react, oversleep 等。

2. So it comes as a surprise to learn that giant fish are terrifying the divers on North Sea oil rigs. 因此,听说北海石油钻井平台上的潜水员受到巨型鱼类的恐吓,确实很让人吃惊。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

● it 在这里仅仅是一个形式上的主语，真正的主语是后面的不定式 to learn that…。当然，我们也可以套用这个结构，写出更多的句子，比如：It comes as no surprise that an increased level of physical activity and a healthy diet can contribute to improved health.

● learn 在这里表示"得知，获悉"的意思。

3. …have been frightened out of their wits by giant fish bumping into them… 被撞到他们身上的大鱼吓得惊慌失措。

● be frightened/scared out of wits 表示"被吓得不知所措"。此外，at (one's) wits' end，当一个人的智能已经到头，说明这个人已经是"智穷计尽，黔驴技穷"了。

● bump into… 既可以表示 knock into…，比如：I bumped into the table in the darkness. 也可以表示 meet…by chance，比如：I often bump into an old friend of mine at the supermarket.

4. Now they have had special cages made to protect them from these monsters. 现在他们有了特制的笼子，用来保护他们免受大鱼的侵袭。

● have had special cages made 体现了 have sth. done 的结构，这是 Lesson 66 中着重讲解的内容。

● protect… from…，保护……免受……，比如：The umbrella can protect you from suntan.

5. …sometimes as much as twelve feet in length. 有时长达 12 英尺。

● twelve feet in length＝twelve feet long，也就是说，在表示度量衡的时候，可以用 in＋名词＝相应的形容词。比如：

100 meters deep＝100 meters in depth

4 inches wide＝4 inches in width

6. Three factors have caused these fish to grow so large: 这些鱼长得这么大是由 3 个因素造成的：

★ 四级词汇辨析：component，element，factor，ingredient

这一组名词都有"组成部分，成分"的意思。

1) component：零部件，(事物的)组成部分。比如：Tyres，the engine，the body，and the seats are component of a car.

2) element：元素，某特定类型的群体或分子。比如：He belongs to a bad element in this city.

3) factor：因素，要素，侧重指原因。比如：Endurance is an important factor in success in sports.

4) ingredient：原料，成分。比如：Flour，milk，buffer and yeast are some ingredients in bread.

7. …the plentiful supply of food thrown overboard by the crews on the rigs; the total absence of fishing boats around the oil rigs. 钻井平台工作人员向海里抛弃了大量食物；钻井平台周围根本没有捕鱼船只。

● plentiful 就等于大家熟悉的 plenty of，是一个普通用词，其同义词还有 abundant，ample。

● plentiful 的反义词应该是"缺乏的，匮乏的"，可以用上句子里的 an absence of sth.，但更常用的是 be short of sth.。

● 如果一个事物不多不少，刚好足够，则用 enough 或 sufficient 来修饰。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

8. As a result, the fish just eat and eat and grow and grow in the lovely warm water. 这样一来，这些鱼就在温暖的水中吃呀吃，长呀长。

● as a result 是一个表示因果关系的连接词；类似的表达还有 as a result of sth.，比如：The flight was delayed as a result of fog.

语法精析

一、复习 it 强调句(参见 Lesson 58)

二、复习分词性状语(参见 Lesson 49)

三、复习不定式(参见 Lesson 42,44,48)、**动名词**(参见 Lesson 20,44)

四、复习 have 的用法

五、部分倒装(Ⅱ)

倒装在英文中是一种较常见的语法现象。从结构上来讲，倒装句可分为：全部倒装和部分倒装。全部倒装：将整个谓语部分全部放在主语之前。部分倒装：只将谓语的一部分(如助动词或系动词)放在主语前面，其余部分仍在主语之后。例如：

Now comes your turn.（全部倒装）现在该你了。

Could you show me that book?（部分倒装）你能给我看看那本书吗?

(一)句首有否定词或否定短语时，句子要部分倒装

1. 常见的否定词有：never, hardly, scarcely, little, seldom, not, not until, rarely, no sooner... than, nowhere 等。

Nowhere in the world can you find a man who is more foolish than John.

没有什么地方能发现一个比约翰更傻的家伙了。

No sooner had I taken a bath than the bell rang. 我刚洗澡门铃就响了。

Not a word did he say at the meeting. 他在会议上一言不发。

Never have I heard American music played better in a foreign land. 我在外国从来没有听到过演奏得这么好的美国音乐。

Not until he came back did I leave.（**注意：主句中主谓结构部分倒装**）

我直到他回来才离开。

Not only did we lose all our money, but we also came close to losing our lives.

我们不仅仅丢钱还差点搭上性命。

2. 常见的否定短语有：in no way, in no case, at no time, by no means, in no sense, on no account, under no circumstances。这些否定短语常放在句首，表示强调，译为“绝不……”。大家一定要记住它们规定的介词搭配。

In no way do I blame you for what happened. 我绝不会由于发生的事情而责备你。

3. 如果否定词不是修饰整个句子，而只是限定句子主语，则句子不用倒装。

Hardly anyone has seen a man who eats mice/cats.

几乎没有人看见过有谁吃老鼠/猫。

Not only I but also he has been there. 我和他都去那儿了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 91 Three men in a basket

本课重点和难点

- 部分倒装(Ⅲ)

本课词汇

balloon [bə'lu:n] *n.* 气球

royal ['rɔiəl] *adj.* 1. 皇室的，皇家的 2. 一流的，高贵的

spy [spai] *n.* 间谍 *v.* 1. 当间谍，从事间谍活动 2. 在暗中监视 3. 看见，发现 4. 侦察

track [træk] *n.* 行踪

binoculars [bi'nɔkjuləz] *n.* 望远镜

课文详解

1. A pilot noticed a balloon which seemed to be making for a Royal Air Force Station nearby. —个飞行员发现了一只气球，它像是正飞往附近的一个皇家空军基地。

● It seems that...和 seem to do sth. 这两个结构是可以互换的，比方说这一句话就可以转换为 It seemed that a balloon was making for...。类似结构的互换在英语里很常见，比如：

It is said that the earth is round. →The earth is said to be round.

It is reported that the bank was robbed yesterday. →The bank was reported to be robbed yesterday.

● make for...在这里表示 travel towards...，而这个短语还有一个更加常用的含义，表示“促成，推进”，比如：The dialogue between the presidents is believed to make for better communication between the two companies.

● 英国的 Royal Air Force(皇家空军)，简写为 RAF。有趣的是英国有 RAF，也有 Royal Navy(皇家海军)，却没有“皇家陆军”，英国的陆军直接称为 British Army。而 Royal Air Force, Royal Navy 和 British Army 一起便构成了英国政府的 regular forces(常规军)。

2. He informed the station at once...他马上把情况报告给了该基地……

● inform sb. of sth. 。比如：The secretary informed me of the change of time.

3. He said that someone might be spying on the station and the pilot was ordered to keep track of the strange object. 他说可能有人正在对基地进行侦察，因此命令那个飞行员跟踪那个奇怪的飞行物。

● spy 指“间谍”，当动词用时，自然就是“做间谍做的事”，也就是“监视，跟踪”之意。如：The police sent some spies to spy on the enemy's movements.

● track 本身表示“(车辆、人、动物等行走时留下的)踪迹，痕迹”，那么 keep track of 自

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

然有"跟踪"的意思,如:It is highly recommended that teachers use spreadsheets to keep track of students' grades.

一旦跟踪的人/物被跟丢了,则用 lose track of...,如:As soon as the criminal went into the forest,the police lost track of him.

4. He could make out three men in a basket...他看清了有3个人呆在一个筐里……

● make out 表示"辨明,看清",基本等于 discern,如:I could barely make out the traffic signs through the heavy fog.

make out 还可以表示"理解",可以和 understand 互换,如:I'm sorry I could not make out what you were saying.

5. Soon afterwards,the balloon began to descend and it landed near an airfield. 不久,气球开始降落,然后在一个停机坪附近着陆。

● soon afterwards 等于 shortly afterwards(不久之后)。

● descend = de-+-scend,其中前缀 de-表示"向下,降低",如:degrade(降级),decompose(分解),decline(下降,衰落)。

-scend 则表示"爬,蹬",如:ascend(上升),transcend(超越)。

6. The police were called in... 警察被召来了……

● call sb. in 表示"把某人召集起来",如:The boss called in all the staff to have a meeting.

Lesson 6 中还介绍了其他一些与 call 相搭配的短语,如:call out,call up,call for, call off 等。

语法精析

部分倒装(Ⅲ)

(一)"So+形容词或副词"及"to the extent/degree"放在句首,表示程度,句子要倒装

例句:

To such an extent did his health deteriorate that he was forced to retire. 他的健康恶化到那个程度,以至于他不得不退休了。

So diligently does he work that he often forgets to eat and sleep. 他工作非常愉快以至于经常忘记吃饭和休息。

(二)在含有 were,had,should 的虚拟语气中,省去 if,需倒装(详见"虚拟语气"相关内容)

(三)as 引导的让步状语从句需倒装(详见"让步状语从句"相关内容)

例句:

Look as I would up and down,I could see no men at all.

四处环顾之后,我没看见任何人。

Change your mind as you will,you won't gain his support.

如果你随心改变想法,你不会获得他的支持。

(四)"only+状语"置于句首

1. only+表示时间或方式的短语置于句首时需倒装。

Only then did she realize she was wrong. 直到那时她才知错。

Only by working hard can you achieve your goal. 只有努力工作你才能达到目的。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. only 若加各类状语从句置于句首，则注意是主句中的主谓需倒装，而不是从句中的主谓倒装，这一点与 not until 同。

Only when a man's life comes to its end in prosperity dare we pronounce him happy.

只有当一个人的生命在辉煌中结束时，我们才能断言他是幸福的。

3. 若 only 修饰的是句子主语，而非状语时，句子不用倒装。

Only she knew how to deal with this problem. 只有她知道如何处理该问题。

(五)代词 so, neither, nor, no more 置于句首时需倒装

例句：

I can't speak French, nor can he. 我不会说法语，他也一样。

He had no money, nor did he know anyone he could borrow from.

他没有钱，也不知道可以从谁那里借到钱。

(六)让步状语从句的倒装句：be it...

例句：

The business of each day, be it selling goods or shipping them, went quite smoothly.

尽管每天都为卖货运货，但生意倒也平稳。

Be he ever so tired, he continued to go farther. 虽然他非常累，但仍坚持前行。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 92 Asking for trouble

本课重点和难点

- 复习被动结构
- 部分倒装(Ⅳ)

本课词汇

fast [fɑːst] *adj*. 快的,迅速的 *adv*. 1. 快,迅速 2. 紧紧地,牢固地

【词组】fast asleep 熟睡

ladder [ˈlædə] *n*. 梯子

shed [ʃed] *vt*. 1. 脱去,脱落 2. 流出 3. 分散,散发 *n*. 棚,小屋

sarcastic [sɑːˈkæstik] *adj*. 讽刺的,挖苦的

tone [təun] *n*. 音调,音色;腔调,语气;(语)声调,语调

【词组】tone down 放低(声音);tone in 和谐,相配;tone up 使更鲜明,使(身体)处于最好状态

课文详解

1. Asking for trouble 自找麻烦

● 当我们奉劝一个人不要去自找麻烦的时候,我们说 Don't ask for trouble. 或者 Don't look for trouble. 英语里还有一句谚语,表达的也是同样的内容:Let sleeping dogs lie.

2. It must have been about two in the morning when I returned home. 我回到家的时候,大约是凌晨两点了。

● must 在这里表示推测,而后面跟了一个完成时 have done,可见是对发生在过去的动作的推测。情态动词 must 的这一用法在 Lesson 17,19 和 89 中均进行过讲解。

3. ...but she was fast asleep...但是她睡的很熟

● 形容一个人睡的很熟,除了这里的 fast asleep,还可以用 sound asleep。

4. I don't think the windows need cleaning at this time of the night. 我认为不必在夜里这个时候擦窗子吧。

● 大家都知道我们一般说 I don't think...,而很少说 I think...not...,比方中文说"我认为这不是一个好主意",而英语习惯说 I don't think this is a good idea. 这种现象被称之为"否定转移"。这种否定转移是为了使语气更加委婉,便于对方接受,通常使用于一般现在时。其实在口语中不转移的现象也屡见不鲜。比如:I imagine you are not interested in politics. 不过,下列情况通常不用进行否定转移:

1)主句的谓语动词为除一般现在时以外的其他时态。如:He thought that it was not his duty to help Tom.

2)当 think 用在疑问句中时,如:Why do you think we can't change your note?

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

3)当主句中的谓语动词与情态动词连用时，如：The boss must think I am not fit for the job. 老板一定认为我不适合这项工作。

4)当宾语从句中有 no，never，hardly 等否定词时，如：We all think that she is good for nothing.

● need doing 看似主动，但实则表示的是被动语态的意义，表示"(某件事情)需要被做"，等于 need to be done。所以原句中 the windows need cleaning 也可以转换为 the windows need to be cleaned。

5. I immediately regretted answering in the way I did... 我立刻就后悔不该那样回答他的话

● regret doing sth. 和 regret to do sth. 所表达的含义是完全不同的，这一区别作过详细的讲解。英语里面，类似区别的动词还有很多，如：

remember to do 与 remember doing

forget to do 与 forget doing

mean to do 与 mean doing

6. So do I. 我也是如此。

● 当前面的句子提到了一种情况，而这种情况也同样适用于后者时，可用 so(肯定)或者 neither(否定)开头，后面的句子用倒装。

e. g. My brother is happy all day long, and so am I.

None of my classmates likes English, and neither do I.

● 注意 So do I. 和 So I do. 的意思是完全不同的。前者是一个倒装句，表示"我也是如此"，而后者是一个强调句，说明"我的确如此"。

e. g. Mike likes to help others, and so he does.

7. Well, I'd prefer to stay here. 我宁愿待在这里。

● 当两件事情摆在我们面前，我们宁愿做其中的一件事情而不愿意做另一件时，就可以用上 prefer to do sth., rather than do sth.，或者 would rather do sth. than do sth.，这一用法在 Lesson 50 中也出现过。如：I prefer to live alone than marry such a awful guy like him.

语法精析

一、复习被动结构(参见 Lesson 69)

二、部分倒装(Ⅳ)

(一)被强调宾语或表语的前移

例句：

Whether they will ever become future Olympic champions, only time will tell. 他们能否成为未来的奥林匹克冠军，只有让时间来证明。

说明 表语从句"whether..."前置于句首，表示强调，句子主谓语顺序不变。

例句：

The American teachers were surprised that what they called cheating, Polish students called cooperation. 美国教师们很惊讶地发现，在他们看来是作弊的行为，波兰学生却认为是合作。

说明 "Polish students called..."的宾语从句"what they called cheating"前移，表示强调。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(二)频度副词、方式副词开头的句子的倒装

例句：

Many a time have the students in need turned to him for help. 贫困生曾多次向他求助。

Often did he try to persuade me to quit smoking。他时常试图说服我戒烟。

Well do I remember his words and smiles. 他的音容笑貌我记忆犹新。

说明 well 等方式状语，often，many a time，now and again 等频度副词位于句首时，助动词前移，采用部分倒装形式。

(三)so... that 句型的倒装

考题： ①So quickly ________ that what is a dream today may be a reality tomorrow. 技术发展如此之快，今天的梦想也许就是明天的现实。

A. is technology advancing　　B. technology is advancing

C. technology has advanced　　D. is advancing technology

②Such ________ that we had to take into account the shape of the earth while building it. 桥身很长，修建中必须考虑到地球的形状。(代词 such 作表语)

A. the length of the bridge is　　B. is the length of the bridge

C. long is the bridge　　D. long the bridge is

答案解析：①答案为 A；②为 B。"so/such... that..."结构中，若 so/such 位于句首，用部分倒装结构："so＋形容词/副词＋be 动词或助动词＋主语"或"such＋be＋主语"。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 93 A noble gift

本课重点和难点

● 部分倒装(V)

本课词汇

noble ['nəubl] *adj.* 崇高的

【用法】noble 辉煌的，壮丽的：用于指外表宏伟壮丽，使人难忘；用于人指品质高尚，使人敬佩。

monument ['mɔnjumənt] *n.* 纪念碑，纪念馆

statue ['stætjuː] *n.* 塑像，雕像

liberty ['libəti] *n.* 1. 自由，自由权 2. 冒昧，失礼 3. [复]特许权，特权

【词组】at liberty(指人)自由的；获许可的；不受限制或支配的

【辨析】liberty 意为自由，解放，与 freedom 同义，但指从奴役、关押中重获自由。有时指集体的自由，做自己想做的事的权利。

the Statue of Liberty 自由女神像

present [pri'zent] *v.* 赠送

sculptor ['skʌlptə] *n.* 雕刻家

actual ['æktʃuəl] *adj.* 实际的，现实的

copper ['kɔpə] *n.* 1. 铜 2. 铜币，铜制品

support [sə'pɔːt] *vt.* 1. 支持，拥护 2. 支撑 3. 供养，维持 *n.* 1. 支持 2. 支撑 3. 支撑者

framework ['freimwək] *n.* 构架，结构，组织

transport [træns'pɔːt] *vt.* 运输 *v.* 运输

【用法】transport 狂喜，激动：指因高兴或愤怒而产生的一阵强烈的情绪。反义词：misery(痛苦)。

site [sait] *n.* 场所，地点，现场，基地，多指特定的场所，地点

pedestal ['pedistl] *n.* 底座

课文详解

1. The great statue, which was designed by the sculptor Auguste Bartholdi, took ten years to complete. 这座由雕刻家奥古斯特·巴索尔地设计的巨大雕像用了10年的时间才完成。

● 这个句子包含了一个 which 引导的非限制性的定语从句，而其主句 The great statue took ten years to complete. 可以换成我们熟悉的 It takes sb. time to do sth. 的结构，即 It took the sculptor ten years to complete the great statue.

● 同样是表示“花费”，除了 take 之外，cost 和 spend 也有“花费”的意思，只是这三个同义词在用法上稍有不同。还是这句话，如果用 cost 来替换，则是 Completing the great statue cost the sculptor ten years. 如果用 spend，则为 The sculptor spent ten years completing the great statue.

★ 四级词汇辨析：statue，status，stature，statute

这四个单词仅仅是看上去很相似，意思相差非常之大，它们属于同形词的比较。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

1) statue:雕像

2) status:指的是一个人的"身份,地位",比如:The celebrity has a relatively high social status.

3) stature:指一个人的"身高,身材",比如:19% of girls with apparently unexplained short stature had Turner syndrome.

4) statute:则表示"法令,条例"的意思。

四级考单词有三种很常见的考法:一是同形词的考查,只需要考生能够认识这些单词即可;二是同义词的考查,考生不但需要认识这些单词,还得辨别他们之间意义上的细微差别;三是固定短语搭配的考查,这需要有一个长期的积累。

2. The actual figure was made of copper supported by a metal framework which had been especially constructed by Eiffel. 这座雕像的主体部分是用铜做的,并且由艾菲尔特意制作的金属框架支撑着。

● be made of, be made from, be made in, 和 be made by 的区别已经在 Lesson 10 中讲解过了,这里不作说明。

★ 四级词汇辨析:especially, particularly, specially

这些副词均可表示"特别地"之意。

1) especially 的形容词 especial 强调特别的,不同于普通的东西,有"主要的,突出的"的意思。其反义词为 ordinary。如:I feel especially interested in the project. 我对这个方案特别感兴趣。

2) particularly 基本可以与 especially 换用,但更强调以一种不寻常的方式来突出某一事物的个性或独特之处,如:These books will be particularly helpful to those who wish to improve spoken English.

3) specially 的意思则是"专门的,特意的",其反义词为 generally。如:I came here specially to ask you for advice.

3. ...the great monument has been a symbol of liberty for the millions of people...这座伟大的纪念碑对于千百万人来说就成为了自由的象征。

● 当 A 象征着 B 时,我们可以说 A be a symbol of B,也可以说:A symbolize B; A stand for B 或 A represent B。

e. g. Red roses are a symbol of love.

● Millions of...千百万的……,类似的表达还有 thousands of, hundreds of, scores of, dozens of 等。

语法精析

部分倒装(Ⅴ)

(一)复合宾语的倒装

例句:

Who has torn open the letter from my lover? 谁撕开了我的恋人给我的信?

He made quite clear his attitude toward the work accidents that happened recently in the factory. 他表明了自己对工厂最近发生的事故的态度。

说明 动词复合宾语的正常语序是"动词+宾语+宾补",有时宾语较长,而宾补又相对较短,为保持句子平衡,常将宾补提于宾语之前。

www.TopSage.com

(二)比较从句中的倒装

考题：The molecules of gases move more freely than ________. 气体的分子比液体与固体的分子更活跃。

A. do liquids and solids
B. liquids and solids do
C. do those of liquids and solids
D. move those of liquids and solids

答案解析：C。在 as，than 比较状语从句中，若主语较长，常将助动词或 be 动词前置于从句主语前，构成部分倒装结构。如：

He was disappointed at his test results，as were his friends and relatives. 他对自己的考试成绩很失望，他的亲戚朋友也同样失望。

注意：若比较从句中的主语是代词，一般不倒装。如：

The railroad industry couldn't grow as large as it did without steel. 没有钢，铁路工业不可能发展到目前这么大的规模。

(三)表示祝愿的句子的倒装

例句：

May you have a safe trip！祝你一路顺风！

说明 情态动词 may 位于句首引起部分倒装，表示祝愿。

(四)"should..."条件句

例句：

You must make sure you are not the one who will be in trouble should things start to go wrong. 一旦出现任何差错，你必须确保遇到麻烦的不是你。（=...，if things should start to...）

Should you see my parents，tell her I am quite well. 如果你碰见我父母，告诉他们我一切都好。（=If you should see my parents，tell...）

说明 在 if 真实条件句中，谓语动词有时用"should＋*v.*"形式，表示"推定"条件，这种推定条件句，可省去 if，将 should 前置于句首，构成部分倒装结构。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 94 Future champions

本课重点和难点

● 全部倒装

本课词汇

instruct [in'strʌkt] *vt.* 教授

Los Angeles [lɔs 'ændʒiləs]（地名）洛杉矶

reluctant [ri'lʌktənt] *adj.* 不情愿的，勉强的

【词组】be reluctant to do sth. 不愿做某事

weight [weit] *n.* 1. 重量，体重 2. 砝码

【词组】by weight 按重量计算；carry weight 具有重要性，有影响；gain weight 增加体重，发胖；lose weight 减轻体重，减肥

underwater [ˌʌndə'wɔːtə] *adj.* 在水下的

tricycle ['traisikl] *n.* 三轮车

compete [kəm'piːt] *v.* 1. 竞争 2. 比赛

【词组】compete against 竞争；compete in a race 参加赛跑；compete with/against sb. for sth. 为某物与某人竞争

yard [jɑːd] *n.* 1. 尺码 2. 院子，场地

【辨析】yard 指与房屋连接的栽有花草、树木的庭院或不种花木但铺有砖石水泥的院子；garden 指在房子四周以墙、栅栏围起来长有树木、花草的土地或房屋四周种有花木的大块土地。

gasp [gɑːsp] *vi.* 喘气

gasp for air 气喘

课文详解

1. ...children can be instructed in swimming at a very early age. 儿童在很小的时候就可以开始学习游泳。

★ 四级词汇辨析：teach，instruct，educate，tutor

1) teach：是使用最广泛、最普通的词，可用来指任何传授知识或技巧的行为。

2) instruct：与 teach 的含义很接近，但语体较正式。此外，instruct 更强调系统、详细、精心地传播知识，如：The professor instructed the freshmen in the rudiments of music theory.

3) educate：主要指正式的系统的学校教育，如：The unemployment rate of well-educated people is rising in China.

4) tutor：则侧重进行个别性的教学或课外辅导，如：I have been well paid for my tutoring services, but I have also derived particular pleasure from receiving "thank you" letters from

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

past pupils who have achieved success as a result of my tuition.

2. ...children become expert at holding their breath under water. 孩子们已经能熟练地在水下屏住呼吸了。

● 一个人擅长做某事,可以用 be good at...或者 do well in...,而如果是十分擅长,甚至可以说是精通一件事,是这方面的行家,就可以说 be expert at...或者 be proficient in...,be adept at...。

● hold one's breath 是"屏住呼吸",类似的表达还有:take a deep breath, out of breath 等。

3. Babies of two months old do not appear to be reluctant to enter the water. 两个月的婴儿似乎并未显得不愿意入水。

● appear to do sth. 可以和 seem to do sth. 进行互换,均表示"看起来似乎……",这一用法在 Lesson 43 中作过讲解,但是它们的用法还不尽相同。

★ 四级词汇辨析:appear, seem, look

1)appear:强调外表上给人某种印象,有时含实质上并非如此的意思。appear 后面可以接不定式或者从句,即 appear to do 或 It appears that...,如:He appears to know more than he really does.

2)seem:暗示有一定根据的判断,这种判断往往接近事实。其用法与 appear 基本相似,唯一的不同在于 seem 可以和 as if 连用,即 It seems as if...,如:It seems as if he were in a day-dream.

3)look:则着重由视觉得出的印象,其用法和前两个单词很不一样,一般只有 It looks as if...,如:He looks as if he is worded about something.

● be reluctant to do sth. 说明做事情十分不情愿,如果是心甘情愿地去做一件事情,则用 be willing to do sth. 来表达。

4. It is not long before they are so accustomed to swimming that they can pick up weights from the floor of the pool. 很快他们就适应了游泳,而且能拣起池底的物品。

● It is not long before...这一结构在 Lesson 75 中已经作过详细的讲解了。

● ...so accustomed to...that...这是一个结果状语从句。

● be accustomed to doing sth. 等于 Lesson 31,55 中学到的 be/get used to doing sth.,值得注意的是这里的 to 是一个介词,后面要求使用动名词,类似的用法还有 object to doing, prefer doing to doing, stick to doing 等。

5. Many pedal their tricycles, but most of them prefer to push or drag them. 很多孩子用脚蹬车,但多数孩子更愿意推或者拉着三轮车。

● 在 Lesson 69 中 pedal 是一个名词,指"踏板",而在这里这个名词被活用成了动词。

● prefer to do sth. 这一结构我们在 Lesson 50,92 中曾经作过讲解。

6. Whether they will ever become future Olympic champions, only time will tell. 他们将来是否能成为奥运冠军,这只能由时间来作出回答。

● whether 引导的实际上是个宾语从句,作 tell 的宾语。这里之所以把它放在句首仅仅是为了强调。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

语法精析

全部倒装

全部倒装就是把整个谓语部分放在主语之前。常见于下列几种情况：

1)把副词 so 放在句首，表示前面所说的情况也适用于另一个人或物。

Tom works hard, and so do I.

2)把 neither, nor 放在句首，表示前面的否定内容也适用于另一个人或物。

I cannot understand a single word of French. And neither does Larry.

3)在以地点副词 here, there, 方位副词 out, in, up, down, 或时间副词 now, then 等开头的句子里，需要倒装，以示强调。

Here comes the bus.（注意：主语为代词时，不能全部倒装。如：Look! There they come.）

4)当表示地点的介词短语放于句首时。（注意：谓语多为 be, lie, sit, stand, come, walk 等不及物动词倒装时不需要助动词。）

Under the tree lies a dog.

5)表语置于句首时，倒装结构为"表语＋系动词＋主语"。

Present at the meeting were Professor Smith, Sir Hugh and many other celebrities.

(一)以介词开头的地点状语置于句首时

例句：

From the window came sound of music. 窗外传来了音乐。

On the ground lies a man whose leg is broken. 地上躺着一个腿断了的人。

By his side sat his faithful dog. 他旁边坐着他那忠实的狗。

Just remember, in the winter far beneath the bitter snow, lies the seed that with the sun's love in the spring, becomes the rose. 记住，冬天在冰雪下躺着的种子，将在春天太阳的照耀下变成玫瑰。

(二)副词 out, in, along, then, now, up, down, away, here, there 等位于句首时

例句：

In came the teacher, books under arm. 老师进来了，手里拿着一本书。

When Greek meets Greek, then comes the tug of war. 两雄相遇，其斗必烈。

There goes the bell. 铃声响了。

Down came the hammer and out flew the sparks. 铁锤一落，火星四射。

(三)such 位于句首时

例句：

Such will be my future dreams. 这就是我将来的梦想。

Such is my whole story. 这就是我全部的故事。

Such were his dreams as a boy. 这就是他孩提时的梦想。

(四)表语置于句首时

例句：

Gone are the days when we had no food to eat。几天过去了，我们没有食物了。

Every one of us has in him a continent of undiscovered character. Blessed is he who acts the Columbus to his own soul. 每个人都有未经发现的品性，能够像哥伦布那样探索自己灵魂的新大陆的人，是有福气的。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 95 A fantasy

本课重点和难点

● 疑问句种类

本课词汇

fantasy ['fæntəsi] *n.* 幻想,想人非非

ambassador [æm'bæsədə] *n.* 大使

【词组】the British ambassador to the U.S. 英驻美大使

Escalopia [eskə'ləpiə](虚构的国名)艾斯卡罗比亚

frightful ['fraitful] *adj.* 可怕的

fire extinguisher *n.* 灭火器

drily ['draili] *adv.* 冷淡地

embassy ['embəsi] *n.* 大使馆

heaven ['hevn] *n.* 天国

basement ['beismənt] *n.* 地下室

definitely ['definitli] *adv.* 一定,明确地

post [pəust] *vt.* (出布告)公开谴责

shot [ʃɔt] *v.* shoot 的过去式,过去分词 *n.* 1. 开枪,射击 2. 投篮 3. 弹丸,炮弹,子弹

课文详解

1. He looked pale and his clothes were in a frightful state. 他面色苍白,衣服也搞得不成样子。

● look pale 是一个系表结构,我们曾经在 Lesson 1 和 Lesson 75 中均作过讲解。

★ 四级词汇辨析:state、condition、situation

这三个词均可表示"情况,状况"之意。

1)state 和 condition 最普通,在多数情况下可以通用。两者的区别在于 state 表示"状况、情况"时,常用单数形式,而 condition 表示"情况,情形"时,常用复数形式。如:Often, a person in a manic state exercises poor or self-destructive judgment. 或者 The working conditions made concentration impossible.

2)situation:则侧重一定时期内的总的形势,如:The situation is fine both at home and abroad. 此外,situation 还有"地点,位置"的意思,如:The situation of the camp was chosen with respect to its healthfulness and its nearness to the city.

★ 四级词汇辨析:frightful, frightened, frightening

这三个词虽然都是从 fright 衍生出来的,但是意思完全不同。

1)frightful:基本可以和 terrible 互换。

e.g. I got a low score for my composition partly because of my frightful handwriting.

2)frightened 和 frightening 才表示"害怕"的意思,前者用来形容人"感到害怕的",而后者用来修饰事物,表示"令人害怕的"。

e.g. The little girl was frightened at the frightening dog.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. How did your clothes get into such a mess? 你的衣服怎么搞的一塌糊涂?

● get into a mess 或者 be in a mess 均表示"把……弄乱,把……弄砸",其反义词为 get...in order,在 Lesson 52 中作过讲解。

3. University students set the Embassy on fire this morning. 今天上午大学生们放火点着了大使馆。

● set sth. on fire 表示"放火烧……",如果某物着火了,我们则说 sth. catch fire 或者 sth. be on fire,比方说本课课文第 11 行"He thought I was on fire"。

4. Good heavens! 天哪!

● 我们曾在 Lesson 2 中学过一个 Dear me! 包括大家熟悉的 Oh,my god! 这些感叹词的意思都大同小异。其实,西方人在说英语的时候,经常使用一些五花八门的感叹词。

比方说 Oh, my gosh!,它和 Oh, my God! 用法几乎一样,有时候简略为 Gosh! 如:Gosh! Would you stop screaming like that! People try to study here.

再比如 Woops! 这个词通常是在讲话的人不小心说错了什么,或者做错了什么事情时用的。比如说,一个孩子洗碗的时候不慎打破了一个盘子,他可能就会说 Woops! I accidentally deleted all the files in this folder.

或者当你被什么东西刮碰了一下,又或是被什么东西伤害了,这个时候用 Ouch! 就是最好的选择之一了。如:Ouch! I was bitten by a bug!

英语里的感叹词的确有很多很多,我们要有意识的多去使用一些感叹词,因为大多数美国人都愿意把情绪表现在脸上,他们不喜欢 poker face 或 stone face,觉得这两种人要不就是很不友好,要不就是情绪不好。不过,凡事都不能过头,感叹词也千万不要滥用,用的过多,会给人一种过分 emotional 的感觉。

5. ...that fool, Horst, aimed a fire extinguisher at me. 那个傻瓜霍斯特把灭火器对准了我。

● aim 本身表示"目标",这里的 aim at...则表示"瞄准,针对",如:He aimed his gun at the deadly snake.

语法精析

疑问句种类

(一)一般疑问句

一般疑问句具有以下特征:(1)需要用 yes 或 no 来回答;(2)语序一般为:助动词+主语+谓语?

Is this seat taken? 这位置有人坐吗?(I'll take this seat if you don't mind.)

Have you been there? 你到过那儿吗?

Yes, I have. /No, I haven't. /No, never. 是的。/不,没有。/不,从没有过。

(二)特殊疑问句

其特点是:(1)用来对句子中某一特殊部分提问,或者说用来对句中某一具体内容提问。总是涉及 who, what, which, where, when, why, how 其中之一;(2)其语序是:疑问词+一般疑问句,或作主语的疑问词+谓语动词。

What time is convenient for you? 你什么时间方便?

How late are you open? 你们营业到几点?

(三)选择疑问句

其特点是:(1)提供两种或两种以上情形供对方选择;(2)不用 yes 或 no 来回答。

Do you like tea or (do you like) coffee? 你要茶还是咖啡?

(四)反意疑问句(参见 Lesson 87)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 96 The dead return

本课重点和难点

- 复习 Lesson 95 的句型
- 反意疑问句的其他类型

本课词汇

festival [ˈfestəvəl] *n.* 节日，喜庆日

【辨析】festival 是指共同欢乐的节日，如圣诞节、春节，又如 the Cannes Film Festival 戛纳电影节。holiday 和 vacation 均指假日、休假日、假期（常用复数），英国用 holiday，美国用 vacation。

lantern [ˈlæntən] *n.* 灯笼

spectacle [ˈspektəkl] *n.* 景象，壮观

课文详解

1. This festival is a cheerful occasion, for on this day, the dead are said to return to their homes and they are welcomed by the living. 这个节日是个欢乐的日子，因为在这一天，据说死去的人要回到他们的家里来，活着的人则对他们表示欢迎。

- be said to do 与 It is said that...的互换参见 Lesson 58。
- the dead 和 the living，都是"the+形容词"的结构，表示"一类人"（参见 Lesson 54）。
- living 和 alive 的区别参见 Lesson 67。

2. Specially-made lanterns are hung outside each house to help the dead to find their way. 特制的灯笼挂在各家的门外，为的是帮助亡灵看清道路。

- find one's way 表示"找到路"，而 find one's way out 的意思为"寻找到解决问题的办法"。

e. g. Whenever Tony comes across problems, he always tries to find his way out instead of escaping from them.

3. ...food that had been laid out for the dead is thrown into a river or into the sea as it is considered unlucky for anyone living to eat it. 人们便把为死者摆放的食品扔进河中或海里，因为人们认为活着的人吃了这些东西是不吉利的。

- 该句的主干为 food is thrown into a river or into the sea，主句中包含了一个 that 引导的定语从句修饰先行词 food，后面 as 引导的是表示原因的状语从句。
- 动词 consider 既意为"考虑，思考"，又意为"以为，认为"，但二者的用法不尽相同。

1) consider 作"考虑，思考"解时，主要用法如下：

a) consider 后可接名词、代词或宾语从句。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

e. g. Please consider my suggestion.
请考虑我的建议。
Have you considered how you could get the help needed?
你曾考虑如何得到所需要的帮助吗?

b)consider 后可接"疑问词+不定式"结构。

e. g. We have to consider where to go for our holidays.
我们得考虑到什么地方去度假。
They haven't considered when to hold the sports meeting.
他们还没有考虑什么时间召开运动会。

c)consider 后接动词-ing 形式。

e. g. We are considering going to Canada next summer.
我们正考虑明年夏天去加拿大。
He is considering changing his present job.
他正在考虑调换目前的工作。

2)consider 作"以为,认为"解时,后面除接宾语从句外,还可接:

a)复合宾语(宾语和宾语补足语)。

e. g. We consider him the best man for the job.
我们认为他是做这项工作的最佳人选。
They considered me too young to join the army.
他们认为我太小,不能参军。

b)"consider + it+形容词/名词+不定式"结构,在该结构中,it 为形式宾语,真正的宾语是后面的不定式。

e. g. Do you consider it wise to go there by yourself?
你认为你自己去那里明智吗?
We consider it our duty to help you.
我们认为帮助你是我们的责任。

4. In towns that are near the sea, the tiny lanterns which had been hung in the streets the night before, are placed into the water when the festival is over. 在靠海的城镇中,头天夜里挂在大街小巷的小灯笼在节后就放在了水里。

● 该句的主句为 the tiny lanterns are placed into the water,主句中有一个 which 引导的定语从句,主句的后面还有一个 when 引导的时间状语从句。

● place 在这里作动词"放置",如:place an advertisement in the newspaper(在报纸上登上广告)。在此词根的基础上,稍加变化则有 replace(把……放回原位,取代),如:Can I replace the hard drive with another, larger drive? 或者 displace(移动……的位置,取代)如:Coal has been displaced by natural gas as a major source of energy.

语法精析

一、复习 Lesson 95 的句型

二、反意疑问句的其他类型

(一)usedn't 和 didn't 的反意疑问句

陈述句为"there used to be"结构时,反意问句的谓语动词用 usedn't 或 didn't 均可。例如:

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

There used to be a tower at the foot of the hill, didn't there(usedn't there)?

从前在山脚下有一座塔，是吗？

提示 ①It's the first time that they have visited the school, isn't it?（这是他们第一次参观那所学校，是吗？本句中 that 引导的从句为定语从句）②One can't have too much knowledge, can one?（Can you?）（一个人的知识越多越好，不是吗？陈述句的主语是 one 时，反意问句的主语在正式场合用 one，非正式场合用 you）

（二）need 和 dare 的反意疑问句

陈述句中含有 need 或 dare 时，要根据它们是用作情态动词还是行为动词来确定反意问句的形式。比如：

You needn't go there today, need you?

你今天不必去那里了，是吗？（need 作情态动词）

You need to borrow some money, don't you?

你需要借一些钱，是吗？（need 作行为动词）

He dare climb up the tree, daren't he? 他敢爬上那棵树，是吗？（dare 作情态动词）

He dares to climb up the tree, doesn't he? 他敢爬上那棵树，是吗？（dare 作行为动词）

（三）these 和 those 的反意疑问句

these 或 those 在陈述句中作主语时，反意问句的主语用 they。例如：

These are mine, aren't they? 这些是我的，是吗？

Those(books) will be sent to you, won't they? 那些（书）将会寄给你的，是吗？

（四）陈述句肯定式＋反意疑问句肯定式

有一种反意疑问句，陈述句用肯定式，反意问句也用肯定式，这种结构表示说话人对所陈述的事情或情况感到没有把握，希望对方加以证实。比如：

He has given up smoking, hasn't he?
他已经戒烟了，是吗？（一般性提问）
He has given up smoking, has he? 他是不是已经戒烟了？
（对自己的判断感到没有把握，希望对方加以证实）

He is a fine worker, isn't he? 他是一位优秀工人，是吗？
He is a fine worker, is he? 他是不是一位优秀工人？
（希望对方加以肯定或否定）

提示 注意下面几个反意疑问句的表示法：

What a fine day, isn't it?（多好的一天啊！感叹句，相当于 what a fine day it is, isn't it?）

What good books, aren't they?（多好的书啊！感叹句，相当于 What good books they are, aren't they?）

I want to have a rest, may I?（我想休息一下，行吗？反义问句也可用“O. K. ?”）

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

《新概念英语(第二册)》课后习题答案

Lesson 1 A private conversation

Key to Summary writing

The writer went to the theatre last week. He did not enjoy the play. A young man and a young woman were sitting behind him. They were talking loudly. The writer could not hear the actors. He turned round. "I can't hear a word!" he said. "This is a private conversation!" the young man said. (55 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A 1 (1) got (2) very angry (3).
I (1) could not hear (2) the actors (3).
I (1) turned round (2).
I (1) looked at (2) the man and the woman (3) angrily (4).
They (1) did not pay (2) any attention (3).
In the end (6), I (1) could not bear (2) it (3).
I (1) turned round (2) again (6).
"I (1) can't hear (2) a word (3)!"
I (1) said (2) angrily (4).
"It (1) is (2) none of your business (3)".
the young man (1) said (2) rudely (4).
"This (1) is (2) a private conversation (3)!"

B 1 I enjoyed the film yesterday.
2 I listened to the news carefully.
3 The man played the piano well.
4 The children played games quietly in their room yesterday.
5 He opened the door quietly.
6 He left immediately.
7 He planted a tree in the corner of the garden.
8 He read the letter quickly in his office before lunch.
9 I borrowed a book from the library this morning.
10 The cook spoilt the soup.
11 We stay at home on Sundays.
12 There are a lot of people at the bus stop.
13 The little boy ate greedily an apple in the kitchen this morning.
14 She draws beautifully.
15 I like music very much.
16 They built a new school in our village last year.
17 The match ended at four o'clock.
18 She received a letter from her brother last week.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 c 3 b 4 d 5 c 6 a 7 d
8 b 9 a 10 c 11 c 12 c

Key to Sentence structure

A young man and a young woman were sitting behind me.

Lesson 2 Breakfast or lunch?

Key to Summary writing

The writer always gets up late on Sundays. He got up late last Sunday. Then his aunt Lucy telephoned. She had arrived by train. She was coming to see him. "I'm still having breakfast," he said. His aunt was very surprised. It was one o'clock. (45 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A 1 are playing... play... is kicking... is running
2 "What *are* you *doing*?" my landlady asked. "*I'm leaving*, Mrs. Lynch," I answered. "Why *are* you *leaving*?" she asked.... "friends never *come* to visit me... I frequently *go* to bed... I rarely *listen*... I always *feel* cold..."

B 1 She *rarely* answers my letters.
2 We *never* work after six o'clock.
3 The shops *always* close on Saturday afternoons.
4 Do you *always* go to work by car?
5 Our teacher *frequently* collects our exercise books.
6 We *sometimes* spend our holidays abroad.
7 I *often* buy CDs.
8 Do you *ever* buy CDs?

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 What a wonderful garden (this is)!
2 What a surprise (this is)!
3 What a lot of trouble he is causing!
4 What wonderful actors (they are)!
5 What a hard-working woman (she is)!
6 What a tall building (it is)!
7 What a terrible film (it is)!
8 What a clever boy you are!
9 What a pretty girl (she is)!
10 What a strange guy (he is)!

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 d 3 c 4 c 5 a 6 b 7 b
8 a 9 d 10 c 11 d 12 b

Key to Sentence structure

I've *just arrived by train*.

Lesson 3 Please send me a card

Key to Summary writing

Postcards always spoil the writer's holidays. He spent his holidays in Italy last summer. He thought about postcards every day. He did not send any cards to

www.TopSage.com

his friends. He bought thirty-seven cards on the last day. He stayed in his room all day. He did not write any cards. (50 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *went* (1.1); *visited* (1.2); *sat* (1.2); *taught* (1.2); *lent*; *read* (1.3); *did not understand*; *thought* (1.4); *passed* (1.5); *did not send* (1.5); *made*; *got up* (1.6); *bought* (1.7); *spent* (1.7); *did not write* (1.8)

C ...Roy *died* last year... *left* me... *spent* a lot of money... *bought* one or two... never *went* to the cinema... *stayed* at home... *listened* to music... often *lent* CDs... they *kept* them... *lost* many CDs...

Key to Special difficuties Exercises

1 He paid some money to the shopkeeper.
2 He handed the prize to me.
3 The waiter brought the man a bottle of beer.
4 He sold me all his booKey structures.
5 The shop assistant found me some curtain material.
6 He did a big favour for me.
7 She showed her new hat to her husband.
8 She promised the finder a reward.
9 He gave some advice to his son.
10 His uncle left some money to/for him.
11 He is teaching us English.
12 I bought you this bunch of flowers.
13 Bring me that book please.
14 He offered a cigarette to me.
15 Read the first paragraph to me.
16 I've ordered you some soup.
17 I owe a lot of money to him.
18 Pass your father the mustard.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 a 3 c 4 a 5 d 6 b 7 c
8 c 9 b 10 a 11 b 12 b

Key to Sentence structure

I did not send any *cards to my friends*.

Lesson 4 An exciting trip

Key to Summary writing

The writer has just received a letter from his brother, Tim. Tim is an engineer. He has been in Australia for six months. He has already visited many places. Now he is in Alice Springs. Tim has never been abroad before. He is enjoying his trip very much. (48 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A 1 I have *just* had breakfast.
2 He has been in prison *for six months*.
3 The police have not caught the thief *yet*.
4 You have (*already*) asked that question three times (*already*).
5 Have you *ever* been to Switzerland?
6 I have *never* been to Switzerland.
7 He is a wonderful runner. He has broken two records *so far*.
8 I haven't seen George *lately*.

C 1 He has just *left the house*.
2 He has *just had breakfast*.
3 She *has just written a letter*.
4 My sister *has just turned on the radio*.
5 My mother *has just made the bed*.
6 She *has just bought a new hat*.

D 1 He hasn't *washed the dishes yet*.
2 She *hasn't made the beds yet*.
3 He *hasn't combed his hair yet*.
4 She *hasn't swept the carpet yet*.
5 We *haven't read "Macbeth" yet*.

E 1 Have *you seen the new play at "The Globe" yet*?
2 *Have you taken your holidays yet*?
3 *Have you read this book yet*?
4 *Have you done your homework yet*?
5 *Have you finished your work yet*?

Key to Special difficuties Exercises

1 received 2 received 3 took
4 taken 5 take

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 b 3 a 4 b 5 b 6 a 7 c
8 b 9 c 10 a 11 c 12 c

Lesson 5 No wrong numbers

Key to Summary writing

Mr. Scott has opened his second garage in Pinhurst. His first garage is in Silbury. Silbury is five miles away. Mr. Scott cannot get a telephone for his new garage. He has bought twelve pigeons. They carry messages from one garage to the other in three minutes. (47 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A What happened: *carried* (1.4); *covered* (1.5)
What has happened: *has just bought* (1.1); *has just bought* (1.3~4); *has sent* (1.6); *has begun* (1.8)

C 1 What *did* you *buy*...?
2 he *has* never *lent*...
3 *Have* you *burnt*...?
4 He *fought*...
5 They *have* already *left*.
6 When *did* you *lose*...?

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

7 *Did* you *listen*...?

8 We *have* just *won*...

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

A 1 On the way

2 in the way

3 By the way

4 in this/a way

5 in the way

B 1 There is *a spare* wheel in the back of the car.

2 I always go on excursions in my *spare* time.

3 "Have you any old clothes *to spare*?" he asked.

4 The guest slept in *our spare* room.

5 "*Spare* me!" begged the prisoner.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 a 3 d 4 b 5 c 6 d 7 a

8 b 9 c 10 b 11 a 12 d

Key to Sentence structure

Pinhurst is only five miles from Silbury, *but* Mr. Scott cannot get a telephone for his new garage, *so* he has just bought twelve pigeons.

Lesson 6 Percy Buttons

Key to Summary writing

The writer has just moved to a house in Bridge Street. A beggar knocked at her door yesterday. He sang songs. The writer gave him a meal and a glass of beer in return for this. The beggar's name is Percy Buttons. He calls at every house in the street once a month. (53 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A some meat, a desk, some tobacco, a tin of beans, a comb, a city, a /some cloth, some oil, a bottle of beer, a day, a word, a student, some sugar, some rain, an orange, a/some rubber

D (sample answers)

1 I found an old coin in the garden.

2 I put some sugar in my tea.

3 I cut some wood for a/the fire.

4 I bought a newspaper yesterday.

5 I made some coffee.

6 I like the curtains in this room.

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

A 1 out 2 over 3 off 4 at

B 1 *knocked him out*

2 *knock off*

3 *knocked 20% off* the price...

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 a 3 c 4 d 5 d 6 a 7 d

8 a 9 b 10 a 11 d 12 a

Key to Sentence structure

He calls at every house in the street once a month and always asKey structures for a meal and a glass of beer.

Lesson 7 Too late

Key to Summary writing

Detectives were waiting at the airport all morning. They were expecting a valuable parcel of diamonds from South Africa. Two men took the parcel into the Customs House after the arrival of the plane. Two detectives opened it. The parcel was full of stones and sand. (46 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A detectives *were waiting* (1. 1); They *were expecting* (1. 2); detectives *were waiting* (1. 5); others *were waiting* (1. 6); two detectives *were keeping guard* (11. 7~8)

B 1 When the plane arrived, some of the detectives were waiting inside the main building while others were waiting on the airfield.

2 When two of the detectives opened the parcel, two others were keeping guard at the door.

C (sample answers)

1 I was getting into my bath when you telephoned me.

2 I was reading *Hamlet* when you saw me in the library this morning.

3 I was saying that you must see the new film when you interrupted me.

D 1 was leaving... arrived

2 worked/was working... was sitting/sat

3 was walking... met

4 was reading... heard

5 was preparing... set/was setting

6 dropped... spoke

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 He gave all his booKey structures *away*.

2 She woke the children *up* early this morning.

4 They cut the king's head *off*.

5 Put your hat and coat *on*.

7 Help me to lift this table *up*.

8 Take your shoes *off* and put your slippers *on*.

11 They have pulled the old building *down*.

12 Make your mind *up*.

14 She threw all those old newspapers *away*.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 c 3 c 4 d 5 a 6 c 7 d

8 a 9 c 10 b 11 a 12 b

www.TopSage.com

Key to Sentence structure

Two men took the parcel off the plane and carried it into the Customs House.

Lesson 8 The best and the worst

Key to Summary writing

Joe Sanders has the best garden in town. He wins "The Nicest Garden Competition" each year. Bill Frith also has a fine garden. Joe's is better. The writer's garden is terrible. He always wins a prize for the worst garden in the town. (43 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A 1 Mary's handwriting is *worse than* Jane's.
2 Caroline's handwriting is *worse than* Mary's and Jane's.
3 Caroline's dress is/was *more expensive than* Jane's.
4 Mary's dress is/was *more expensive than* Jane's and Caroline's.

B ... has *the most beautiful* garden in our town... "*The Nicest* Garden Competition"... garden is *larger than* Joe's... worKey structures *harder than* Joe and grows *more* flowers and vegetables... garden is *more interesting*... for *the worst* garden in the town!

D 1 in 2 of 3 of 4 in

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

A 1 believes 2 was 3 tries

B Sentences 2, 3 and 5

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 b 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 c 7 b
8 b 9 a 10 d 11 b 12 b

Key to Sentence structure

Bill Frith's *garden is larger than Joe's*.

Lesson 9 A cold welcome

Key to Summary writing

We went to the Town Hall on New Year's Eve. There were a lot of people there. The Town Hall clock would strike twelve in twenty minutes' time. It stopped at five to twelve. It refused to welcome the New Year. Then the crowd began to laugh and sing. (49 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A 1 We went to the Town Hall on Wednesday evening/New Year's Eve.
2 The clock would strike twelve in twenty minutes' time.
3 The clock stopped at five to twelve.

B 1 in 2 On 3 during/in 4 in 5 at 6 on...in 7 in 8 at...in 9 until

C (sample answer)
1 The match will begin at 3 o'clock.
2 They bought their house in 1980.
3 The shop is closed from one till two.
4 The children went to school in the morning.
5 He'll finish school in two years' time.
6 Let's go for a walk in the evening.
7 He went to church on Sunday.

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

A 1 No, I haven't any/have no money.
2 No, I didn't go anywhere/went nowhere in the holidays.
3 No, I didn't buy anything/bought nothing this morning.
4 No, there wasn't anybody/was nobody present when the accident happened.

B He has no hobbies. He goes nowhere. He sees nobody. He is interested in nothing — except food!

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 b 3 d 4 a 5 a 6 b 7 b
8 d 9 b 10 b 11 d 12 c

Key to Sentence structure

On *Wednesday evening, we went to the Town Hall*.

Lesson 10 Not for jazz

Key to Summary writing

We own an old clavichord. It was made in 1681. My grandfather bought the instrument many years ago. A visitor damaged it recently. She tried to play jazz on it! She broke two of the strings. A friend of my father's is repairing it now. (45 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A 1 Our old musical instrument is called a clavichord.
2 It was made in Germany.
3 It is kept in the living room.
4 It was bought many years ago.
5 It was damaged recently.
6 Two of the strings were broken.
7 My father was shocked.
8 We aren't allowed to touch it.
9 The clavichord is being repaired.

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

A 1 of 2 in 3 from

B 1 He borrowed *a record of mine*.
2 She showed me *a picture of John's*.
3 It was *an idea of hers*.
4 *A letter of yours* was found on my desk.
5 *Some friends of theirs* came to see me.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 d 3 d 4 c 5 b 6 c 7 a
8 c 9 a 10 c 11 c 12 a

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Key to Sentence structure

The instrument *was bought by my grandfather many years ago*.

Lesson 11 One good turn deserves another

Key to Summary writing

I was having dinner at a restaurant. I saw Tony Steele after a while. He always borrows money from his friends. Tony sat at my table. I asked him to lend me twenty pounds. He gave me the money at once. He wanted me to pay for his dinner. (49 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A a he *is* now *working*(l. 2)
b he *gets*(l. 3); he always *borrows*(l. 3); never *pays* it *back*(l. 4)
c *came in... worked*(ll. 1~2); Tony *saw*(l. 4); *came* and *sat*(l. 4); I *asked* him(l. 6); he *gave* me (l. 7); Tony *said*(l. 8)
d He *has* never *borrowed*(l. 5); I *have* never *borrowed*(l. 7)
e I *was having*(l. 1); he *was eating*(l. 6)

C 1 gets... got
2 have not had
3 was writing... talked/were talking
4 am typing
5 passed/were passing

D The Taj Mahal *was built*... after he *became/had become* ruler, his wife... *died*. The Taj Mahal *was built* in her honour. Experts *were called* in... The Taj Mahal, which *was begun* in 1632 and (*was*) *completed* in 1654, *cost* a fortune... it *has been visited* by...

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

a

A 1 The officer ordered the men to fire at the enemy.
2 He wants his wife to wear this dress.
3 She wants us to explain it.
4 I cannot allow him to enter the room.

B (sample sentences)
1 He asked me to help him.
2 We preferred her to stay at home.
3 He taught me to speak English.
4 My mother wished me to collect the laundry.
5 Do you want her to visit you?

b 1 salary 2 lent... salary/wages 3 borrowed 4 wages 5 wages

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 b 3 b 4 a 5 b 6 c 7 c
8 a 9 c 10 c 11 b 12 d

Key to Sentence structure

To *my surprise*, *he gave me the money immediately*.

Lesson 12 Goodbye and good luck

Key to Summary writing

We shall meet our neighbour, Captain Charles Alison, at Portsmouth Harbour early tomorrow morning. He will be in his small boat, *Topsail*. He will leave at eight o'clock. We shall say goodbye to him. He will take part in an important race across the Atlantic. (45 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *will sail*(l. 1); *shall meet*(l. 2); *will be* (l. 3); *will set out* (ll. 4~5); *shall have*(l. 5); *shall see* (l. 5); *shall say*(l. 6); *will be*(l. 6); *will take part*(l. 7)

C I *shall go* to the theatre... Reg and I *shall see* the first performance... the producer *will give* a short speech. He *will speak* to... The play *will be* very... people *will enjoy* it very much.

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 He *is not back yet*. He *will be back* in ten minutes.
2 A new play is *on* at the Globe Theatre.
3 When the concert *was over*, we went home.
4 They will *set out/off* very early tomorrow morning. (*Be off* is also possible.)
5 You can't take the exam yet. You are not *up to it*.
6 He will be *away* from home for two months.
7 She swam across the English Channel and *set up* a new world record.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 c 3 a 4 d 5 d 6 a 7 d
8 a 9 c 10 d 11 a 12 a

Key to Sentence structure

We'll meet him at the harbour early in the morning.

Lesson 13 The Greenwood Boys

Key to Summary writing

The Greenwood Boys are pop singers. They will be coming here tomorrow. Most of the young people in the town will be meeting them at the station. They will give five performances. The police will be trying to keep order as usual. (42 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *will be arriving*(l. 2); *will be coming* (l. 3); *will be meeting* (l. 4); *will be singing*(l. 5); *will be staying*(l. 6); *will be trying*(l. 8)

C 1 I'*ll be ironing* the clothes.
2 The train *will be arriving* in a few minutes.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

3 We'*ll be seeing* you in the morning.

4 We'*ll be watching* the match.

5 He'*ll be correcting* exercise booKey structures.

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 It's George's.

2 It's Jean's.

3 It's that woman's.

4 I like Keats' poetry best.

5 They're the children's.

6 They're the soldiers'.

7 I'll leave in six hours' time.

8 There was a hundred pounds' worth of damage.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 d 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 b 7 b

8 c 9 a 10 a 11 a 12 d

Key to Sentence structure

They will be coming *by train* and *most of* the young people *in the town* will be meeting them *at the station*.

Lesson 14 Do you speak English?

Key to Summary writing

The writer gave a lift to a young man in the south of France last year. They greeted each other in French. Apart from a few words, the writer doesn't speak any French. They sat in silence. At the end of the journey the young man asked, "Do you speak English?" He was English himself. (55 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A 1 I drove on to the next town after I had left a small village.

2 I said good morning to him in French as soon as he had got into the car.

3 I had nearly reached the town, when the young man said, "Do you speak English?"

C 1 After she had written the letter, she went to the post office.

2 After he had had dinner, he went to the cinema.

3 When I had fastened my seat belt, the plane took off.

4 We did not disturb him until he had finished work.

5 As soon as he had left the room, I turned on the radio.

6 He had been very ill before he died.

D 1 regretted

2 had begun/began

3 arrived

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 Except for 2 both of 3 Apart from

4 asked... ask for 5 neither of... asked

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 d 6 b 7 c

8 b 9 c 10 b 11 b 12 b

Key to Sentence structure

I do not *know any French at all*.

Lesson 15 Good news

Key to Summary writing

Mr. Harmsworth wanted to see me. I felt very nervous about this. I went into his office. He said that business was bad. The firm could not pay such large salaries. Twenty people had left already. He did not ask me to leave as well. He offered me an extra £1,000 a year. (53 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A 1 *a* The secretary told me that Mr. Harmsworth would see me.

b "Mr. Harmsworth will see you."

2 *a* Mr. Harmsworth said that business was very bad.

b "Business is very bad."

3 *a* Mr. Harmsworth told me that the firm could not afford to pay such large salaries.

b "The firm cannot afford to pay such large salaries."

B 1 told... would come/would be coming

2 said... (had) cut

3 told... had never played

4 did he say... had done/would do

5 did he tell... (had) bought/would buy

6 said... could not

7 said... (had) worked

8 told... wrote/writes/had never written

9 did you say... were/had been

10 said... would wait

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 study 2 office 3 nervous 4 afford 5 irritable

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 b 3 c 4 b 5 c 6 d 7 a

8 d 9 c 10 c 11 c 12 b

Key to Sentence structure

The firm couldn't *afford to pay such large salaries*.

Lesson 16 A polite request

Key to Summary writing

Traffic police usually give you a ticket if you park your car in the wrong place. The writer found a polite note on his car during a holiday in Sweden. The traffic

www.TopSage.com

大家网

police wanted him to pay attention to their street signs. No one can fail to obey a polite request. (50 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A The word *if* has been used four times.

C 1 rains 2 will never pass 3 is
4 will get 5 enjoys 6 is

D ... if I *listen* to the radio... If I *do* something wrong, *don't shout* at me. If the house *is* untidy, *don't blame* me. If you *want* me to do something, *don't forget* to say "please". If I *am playing* a nice game, *don't send* me to bed. If I *ask* for something... If it *is* cold *don't put* the cat out...

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 pay attention 2 remind 3 are knocking
4 look after 5 Remember me

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 a 3 d 4 a 5 b 6 a 7 d
8 a 9 d 10 d 11 d 12 a

Key to Sentence structure

If *you park your car in the wrong place, a traffic policeman will soon find it.*

Lesson 17 Always young

Key to Summary writing

My aunt Jennifer is an actress. She is over thirty years old. She often appears on the stage as a young girl. Jennifer will act the part of a girl of seventeen in a new play soon. She never tells anyone how old she really is. (46 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A She *must* be (1. 1); Jennifer *will have to* take (1. 3); she *must* appear(1. 4); she *had to* wear (11. 5~6); it *must* be terrible (11. 7~8)

C 1 *You must/will have to* see a doctor.
2 *Must you/Do you have to* make so much noise?
3 She said *we must/had to/would have to* stay here.
4 *I must/have to* have some help.
5 *I've had to* go out last night.

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

A 1 in the position of 2 because
3 At the time when

B 1 grow 2 suit 3 costume 4 dress

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 b 3 b 4 d 5 c 6 c 7 b
8 a 9 a 10 c 11 a 12 d

Lesson 18 He often does this!

Key to Summary writing

The writer had lunch at a village pub. She could not find her bag after her meal. She could not pay the bill. The landlord soon found it for her. His dog had taken it into the garden. (38 *words*)

TopSage.com

Key to Key structures Exercises

A 1 I looked for my bag after I had had lunch at a village pub.
2 I had left my bag on a chair beside the door.
3 The landlord asked me, "Did you have a good meal?"
4 I answered, "I can't pay the bill because I haven't got my bag."
5 The dog had taken the bag into the garden.

C Sentences 2,3,5,7,8,10,11.

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

A 1 back 2 away 3 in 4 in

B 1 Besides 2 beside

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 d 3 b 4 d 5 b 6 c 7 d
8 c 9 a 10 c 11 c 12 b

Key to Sentence structure

'*Did you have a good meal?*' he asked.

Lesson 19 Sold out

Key to Summary writing

The play was going to begin at any moment. I asked for two tickets. There were none left. Susan and I were disappointed. Just then, a man hurried to the ticket office. He returned two tickets. They were for next Wednesday's performance. I bought them. (44 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *may* begin (1. 1); *may* have begun (1. 2); *May* I have (1. 3); *Can* I return (1. 8); *Could* I have (1. 11); I *might* as well have (1. 13)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 I *have not* seen...
2 There *aren't*...
3 He *does not*... *you are*...
4 She *didn't* tell... she *hadn't*...
5 I *shan't* stay...
6 He *won't* do... *he's* told
7 *When will* I...
8 *What have* you... *You have* broken...
9 *He is*... *He has* just come...
10 I *can't* understand... he *has not*...
11 You *must not* believe...
12 I *was not*... You *were not*...
13 That *man has* been...
14 They *had not* seen...

www.TopSage.com

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 d 3 c 4 c 5 d 6 b 7 c
8 b 9 c 10 a 11 c 12 c

Key to Sentence structure

I might *as well have them.*

Lesson 20 One man in a boat

Key to Summary writing

Fishing is the writer's favourite sport. Some unlucky fishermen catch old boots and rubbish. The writer is not so lucky. He never catches anything. He is not really interested in fishing. Sitting in a boat and doing nothing at all is the only thing that interests him.

(47 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *Fishing* (1. 1); *catching* (11. 1～2); *catching*(1. 3); *having spent*(1. 5); *fishing*(1. 6); *fishing... sitting* (1. 8); *doing* (1. 9)

B 1 He went out of the restaurant *without paying* the bill.

2 She bought a pair of boots *instead of getting* a pair of shoes.

3 She was afraid of *spending* the night alone.

4 *After hearing/having heard* the news, she fainted.

5 Think carefully *before answering* my question.

6 *On seeing* the plane coming towards me, I dashed for cover.

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 realized 2 It's... understand... its 3 exciting
4 interesting 5 exciting 6 interested

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 c 3 b 4 b 5 c 6 b 7 c
8 a 9 c 10 c 11 d 12 a

Key to Sentence structure

I often fish for hours *without* catching anything.

Lesson 21 Mad or not?

Key to Summary writing

The writer is slowly going mad. He lives near an airport. Passing planes can be heard night and day. Most of his neighbours have left their homes. He has been offered money to leave. He is determined to stay. Everyone says he must be mad. They are probably right.

(49 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A ... passing planes *can be heard* (1. 2); it *could not be used* then (1. 3); a hundred people *must have been driven away* (11. 4～5); this house *will be knocked down* by a passing plane(11. 6～7); I *have been offered* a large sum of money(1. 7)

C 1 A message will be sent immediately.

2 All these goods must be sold.

3 I told you the parcel would be received in time.

4 The letter has to be delivered by hand.

5 Your letter must have been lost in the post.

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

A (sample answers)

The dog *drove* the sheep *out* of the field.

The police *drove* the crowds *back*.

I *drove* my car *into* the garage.

B 1 home 2 houses 3 house 4 home

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 d 3 c 4 d 5 a 6 c 7 b
8 b 9 a 10 d 11 c 12 c

Key to Sentence structure

The airport *was built years ago*, but for some reason it *could not be used then.*

Lesson 22 A glass envelope

Key to Summary writing

Jane crossed the Channel last year. She threw a bottle into the sea. It contained a piece of paper with her name and address on it. Ten months later, she received a letter from a girl in Holland. They write to each other regularly now. They send their letters by post.

(51 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

1 from	2 on	3 in	4 on
5 from	6 from	7 of	8 on
9 from	10 in	11 on... in	12 of
13 in	14 on	15 of	16 of
17 from	18 of... on	19 on	20 of... of
21 of	22 of/from	23 of	24 from
25 in	26 on	27 on	28 from
29 on	30 in	31 from	32 on
33 on	34 on	35 in	36 from
37 on	38 on	39 in	40 of
41 on	42 on	43 of	44 in
45 in	46 in	47 from	48 of
49 of	50 of	51 on	52 of
53 from	54 in		

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 b 3 d 4 d 5 b 6 d 7 a
8 c 9 d 10 a 11 b 12 b

Key to Sentence structure

Last year, we were travelling across the Channel and Jane put a piece of paper with her name and address on it into a bottle.

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

Lesson 23 A new house

Key to Summary writing

My sister will come to England next year. She will get a surprise if she comes. We have a new house in the country. I have invited my sister to stay with us. It is a very modern house. It has got many large rooms and a lovely garden. (49 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

C 1 wrote 2 had finished
3 breaKey structures 4 shall/will go

D 1 told... would
2 told... had lost
3 said... did not like

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 It 2 There 3 There 4 there 5 It 6 It 7 There
8 it 9 there 10 it

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 a 3 a 4 c 5 c 6 a 7 d
8 d 9 b 10 b 11 a 12 d

Key to Sentence structure

I told her that *she could stay with us*.

Lesson 24 It could be worse

Key to Summary writing

I had just lost £50. I felt very upset. I told the manager about it. He could not do anything. He began to complain about this wicked world. Just then a girl came in with the money. She had found it outside my room. There is still some honesty in this world. (52 *words*)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

A 1 received 2 on the
3 On the 4 believes
5 of 6 salary
7 lend 8 asked for
9 Apart from 10 an irritable
11 are 12 pay attention to
13 Remember 14 suit
15 grow up 16 beside
17 It's... exciting 18 understand
19 home 20 There is

B 1 What a wonderful garden (this is)!
2 What a lot of trouble he is causing!
3 What a tall building (it is)!
4 What a clever girl you are!

C 1 He handed *the prize to me*.
2 The waiter brought *the man a bottle of beer*.
3 I've ordered *you some soup*.
4 Bring *me that book* please!
5 She promised *the finder a reward*.

D 1 I *haven't any/have no* money.
2 I *didn't go anywhere/went nowhere* in the holidays.
3 There *wasn't anybody/was nobody* present when the accident happened.

E 1 It's *George's*.
2 It's that *woman's*.
3 I like *Keats'* poetry best.
4 They're the *children's*.
5 They're the *soldiers'*.

F 1 off 2 back 3 up 4 over 5 on 6 away

G 1 I put my hat *on*.
2 I took my coat *off*.
3 He put the fire *out*.
4 They cut the king's head *off*.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 a 3 a 4 c 5 a 6 a 7 c
8 c 9 c 10 b 11 a 12 b

Key to Sentence structure

He started *to complain about this wicked world but was interrupted by a knock at the door*.

Lesson 25 Do the English speak English?

Key to Summary writing

I arrived at a railway station in London and asked a porter the way to my hotel, but he could not understand me. He understood me at last, but I could not understand his answer. My teacher never spoke English like that. The porter said that I would soon learn English. Each man speaKey structures a different language in England. They understand each other, but I do not understand them. (69 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *and*(l. 1); *so*(l. 2); *not only... but... as well*(ll. 2~3); *and*(l. 5); *but*(l. 7); *neither... nor*(l. 6); *but*(l. 7); *and* (l. 8); *and*(l. 8), *and* (l. 9); *but*(l. 10)

C 1 I knocked at the door but he did not open it.
2 Both he and I went on holiday.
3 He must be either mad or very wise.

Key to Composition

1 Both my sister and I went shopping.
2 We not only got very tired but very hungry as well.
3 It was three o'clock and we could not get lunch so we had a cup of tea.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 b 3 b 4 a 5 b 6 c 7 d

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

8 b 9 a 10 a 11 d 12 a

Key to Sentence structure

I *did not know the way to my hotel, so I asked a porter.*

Lesson 26 The best art critics

Key to Summary writing

The writer studies art and paints a lot of pictures. Many people do not really understand modern art. Paintings do not always have a meaning. They are sometimes pretty patterns. Young children not only appreciate modern paintings better than others but they notice more. The writer's young sister went into his room yesterday and examined his new picture. He had hung it upside down and she noticed this immediately. (68 *words*)

Key to Composition

looked at... but... understand... called... neither... nor

Key to Letter writing

The third address is correct (as a letter heading).

Key to Key structures Exercises

A These things always happen: I *paint*(l. 1); people *pretend* that they *understand* (ll. 1~2); they... *tell*(l. 2); We *like*(l. 4); we *like*(l. 5); I *think*(l. 5); children... *appreciate*(ll. 5~6); They *notice* (l. 7); she... *tells* (l. 7); Do you *like* (l. 11) (Note: although the question *Do you like it*? (l. 11) is asked at a particular moment, the meaning of *like* cannot be restricted to this moment.)

These things are happening now: What *are you doing*? (l. 10); *I'm hanging* (l. 11)

B believe... are joking... don't know... know... believe... forget... looked... are you trying... believe... think... do you live... don't know

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

"Look!" she said, "isn't that man drunk?"

"I think we should cross the road," answered her husband.

"It's too late now," she replied.

"Eh, you two. Look where you're going," called the drunk. "Can't you walk in a straight line?"

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 d 3 c 4 b 5 c 6 d 7 d

8 a 9 b 10 d 11 b 12 d

Key to Sentence structure

Please tell me *whether my pictures are good or not.*

Lesson 27 A wet night

Key to Summary writing

The boys put up their tent in the middle of a field and cooked a meal. After their meal they told stories and sang songs but it began to rain so they crept into their tent. The boys woke up in the middle of the night. The tent was full of water so they rushed outside. A stream had formed in the field and flowed right under their tent. (69 *words*)

Key to Composition

so... and... knock... hurts... met

Key to Letter writing

21 Brook St.,

Woodside,

California,

U. S. A.

21st Feb., 19__

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *put up* (l. 1); *was done... cooked* (l. 2); *smelled* (l. 3); *told... sang* (l. 4); *began* (l. 5); *felt* (l. 5); *put out... crept* (ll. 5~6); *slept* (l. 7); *woke up* (l. 8); *began* shouting (l. 8); *was* (l. 8); *leapt out* (l. 9); *hurried* (l. 9); *found* (l. 10); *wound* (l. 10); *flowed* (l. 10)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 *put* their toys *away* 2 *put* you *up*

3 *put* my shoes *on* 4 *put down*

5 *putting out* 6 *put up*

7 *put off* 8 *put up with*

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 c 3 d 4 d 5 d 6 b 7 a

8 d 9 d 10 c 11 c 12 c

Key to Sentence structure

As soon as this *was done, they cooked a meal over an open fire.*

Lesson 28 No parking

Key to Summary writing

Jasper White believes in ancient myths. Car owners always park their cars outside his gate, so he has put up "No Parking" signs but they have not paid any attention to them. Now he has put an ugly stone head over his gate. It is the head of Medusa, the Gorgon. He wants her to turn car owners to stone but she has not done so yet. (65 *words*)

Key to Composition

drives... driven... and... do not deserve... criticizes

Key to Letter writing

The first heading is correct.

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *has just bought* (l. 2); *has had* (l. 3); *has parked* (l. 4); *has not been able* (l. 5); *has put up* (l. 6);

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

have not had (1.7); *has put* (1.8); *have ever seen* (1.9); *has been turned* (1.10)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

2 who/that 3 whose 4 which 6 that/which

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 d 3 b 4 b 5 c 6 d 7 b

8 d 9 c 10 d 11 b 12 a

Key to Sentence structure

I asked him what *it was*.

Lesson 29 Taxi!

Key to Summary writing

Captain Ben Fawcett has bought a small Swiss aeroplane and (he) uses it as a taxi. It is a "Pilatus Porter". It can not only carry seven passengers but also land anywhere. Captain Fawcett has taken passengers to many strange places in his plane. He refused to fly a businessman to Rockall. The journey was too dangerous. (57 *words*)

Key to Composition

not only flew..., but... Then it climbed... waved... yet... notice

Key to Letter writing

The second heading would be correct.

Key to Key structures Exercises

A What happened: *flew*(1.6); *landed*(1.8); *landed* (1.9); *wanted*(1.10); *did not take*(1.11)

What has happened: *has bought* (1.1); *has begun* (1.1); *has flown* (11.7~8); *has* just *refused* (11.9~10)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 bring 2 fetch 3 refused 4 deny 5 Very

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 c 3 c 4 b 5 d 6 b 7 a

8 b 9 b 10 b 11 c 12 b

Key to Sentence structure

Captain Fawcett's first passenger was a doctor who flew from Birmingham to a lonely village.

Lesson 30 Football or polo?

Key to Summary writing

The writer sat by the river last Sunday. Some children were playing games nearby. One of the children kicked a ball hard and it went towards a passing boat. The man in the boat neither saw the ball nor heard people shouting. The ball hit the man and the children ran away. However, the man was not angry and he threw the ball back to the bank. (67 *words*)

Key to Composition

blew... put... and... reach... but... so... jumped... and

Key to Letter writing

19 High Lane,
Newton,
Middlesex,
England.
10th September, 19 __

Key to Key structures Exercises

C 1 Yes, I took some (photographs). No, I didn't take any (photographs).

2 Yes, I bought some (bread). No, I didn't buy any (bread).

3 Yes, I saw some (people). No, I didn't see any (people).

D 1 Refrigerators are necessary in hot countries.

2 Which river is *the* longest, *the* Nile, *the* Amazon, or *the* Mississippi?

3 Heyerdahl crossed *the* Pacific on *a* raft.

4 Why is Britain sometimes called *the* United Kingdom?

5 We sailed up *the* Red Sea and then went through *the* Suez Canal.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 a 3 d 4 a 5 b 6 c 7 c

8 c 9 d 10 a 11 d 12 d

Key to Sentence structure

The ball struck him so *hard that he nearly fell into the water*.

Lesson 31 Success story

Key to Summary writing

Frank Hawkins was telling the writer about his experiences as a young man. Frank used to work in a small shop as a boy. He used to repair bicycles there. He bought his own shop in 1958 and he made spare parts for aeroplanes in his twenties. He employed a lot of people in a few years. His wife came into the room after a while. She wanted him to repair their grandson's bicycle. (74 *words*)

Key to Composition

not only repaired... but... as well... told... make... but

Key to Letter writing

The second heading is correct.

Key to Key structures Exercises

A What was happening: *was telling* (1.1); *was* still *smiling*(1.10)

What happened: *saved*(1.5); *bought*(1.6); *had*(1.7); *employed*(1.9); *smiled* when he *remembered* (1.9); *opened... came in... wanted*(11.10~11)

What used to happen: *used to work* (1.3); *used to*

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

work(11. 4～5); *used to make*(1. 7)

C ... worked/ was working... sat/was sitting... was looking... were passing... stopped... got... were/ had been... used to come/came... used to go/went... were... quarrelled... had never seen/saw... got/was getting... called... hurried

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 experienced 2 jobs 3 job 4 save

Key to Multiple-choice questions

1 d 2 b 3 a 4 c 5 a 6 a 7 d
8 a 9 b 10 c 11 a 12 c

Key to Sentence structure

She wanted *him to repair their grandson's bicycle*!

Lesson 32 Shopping made easy

Key to Summary writing

A detective watched a well-dressed woman in a large store one Monday. She bought a few small articles and then she chose an expensive dress. The assistant wrapped it up for her and the woman took it with her. She did not pay for it, so the detective arrested her. The assistant was her daughter. She gave her mother a free dress once a week. (66 *words*)

Key to Composition

arrived at... but... saw... and... either stay... or

Key to Letter writing

504 West 94th St.,
New York,
N. Y.,
U. S. A.
24th June, 19 __

Key to Key structures Exercises

A People are not *so honest as* they once were(1. 1); The temptation... is *greater than* ever before (11. 1～2); there were *fewer* people... *than* usual (11. 4～5); it was *easier*... to watch her (11. 5～6); one of *the most expensive* dresses (11. 7～8); wrapped it... *as quickly as* possible (11. 8～9)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

One day... *a* postcard... *an* excursion... *one* thing... *a* fax... *a* form... *a* fax of *one* word.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 c 3 c 4 b 5 b 6 c 7 a
8 d 9 a 10 d 11 b 12 c

Key to Sentence structure

One Monday morning, there were fewer people in the shop than usual when the woman came in, so it was easier for the detective to watch her.

Lesson 33 Out of the darkness

Key to Summary writing

The girl set out from the coast one afternoon and was caught in a storm. Her boat struck a rock, so she jumped into the sea. She swam eight miles that night. She reached the shore early next morning. She had seen a light high up on the cliffs and she climbed up. She found herself in hospital a day later. (61 *words*)

Key to Composition

wanted... not only... but... so... stayed... and watched

Key to Letter writing

17 Howland St.,
Grimsby,
Lincs.,
England.
18th May, 19 __

Key to Key structures Exercises

A 1 The girl set out from the coast.
2 She jumped into the sea.
3 She swam to the shore.

B 1 to 2 from/out of 3 (up)to
4 for/from 5 from... to/to... from
6 at 7 to 8 from

C (sample answers)
1 A bird flew into the room.
2 The parachutist jumped from the aeroplane.
3 The child pointed at the fat lady.
4 Put the milk in the refrigerator.

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 the other day 2 passed 3 next 4 past

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 b 3 d 4 a 5 c 6 b 7 b
8 c 9 c 10 c 11 a 12 c

Key to Sentence structure

On *arriving at the shore, the girl struggled up the cliff.*

Lesson 34 Quick work

Key to Summary writing

Dan Robinson was worried. He had received a letter from the local police. Yesterday he went to the station. He is not worried any more. The police have found his bicycle. Dan was not only surprised but amused as well. His bicycle was stolen twenty years ago. He was fifteen then. (51 *words*)

Key to Composition

not only... but... as well. However... were... so...

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

gave... and

Key to Letter writing

Pl., Ave., St., Rd., Sq.

Key to Key structures Exercises

A 1 Dan Robinson has been worried all the week.
2 Dan was asked to call at the local police station.
3 Dan wondered why he was wanted by the police.
4 Dan was told at the station that his bicycle had been found.
5 Dan's bicycle was picked up in a small village four hundred miles away.
6 The bicycle is being sent to Dan's home.
7 Dan was surprised and amused when he heard the news.
8 Dan was amused because he never expected the bicycle to be found.
9 The bicycle was stolen twenty years ago.

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 on 2 off 3 out 4 at

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 d 7 c
8 b 9 c 10 b 11 c 12 a

Key to Sentence structure

It *is now being sent to his home by train.*

Lesson 35 Stop thief!

Key to Summary writing

Roy is finding his new job as a bus driver exciting. He saw two thieves in Catford Street recently. They were running out of a shop and Roy drove his bus straight at them, so they dropped the stolen money and got into a car. Roy drove his bus into the back of their car then and damaged it. After this he telephoned the police. Both men were arrested later. (69 *words*)

Key to Composition

make... but... listened to... and... so... drove

Key to Letter writing

20 Crawford Ave.,
Cranley,
Dorset,
England.
October 4th, 19__

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *used to drive* (l. 1); *became* (l. 2); *has not regretted* (l. 2); *is finding* (l. 2); *was driving* (l. 3); *saw... rush out... run* (l. 4); *was carrying* (l. 5); *acted... drove* (l. 6); *got... dropped* (l. 7); *were trying to get* (l. 8); *drove* (l. 8); *was moving away* (l. 9); *stopped... telephoned* (l. 9); *was* badly *damaged... to recognize* (l. 10); *stopped* (l. 10); *were arrested* (l. 11)

C 1 mean... Do you understand
2 used to smoke... does not smoke
3 was completed
4 have not seen
5 dropped... was crossing

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 so 2 such a 3 so 4 such 5 so 6 such a
7 such an 8 such a

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 d 3 a 4 d 5 d 6 a 7 d
8 a 9 b 10 a 11 d 12 d

Key to Sentence structure

When he was driving along Catford Street recently, he saw two thieves rush out of a shop and run towards a waiting car.

Lesson 36 Across the Channel

Key to Summary writing

Debbie Hart is going to swim across the English Channel tomorrow. She is eleven and she is a strong swimmer. Debbie has been trained by her father. He will follow her in a small boat. Debbie's mother will be waiting on the English coast. She swam the Channel herself when she was a girl. (54 *words*)

Key to Composition

so... took off... and waved... but... neither... nor heard

Key to Letter writing

St., Rd., Ave., Sq., Pl., N. Y., W. 8., S. W. 3.

Key to Key structures Exercises

A What will happen: *will set out* (l. 5); *will have* (l. 9); *will not eat* (l. 9)
What is going to happen: *is going to swim* (l. 1); *is going to set out* (l. 2)
What will be happening: *will be watching* (l. 7); *will be waiting* (ll. 9~10)

C 1 We are going to leave at six o'clock.
2 I am going to pay these bills tomorrow.
3 Are you going to write to him?
4 She is not going to look for a new job.
5 When are you going to buy a new car?

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 firm 2 watched 3 look at 4 solid/firm 5 firm

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 d 3 d 4 c 5 d 6 c 7 c
8 b 9 a 10 d 11 c 12 c

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Key to Sentence structure

She is going to set out from the French coast at five o'clock in the morning.

Lesson 37 The Olympic Games

Key to Summary writing

The Olympic Games will be held in our country in four years' time, so the government will be putting up new buildings just outside the capital. Kurt Gunter has designed the buildings and workers will have completed the new stadium by the end of next year. The Games will be held in this country for the first time and we are looking forward to them. (65 *words*)

Key to Composition

1 Both my brother and I are going to the Olympic Games.

2 We bought tickets a long time ago and (we) shall be leaving soon.

3 We shall not only see the Games but visit many parts of the country as well.

Key to Letter writing

6th May/May 6th

21st June/June 21st

30th July/July 30th

3rd March/March 3rd

22nd April/April 22nd

1st July/July 1st

Key to Key structures Exercises

A What will happen: *will be held*(1.1); *will be held*(1.5); *will be called*(1.6)

What will be happening: *will be visiting* (1.2); *will be building*(1.3); *will* also *be building*(1.4); *will be watching*(1.9)

What will have happened: *will have completed*(1.7); *will have finished*(1.8)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 holding... looking forward to

2 Look out

3 look... up

4 is holding

5 look... up

6 held... looking forward to

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 b 3 b 4 b 5 b 6 d 7 a

8 c 9 d 10 b 11 b 12 a

Lesson 38 Everything except the weather

Key to Summary writing

The writer's friend, Harrison, had spent many years in the Mediterranean, but he wanted to retire in England so he bought a house in the country. The summer that year was very bad and he complained about the weather. In the end Harrison not only sold the house but also left the country. (53 *words*)

Key to Composition

1 He bought an old car but it was in a very bad state.

2 The engine was not only worn out but the gearbox was full of sawdust as well.

3 He could neither drive it nor sell it nor even give it away.

Key to Key structures Exercises

A What happened: *returned*(1.2); *bought*(1.4); *went*(1.4); *began*(1.5); *rained*(1.6); *got*(1.7); *acted*(1.8); *was... could bear*(1.9); *sold... left*(1.9); *ended*(1.10)

What had happended: *had lived*(1.1); *had* often *dreamed*(1.2); *had planned*(1.3); *had* no sooner *returned* (1.4); *had* never *lived*(1.8); *had* hardly *had*(1.9); *had had*(1.10) *had thought*(1.10)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

A 1 I had no sooner left the house than it began to rain.

2 We had no sooner hung the picture on the wall than it fell down.

B 1 continuously 2 continually 3 country

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 c 3 a 4 a 5 c 6 b 7 d

8 d 9 b 10 a 11 d 12 d

Lesson 39 Am I all right?

Key to Summary writing

Dr. Millington refused to tell his patient, Mr. John Gilbert, whether his operation had been successful. The next day the patient telephoned Dr. Millington and inquired about a certain patient, Mr. John Gilbert. The doctor answered a number of questions about the patient and then asked whether the caller was a relative. The caller then told him who he was. (60 *words*)

Key to Composition

1 After the telephone call, Dr. Millington was angry, so he went to Gilbert's room.

2 Gilbert was telephoning the nurses and asking questions about himself.

3 Then both the doctor and the patient burst out laughing.

Key to Letter writing

3rd Jan., 28th Feb., 20th Aug., 13th Sept., 22nd Oct.

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 a 3 c 4 d 5 d 6 a 7 b
8 a 9 c 10 c 11 a 12 b

Key to Sentence structure

While *John Gilbert was in hospital, he asked his doctor to tell him whether his operation had been successful, but the doctor refused to do so.*

Lesson 40 Food and talk

Key to Summary writing

The writer sat next to Mrs. Rumbold at the dinner party. He tried to make conversation but she was busy eating. He talked about the new play at "The Globe" and about the holidays. She answered his questions briefly. Then he asked her if she was enjoying her dinner and she answered, "Young man, if you ate more and talked less, we would both enjoy our dinner!" (67 *words*)

Key to Composition

1 She not only refused to answer any questions but she did not ask any either.
2 She was interested neither in the theatre nor in travel.
3 She liked eating good food but (she) did not like talking about it.

Key to Letter writing

2nd March, 1995; 21st Sept., 1954; 13th Aug., 1976; 1st Dec., 1967; 22nd Jan., 1986; 11th Nov., 1990

Key to Key structures Exercises

1 were 2 tries
3 will burn 4 would have to
5 lost 6 do not apologize
7 were 8 won
9 would not be 10 could

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 made... do 2 does... makes
3 doing... making 4 made... did

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 c 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 a 7 c
8 b 9 b 10 b 11 b 12 d

Lesson 41 Do you call that a hat?

Key to Summary writing

The writer's wife was trying on a hat but he did not like it. He sat down and waited for her. Then they began arguing again. He had bought a tie the day before but his wife did not like it. "A man can never have too many ties." he said. His wife used exactly the same argument and bought the hat. It looked like a lighthouse. (67 *words*)

Key to Composition

1 My wife not only has too many hats but too many dresses as well.
2 We have been invited to a party this evening but she does not want to go.
3 She keeps looking at all those dresses and saying, "I haven't got anything to wear!"

Key to Letter writing

7th May, 1995; 1st Oct., 1978; 31st Jan., 1967; 18th Feb., 1983; 23rd June, 1970; 17th April, 1927

Key to Key structures Exercises

C 1 mustn't 2 mustn't 3 needn't
4 needn't 5 mustn't

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 remarked 2 noticed 3 remarKey structures
4 notice

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 a 3 c 4 d 5 c 6 b 7 b
8 a 9 d 10 a 11 c 12 b

Lesson 42 Not very musical

Key to Summary writing

We watched a snake charmer in a square in Old Delhi. He had a long pipe and two large baskets. He played a tune and the snake in one of the baskets rose out of the basket and began to follow the movements of the pipe. Then the snake charmer played modern tunes but the snake continued to dance slowly. It did not know the difference between Indian music and jazz. (69 *words*)

Key to Composition

1 The snake charmer opened his basket and started to play a tune but the snake refused to move.
2 Then the snake charmer shook the basket and the snake obeyed him.
3 Everybody was frightened but these snakes are not dangerous.

Key to Letter writing

1 84 Wiley Drive,	2 844 West 54th Street
Buxton	New York
Derbyshire	N. Y.
England	U. S. A
8th Jan., 19 __	21st May, 19 __

Key to Key structures Exercises

A 1 had *had a long walk* (1.1)
2 *have a rest* (1.2)
3 to *have a look* (1.4)
4 *had our first glimpse* (1.6)
B 1 had a ride 2 was having a look

www.TopSage.com

3 had a wash　　4 had a swim
5 had a fight　　6 have had a quarrel
7 had another try　　8 having a rest
9 have a smoke　　10 have a good sleep

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 pick it up　2 pick up　3 pick out　4 pick up

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d　2 d　3 d　4 b　5 b　6 c　7 d
8 d　9 a　10 c　11 d　12 a

Key to Sentence structure

As soon as he saw us, he picked up a long pipe which was covered with coins and opened one of the baskets.

Lesson 43　Over the South Pole

Key to Summary writing

The American explorer, R. E. Byrd, became the first man to fly over the South Pole in 1929. He took a lot of photographs during the flight but then he ran into difficulties. His plane could not get over the mountains so he ordered his men to throw out two heavy food sacKey structures. The plane then flew over the mountains and continued without further trouble.

(65 *words*)

Key to Composition

1 Byrd stayed in the Antarctic for a year and made many more flights.
2 He went back to America in 1930 but returned to the Antarctic in 1946.
3 This time he not only had 4,000 men with him but thirteen ships and seventeen aeroplanes as well.

Key to Key structures Exercises

A　*were able to* take(l. 3); *could*... get over(l. 6); *was* then *able to* rise(l. 8); *would be able to* reach (l. 9); *was able to* fly(l. 10)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 at last　2 at home　3 at once　4 at the moment
5 at times　6 was at a loss　7 At first

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b　2 b　3 a　4 a　5 d　6 d　7 a
8 c　9 c　10 d　11 a　12 c

Key to Sentence structure

Byrd at once ordered *his men to throw out two heavy food sacKey structures.*

Lesson 44　Through the forest

Key to Summary writing

Two men tried to steal Mrs. Sterling's handbag. She was having a picnic at the edge of a forest with her children at the time. They took the bag after a struggle and ran through the trees. She ran after them and caught up with them. The men had sat down and were going through the contents of the bag. Mrs. Sterling ran straight at them so they ran away.　(70 *words*)

Key to Composition

1 Thieves can either be very daring or very timid.
2 A thief once broke into a house and stole some money but the lady of the house caught him.
3 The thief not only gave back the money but paid for the window he had broken.

Key to Key structures Exercises

A　tried to steal(l. 4); started running(l. 5); continued to run(l. 7); needs mending(l. 10)

B　1 to see　　2 working
3 ironing　　4 to leave
5 to argue/arguing　　6 to come
7 seeing　　8 knocking
9 waiting　　10 to rain/raining
11 working　　12 taking

Key to Special difficulties Exercises (sample sentences)

1 In the last minutes of the race, Jim caught up with the leader and passed him.
2 The farmer shouted at the children and they ran a away.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c　2 b　3 c　4 c　5 c　6 b　7 d
8 a　9 b　10 a　11 b　12 d

Lesson 45　A clear conscience

Key to Summary writing

The local butcher, Sam Benton, was taking his savings to the post office but he lost his wallet. Three months later, Sam not only received half his money but a note as well. The note said: "A thief, yes, but only 50 per cent a thief!" The thief included a note every time he sent Sam more money. The last note said: "I am 100 per cent honest now!"　(68 *words*)

Key to Composition

1 Sam told everybody about the wallet but he did not try to find the thief.
2 The man was not really a thief but he needed money badly.
3 He not only paid back the money but also bought himself a clear conscience.

Key to Key structures Exercises

A　*had been lost*(ll. 1~2); *must have been found* (ll. 3~4); *was not returned* (l. 4); *had been wrapped*(l. 6); *was sent*(l. 9); *was paid back*(l. 10)

C　1 A meal has been prepared for you.
2 The book will be translated into English.
3 A telegram must be sent to him.

www.TopSage.com

4 The fire had been put out before the fire brigade arrived.

5 The cat was given some milk to drink.

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 back 2 robbed... stole 3 back 4 stole

5 robbed

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 d 3 a 4 b 5 b 6 d 7 c

8 b 9 c 10 b 11 d 12 b

Key to Sentence structure

Sam was sure *that the wallet must have been found by one of the villagers, but it was not returned to him.*

Lesson 46 Expensive and uncomfortable

Key to Summary writing

The plane from London arrived at Sydney airport and workers unloaded a number of wooden boxes from it. They contained clothing. One of the boxes was extremely heavy so a worker opened it up. He found a man lying on top of a pile of woollen goods. The man was arrested. He had travelled in the box from London. He had to pay £3,500. An ordinary ticket costs £2,000. (69 *words*)

Key to Composition

1 The man not only had had an uncomfortable trip but was very hungry as well.

Or: The man had not only had a very uncomfortable trip, but he was very hungry as well.

2 He had neither eaten nor drunk anything for thirteen hours.

3 Woollen goods cannot be eaten but at least they are soft so the man had a few hours' sleep.

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *arrived* at Sydney(1.1); could *account* for the fact (1.3); *occurred* to one(1.4); was *astonished* at what(1.5); was so *surprised* at being(11.6~7); had been *confined* to the(1.9); *pay* £3,500 for the cost(1.10)

B

1 with	2 with	3 with	4 for
5 to	6 at	7 to	8 to
9 for	10 to... at	11 at	12 with
13 with	14 to... for	15 for	16 for
17 with	18 for	19 at	20 with
21 to	22 with	23 at	24 to
25 with... to	26 to... with	27 for	28 to... to
29 for	30 to	31 for	32 to
33 to... with	34 for	35 to	36 to
37 at	38 at	39 with	40 for

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 c 3 d 4 d 5 a 6 c 7 b

8 c 9 a 10 d 11 c 12 a

Lesson 47 A thirsty ghost

Key to Summary writing

Mr. Ian Thompson bought a public house recently but it is haunted so he is going to sell it. There was a strange noise in the bar one night and the room was in disorder next morning. Mr. Thompson also found five empty whisky bottles. He does not believe that any villagers broke into the bar and had a drink. Nobody in the village wants to buy the inn. (69 *words*)

Key to Composition

1 One night Mr. Thompson heard a noise and went downstairs.

2 In the bar, five men were drinking whisky but they did not see him.

3 Mr. Thompson put a sheet over his head and went into the bar.

4 The villagers ran away in fear and never came back again.

Key to Key structures Exercises

C 1 will have finished 2 broke 3 were 4 could

D 1 mustn't 2 needn't

E 1 I asked George what those people were looking at.

2 George answered that he did not know. He thought a new road was being built and that it would be finished soon.

3 I told George that all those people were silly because they were looking into an empty hole.

4 George said that some people enjoy/enjoyed watching others work.

5 Half an hour passed. George told me to hurry up as we had been there for half an hour. He added that there was nothing to see in an empty hole.

6 I answered that I didn't want to go yet because it was very interesting.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 d 6 a 7 a

8 d 9 d 10 c 11 a 12 c

Key to Sentence structure

Though *Mr. Thompson had turned the lights off before he went to bed, they were on in the morning.*

Lesson 48 Did you want to tell me something?

Key to Summary writing

The dentist in the story had pulled out one of the writer's teeth and (had) told him to rest for a while. He asked several questions but the writer could not answer them. His mouth was full of cotton wool. He

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

suddenly discovered something wrong but he could not say anything. The dentist eventually removed the cotton wool from his mouth and the writer told him that he had pulled out the wrong tooth. (*72 words*)

Key to Composition

1 The dentist smiled and showed me the tooth.
2 He had pulled out the right one but I had not realized it.
3 I had not only made a mistake but (had) criticized his work as well.

Key to Letter writing

Seaview Hotel,
Princes' Ave.,
Brighton,
England.
Sept. 19th. 19__

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

A 1 which 2 denied 3 fetched
4 too 5 jobs 6 One... a... who
7 past 8 next 9 watching
10 continually 11 remarked 12 robbed

B (sample sentences)
I'm sorry to cause you *such* trouble.
Have you ever seen *such* beautiful pictures before?
It's *such a* nice day that we can't stay indoors!
I'm feeling *so* tired that I shall have to stop work.

C 1 He had no sooner come home than they rang him up from the office.
2 The plane had no sooner taken off than it returned to the airport.

D 1 made 2 do 3 make 4 do 5 Do 6 make
7 made 8 does

E 1 out 2 up 3 up 4 up... away 5 up
6 out 7 back 8 up with 9 up with

F (sample sentences)
If you don't stop that noise *at once*, you'll have to go to bed.
I'm *at a loss* to know what to do.
It's stopped raining *at last*!
He's very busy and can't accept my more work *at present*.
I'll be *at home* tonight.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 b 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 c 7 b
8 b 9 d 10 a 11 b 12 c

Key to Sentence structure

Dentists always ask questions when it *is impossible for you to answer*.

Lesson 49 The end of a dream

Key to Summary writing

A young man in Teheran bought a real bed for the first time in his life. He slept on the roof of his house because the weather was hot. Three nights later, the bed was swept off the roof during a storm. The man was not only unhurt but still on his mattress. As the bed was in pieces, he carried his mattress indoors and after he had put it on the floor he went back to sleep. (*78 words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *to buy*(l. 2); *which*(l. 3); *Because*(ll. 3~4); *but*(l. 5); *and*(l. 7); *until*(l. 8); *Although*(l. 8); *When*(l. 9); *that*(l. 10); *and*(l. 10); *After*(l. 11)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 b 6 c 7 c
8 a 9 c 10 c 11 a 12 a

Key to Sentence structure

A gust of wind *swept the bed off the roof*.

Lesson 50 Taken for a ride

Key to Summary writing

The writer wanted to go to Woodford Green but as he did not know the way, the conductor promised to tell him where to get off. When they arrived at the bus terminus, the writer asked if they were at Woodford Green. The conductor then realized that he had forgotten to put him off. The writer stayed on the bus because it was going back. (*65 words*)

Key to Composition

1 On going into the kitchen, I turned on the light because it was dark.
2 My brother shouted angrily when the lights went on.
3 I spoilt a film wich he was developing.

Key to Letter writing

Dear Grandmother, Dear Elizabeth, Dear Jack, Dear Uncle Tom

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *love* travelling(l. 1); *don't like* losing(l. 1); *don't know* where it is (l. 5); This is as far as we *go*(l. 10)

B "Let's eat here," I said to my wife.
"I (*would*) *prefer* to have a drink first," she answered.
"That's a good idea," I said. I picked up the menu.
"I *don't understand* a thing." I said. "It's all in Spanish."
"It *doesn't matter*," said my wife.
"What *does* that word *mean*?" I asked.
"I *don't know*," she answred.
We called the waiter and pointed to the word on the menu. "Two," I said, holding up two fingers.
After some time, my wife said suddenly, "Look!

www.TopSage.com

大家网

He's *bringing* us two boiled eggs!"

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

a/b 1 miss 2 loose 3 expect 4 lose 5 waited

c 1 *It takes* me an hour to get to my office.

2 *It took* me fifteen hours to reach Tokyo.

3 *It took* him six months to write the book.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 d 3 a 4 c 5 c 6 a 7 a

8 d 9 b 10 b 11 c 12 d

Lesson 51 Reward for virtue

Key to Summary writing

Hugh is so fat that he has gone on a diet. He has forbidden himself all the foods he likes but he has not lost weight. When the writer visited him yesterday, he hid a large parcel under his desk. The parcel contained chocolates and sweets. Hugh said that he had to reward himself occasionally because his diet was so strict. (61 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

Dear (Jane), Dear Bill, Dear Mr. X, Dear Mr. Y

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *got*(l. 1); *decided*(l. 2); *began*(l. 2); *wrote out* (l. 3); *included*(l. 4); *paid*(l. 5); *rang*(l. 6); *was not surprised* (l. 6); *led* (l. 7); *hid* (l. 7); *asked*(l. 9); *smiled*(l. 9); *put*(l. 9); *explained* (l. 10); *had to* reward (l. 10); *showed*(l. 10)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 rose 2 lying 3 laid 4 rose 5 beats 6 win

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 c 3 d 4 d 5 d 6 a 7 d

8 c 9 a 10 d 11 d 12 b

Key to Sentence structure

When I asked him what he was doing, he smiled guiltily and then put the parcel on the desk.

Lesson 52 A pretty carpet

Key to Summary writing

The writer has been trying to get his new room in order all morning. This has proved difficult because he owns over a thousand booKey structures which cover every inch of floor space at the moment. His sister helped him to carry one of his old bookcases up the stairs a short while ago. She got a surprise when she saw the room, but she thought that the booKey structures made a pretty carpet. (72 *words*)

Key to Composition

1 when I moved into a new room, three workmen brought my things upstairs.

2 There were not only several cases of clothes, but hundreds of booKey structures as well.

3 Since the pile was as high as the ceiling, I could not get into my room.

Key to Letter writing

Dear Ted, Dear Mr. X/Sir, Dear Mary,

Dear Grandfather

TopSage.com

Key to Key structures Exercises

A What has happened: We *have just moved* (l. 1); This *has not been* easy(l. 3); I *have... put*(ll. 4~5); I *have ever seen*(l. 9)

What has been happening: I *have been working* (l. 1); I *have been trying*(l. 2)

C have explained... have understood... Have you been listening... has been working/has worked... has been earning/has earned... has she earned... have not been listening

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 carefully 2 hard 3 hard 4 late 5 nearly 6 fast 7 high

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 c 3 c 4 a 5 b 6 d 7 c

8 b 9 a 10 c 11 b 12 d

Key to Sentence structure

To *make matters worse, the room is rather small.*

Lesson 53 Hot snake

Key to Summary writing

Now that firemen have put out a big forest fire in California, they have been trying to discover its cause. There was no evidence that it was started by broken glass or a cigarette end. However a fireman has just solved the mystery. He noticed the remains of a snake which had been dropped by a bird on to some electric wires. In winding itself round the wires, the snake had sent sparKey structures to the ground and this caused the fire. (81 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A What happened: *began*(l. 2); *examined*(l. 4); *were not able to* find(l. 5); *did not start*(l. 6); *discovered*(l. 7); *noticed*(l. 8); *was wound*(l. 8); *was able* to solve(l. 9); *dropped*(l. 10); *wound*(l. 11); it *did* so(l. 11); *sent*(l. 11); *started*(l. 11)

What has happened: *have put* out(l. 1)

What has been happening: *have been trying to* find (l. 2)

C Jack *looked* at his watch for the twentieth time. Suddenly Jill *arrived*.

"*I've been waiting* for over an hour," he said angrily. "You never come on time."

"Oh, is that so?" Jill *answered*, "*Were* you here at

www.TopSage.com

2.30?"

Jack *went* red. "well," he *said*, "I *got* here five minutes late myself, but you *weren't* here."

"I *came* here at exactly 2.30," Jill *said*, "and I *waited* for five minutes, but you *didn't come*."

"What *have* you *been doing* since then?" Jack *asked*.

"I've just *been* to the hairdresser's," Jill *answered* brightly.

Key to Special difficulties Exercises (sample sentences)

a you threw the potato-peeler away by mistake.
The shepherd threw some food to his dogs.
The teacher threw some chalk at a boy who wasn't listening.

b I'm quite certain these are my glasses.
The children are very quiet. What's going on?

c The cause of unemployment are complicated.
Can you explain the reason for changing our arrangements?
He reasoned that we would have to comply, even if we didn't wish to.

d Please don't drop that vase!
It fell from my hands and broke.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 d 3 a 4 c 5 c 6 c 7 d
8 c 9 d 10 a 11 c 12 c

Key to Sentence structure

When *it did so*, *it sent sparKey structures down to the ground*.

Lesson 54 Sticky fingers

Key to Summary writing

As soon as the writer returned home from the shops she began to make some meat pies. When the telephone rang soon afterwards, her fingers were very sticky. She spent ten minutes talking to Helen Bates on the telephone. After that she looked at the mess she had made. Her fingers, the telephone and the doorknobs were covered with pastry. Just then the postman rang the doorbell. He wanted her to sign for a registered letter. (75 *words*)

Key to Composition

1 After putting the cake in the oven, I forgot all about it.
2 When two hours had passed, I smelt something burning.
3 On going into the kitchen, I found it full of smoke.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 b 3 d 4 b 5 d 6 b 7 a
8 d 9 c 10 b 11 d 12 d

Key to Sentence structure

I picked up the receiver between two sticky fingers and was dismayed when I recognized the voice of Helen Bates.

Lesson 55 Not a gold mine

Key to Summary writing

"The Revealer" is a new machine which is used for detecting buried gold. Using this machine, a search party recently tried to find gold in a cave near the seashore. Although they examined the cave thoroughly they only found a small gold coin which was practically worthless. However many people believe that the machine may reveal something of value soon. (60 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

17 Bunyan St.,
SevenoaKey structures,
Kent,
England.
27th March, 19__

Key to Key structures Exercises

A What happened: *came* true (1.1); *was used* (1.4); *went* (1.7); *showed* (1.9); *dug* (1.9); *found* (1.10); *searched... did not find* (11.10~11)
What was happening: *was examining* (1.8)
What used to/would happen: *used to hide* (1.5); *would* often *bury*... and then (they would) *fail* (11.5~6)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

a 1 used to 2 used to 3 uses
4 used to 5 am used to 6 am used to

b 1 gold 2 golden

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 a 3 b 4 d 5 a 6 a 7 c
8 a 9 b 10 d 11 a 12 b

Lesson 56 Faster than sound!

Key to Summary writing

A lot of old cars entered for the race, which is held once a year. A great many loud explosions could be heard when they set off and though many cars broke down during the race, a few managed to complete the course. The winning car went downhill so quickly that its driver had a lot of difficulty trying to stop it. (62 *words*)

Key to Composition

1 There was a loud explosion and my old car stopped.
2 I got out to have a look at the engine.
3 Then a man who was driving a large modern car passed me.
4 I waved to him but he did not stop.
5 When I passed the car later, its driver was changing a wheel.

TopSage.com
www.TopSage.com

Key to Key structures Exercises

A One of *the most handsome cars* (l. 3); *The most unusual car* (l. 4); *the oldest car* (l. 5); *more time under their cars than in them* (ll. 7～8); *much faster than any of...* (l. 9); but *no less exciting* (than modern car races) (l. 11)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises (sample sentences)

a They have some very *handsome* antique furniture.
Switzerland is a very *beautiful* country.
She was a very *pretty* baby, but she's quite plain now.
They make a very *good-looking* couple.

b Can you *reach* the top of that cupboard?
They *arrived at* the station just in time.

c Are you *taking part* in the new play?
The meeting *took place* in Paris last week.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 a 3 c 4 c 5 a 6 c 7 a
8 b 9 b 10 c 11 c 12 c

Lesson 57 Can I help you, madam?

Key to Summary writing

Though the woman in jeans hesitated for a moment, she entered an expensive shop and asked to see a dress that was in the window. On being told by an assistant that the dress was sold, the woman returned the following morning dressed in a fur coat. The assistant was eager to serve her this time. After making him bring her almost everything in the window, the woman finally bought the dress she had first asked for. (*77 words*)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 Don't let him *bully you*.
2 Why don't you make him *apologize for his behaviour*?
3 No one can make me *believe he's telling the truth*.
4 Will your parents let you *come to the theatre with us*?
5 Let's *go for a drive in the country*.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 b 3 b 4 b 5 b 6 d 7 c
8 d 9 c 10 b 11 d 12 a

Lesson 58 A blessing in disguise?

Key to Summary writing

The number of visitors to the village of Frinley has increased because there is said to be a "cursed tree" near the church. Since the villagers believe that if anyone picKey structures a leaf he will die, they have asked the vicar to have the tree cut down. As the tree is a useful source of income, the vicar has refused to have the tree cut down. Meanwhile, though tourists have been picking leaves, not one of them has come to harm. (*81 words*)

Key to Composition

1 A village well which was said to be cursed was bought by a man.
2 Tourists came to see it though there was not even any water in it.
3 Before the tourists could look into the well, they had to throw a coin in.

Key to Key structures Exercises

A Frinley *is said to possess* (l. 1) *It is said that if...* (l. 5)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 picked 2 gain 3 earns 4 grown

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 d 3 a 4 a 5 c 6 b 7 d
8 c 9 a 10 d 11 b 12 d

Lesson 59 In or out?

Key to Summary writing

Our dog, Rex, used to sit outside the front gate and bark so that someone would open it. Ever since my husband trained him to open the gate himself, Rex has developed another bad habit. He barKey structures when he is in the garden so that someone will let him out. After this he lets himself in and barKey structures until someone opens the gate again. Now that my husband has removed the gate, Rex has disappeared. (*75 words*)

Key to Letter writing

1st August/August 1st; 3rd December/December 3rd; 2nd July/July 2nd; Ave.; Pl.; St.; London E.C.4

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *b* *opens* (l. 9); *comes* (l. 9); *waits... shuts* (ll. 9～10); *sits... barKey structures... lets... lets* (l. 10); *begins* (l. 10)

c *wanted* (l. 2); *opened* (l. 3); *complained* (l. 3); *spent* (l. 4); *became* (l. 5); *noticed* (l. 6); *removed* (l. 11); *got* (l. 11)

d *has developed* (l. 8); *have not seen* (l. 11)

e *was going* out (l. 6); *was barking* (l. 7)

C 1 *He is said to be*/It *is said that he is* very rich.
2 *There is said to be*/*It is said that there is* a hold-up on the roads.
3 *I was given* a pen/*A pen was given to me*.
4 *She was given* a prize/*A prize was given to her*.
5 *We were promised* a new office/*A new office was promised to us*.

(N. B In numbers 3-5, the second alternative is grammatically correct but rarely used.)

www.TopSage.com

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 He left early so as not to see me.

2 The secretary asked me into the office so that the manager might speak to me.

3 I ran to the station so as not to be late.

4 He worked hard in order to learn English.

5 He has not sent me his address so that I will/shall not be able to write to him.

6 I went to see him to find out what had happened.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 b 3 d 4 d 5 d 6 a 7 b

8 a 9 d 10 a 11 a 12 b

Key to Sentence structure

Then he sits and barKey structures until someone lets him out.

Lesson 60 The future

Key to Summary writing

The writer visited a fortune-teller at a village fair who told him that a relation was coming to see him. She added that a woman he knew well would speak to him when he left the tent and he would follow her out of the fair. This came true because his wife spoke to him when he went outside. She told him they had to meet his sister at the station and she led him out of the fair. (79 *words*)

Key to Composition

1 Fortune-tellers always tell the truth because they speak in general terms.

2 If they say you will go on a journey or meet a friend, they are right because we often do these things.

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *is coming* (1. 4); *will be arriving* (1. 4); The moment you *leave... will get* (11. 5~6); *will rush* (11. 6~7); *will speak* (1. 7); *will lead* (1. 7); *will be here* (1. 10)

C is setting out/will set out; will send; receive; receive; will try; locate; will fire; will carry; will pour; will be sent

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 Our school dining room

2 ghost story

3 birthday present

4 the village inn

5 The party leader

6 the front door key

7 Christmas card

8 garden gate

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 c 6 b 7 a

8 b 9 a 10 c 11 a 12 d

Key to Sentence structure

After I *had given her some money, she looked into a crystal ball.*

Lesson 61 Trouble with the Hubble

Key to Summary writing

When the Hubble telescope was launched into space in April 1990, the pictures it sent us were very disappointing because the main mirror was faulty. Four astronauts will soon be making the necessary repairs, and eventually, pictures from the Hubble will tell us a great deal about the age and size of the universe. (54 *words*)

Key to Composition

There was trouble with the Hubble right from the start. The main mirror was faulty, so the pictures it sent us were very disappointing. Now the shuttle *Endeavour* will be taking four astronauts to make the necessary repairs, so that the Hubble will soon be sending us the clearest pictures of the stars and distant galaxies that we have ever seen.

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 cost 2 price 3 value 4 cost 5 value

6 priced 7 cost

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 a 3 c 4 c 5 a 6 d 7 c

8 a 9 b 10 b 11 d 12 d

Lesson 62 After the fire

Key to Summary writing

It took the firemen nearly three weeKey structures to get the forest fire under control. Now that all the great trees had been burnt, there was danger that heavy rain would cause serious floods which would destroy the surrounding villages. To prevent this, the forest authorities ordered grass-seed which was sprayed over the ground by planes for nearly a month. By the time that it began to rain, the grass had taken root in many places. (75 *words*)

Key to Composition

1 The firemen cut down trees in order to prevent the fire from spreading.

2 The fire, which raged for two weeKey structures, caused millions of pounds' worth of damage.

3 Forest workers planted young trees quickly so that the whole area would not become a desert.

Key to Letter writing (sample sentences)

1 I am sorry to hear that you have not been well.

2 Forgive me for not writing sooner.

3 I was so glad to hear your good news.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

4 I have not heard from John for over a month now.

5 What a (pleasant) surprise to get a letter from you at last!

6 It was very kind of you to reply so quickly.

Key to Key structures Exercises

A What had happened: *had covered* (l. 3); *had... been put* out (ll. 7~8); *had* already *taken* root (ll. 10~11); had *begun*(l. 12)

What had been happening: *had been fighting* (l. 1); *had been planting* (ll. 9~10); *had been growing* (l. 11).

C (had) discovered... appeared; had taken part... died; happened... claimed... had died; had been searching... was/had been found

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 checked 2 soil 3 checked 4 great

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 d 3 d 4 c 5 d 6 c 7 c

8 b 9 d 10 a 11 d 12 b

Lesson 63 She was not amused

Key to Summary writing

When Jeremy Hampden, who is greatly admired for his great sense of humour, was invited to make a speech at a wedding reception, he immediately agreed to do so. Since the speech contained a lot of funny stories, it was a great success. When his six-year-old daughter, Jenny, wanted to go home after his speech, Jeremy was disappointed. She had not enjoyed it because she did not like to see so many people laughing at him. (76 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A 1 "I want to go home," Jenny told him.

2 "Did you enjoy the speech, Jenny?" Jeremy asked.

3 "No," she said.

4 "Why didn't you enjoy it?" Jeremy asked.

5 "I don't like to see so many people laughing at you," she told him.

C 1 He told me to keep quiet.

2 He suggested that I should send him a fax.

3 He told me not to worry about it.

4 He insisted that I should ask him about it.

D 1 I wonder if he can wait a few minutes longer.

2 I wonder when he will arrive.

3 I wonder if he has passed his examination.

4 I wonder where he is.

5 I wonder why she didn't telephone.

6 I wonder when we shall see him again.

7 I wonder if she caught the wrong bus.

8 I wonder if you could spare me a moment.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 b 3 a 4 a 5 b 6 d 7 d

8 a 9 c 10 d 11 c 12 a

Key to Sentence structure

He *prepared the speech carefully and went to the wedding with Jenny.*

Lesson 64 The Channel Tunnel

Key to Summary writing

The tunnel, which the French engineer, Aimé Thomé, planned to build under the English Channel in 1858, would be ventilated by tall chimneys built above sea level. An Englishman, William Lowe, suggested a better plan two years later. Passing trains would solve the problem of ventilation in his proposed double railway-tunnel because they would draw in fresh air behind them. Though work began forty-two years later, it was stopped because the British feared invasion. However, the tunnel was officially opened on March 7, 1994. (85 *words*)

Key to Composition

1 ThanKey structures to the English Channel, which separates Britain from Europe, the country has not been invaded since 1066.

2 However, now that modern warfare is far more complex, such fears no longer exist.

3 Both Britain and Europe would benefit enormously from a Channel Tunnel.

Key to Key structures Exercises

A Three sentences: l. 5; l. 9; l. 10

C 1 would have been able 2 could have come 3 would not have made 4 were 5 is

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 up 2 back 3 up

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 c 3 c 4 c 5 b 6 b 7 c

8 c 9 a 10 b 11 b 12 b

Key to Sentence structure

In 1860, a better plan was put forward by an Englishman, William Lowe. He suggested that a double railwaytunnel should be built.

Lesson 65 Jumbo versus the police

Key to Summary writing

After having decided to take some presents to a children's hospital, the circus owner, Jimmy Gates, dressed up as Father Christmas and set off down the main street of the city riding an elephant called Jumbo. On being told that he was holding up the traffic, Jimmy

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

agreed to go at once but Jumbo refused to move, so fifteen policemen had to push him off the main street. As he had a good record, however, Jumbo was not arrested. (79 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

C 1 should (*or* ought to) come

2 had to do

3 should (*or* ought to) have come

4 should (*or* ought to) have asked

5 had to explain

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 accepted... off 2 dress up... down

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 d 3 b 4 b 5 c 6 a 7 a

8 d 9 c 10 c 11 b 12 d

Lesson 66 Sweet as honey!

Key to Summary writing

The Lancaster bomber was not too badly damaged when it crashed on a remote island in the South Pacific. Then the wreck remained undisturbed for twenty-six years until it was rediscovered in an aerial survey of the island. The French authorities had the plane packaged and moved in parts back to France, where a group of enthusiasts will be having it restored. They will have to have three of the engines rebuilt, but the fourth engine is still in perfect condition because a colony of bees had turned it into a hive and it was totally covered in beeswax. (99 *words*)

Key to Composition

1 When the Lancaster bomber crashed it was not too badly damaged, but the island was so remote that the wreck remained undisturbed for more than twenty years.

2 Now some enthusiasts in France who plan to have the plane restored are absolutely delighted.

3 They will only need to have three of the engines rebuilt because the fourth one was preserved in beeswax, and is still as sweet as honey.

Key to Key structures Exercises

A had the plane packaged, (had the plane) moved, have the plane restored, have only three of them rebuilt

B 1 The French authorities had the plane packaged and moved in parts back to France.

2 A group of enthusiasts are going to have the plane restored.

3 The group will need to have only three of the engines rebuilt.

C 1 He is having a new house built.

2 She will have a new dress made.

3 I did not have the house decorated.

4 They had the washing machine repaired.

5 We must have this dangerous tree cut down.

6 We have to have this new television set installed.

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 has 2 were 3 Have 4 is

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 b 3 a 4 a 5 d 6 a 7 a

8 b 9 a 10 b 11 b 12 a

Key to Sentence structure

A Lancaster bomber crashed on Wallis Island, a remote place in the South Pacific, a long way west of Samoa.

Lesson 67 Volcanoes

Key to Summary writing

Tazieff, the Polish scientist, went to Lake Kivu in the Congo in 1948 to observe a new volcano which he called Kituro. After taking photographs, he had to leave almost at once because a river of liquid rock threatened to surround him. He escaped just in time but he returned two days later when the volcano had become quiet. This time he climbed into the mouth of Kituro in order to take photographs and measure temperatures. (76 *words*)

Key to Letter writing (sample sentences)

1 Thank you for sending me your catalogue.

2 What a delightful surprise to hear from you!

3 Forgive me for not answering your letter before now.

4 I have not written before as I had lost your address.

5 I am sorry you've been ill and hope you're feeling better now.

6 It was very nice to hear from you.

Key to Key structures Exercises

C 1 He did not manage to get into town this morning.

2 They did not manage to find the boy who had run away.

3 He did not manage to find a new job.

4 I did not manage to translate the passage into English.

5 They did not manage to swim to the other side of the river.

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 tell 2 said/would say 3 say... tell 4 tell

5 told 6 say

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 a 3 d 4 d 5 d 6 d 7 b

8 b 9 a 10 d 11 d 12 d

Key to Sentence structure

Tazieff noticed that a river of liquid rock was

www.TopSage.com

coming towards him. It threatened to surround him completely, but he managed to escape just in time.

Lesson 68 Persistent

Key to Summary writing

Even though Elizabeth tried to avoid meeting Nigel Dykes, she was not able to do so. As he always insisted on accompanying her, she had to think of a way of preventing him from following her around all morning. When she told him she was going to the dentist, he said he would come with her because there was always plenty to read in the waiting room. (67 *words*)

Key to Composition

1 As there was a dentist nearby whom she knew well, Elizabeth decided to go there in order to explain what had happened.

2 While Nigel was in the waiting room, Elizabeth spoke to the dentist and he told her to leave at once through another door.

3 After Elizabeth had left, the dentist went into the waiting room and asked Nigel if he wanted to have his teeth examined.

Key to Letter writing

1 You must be very annoyed with me for not remembering your birthday.

2 I have just heard that my sister is returning from Canada.

3 I really hate to complain, but your workmen made a terrible mess in my house today.

4 Some time ago, I asked you to send me your catalogue and I still have not received it.

Key to Key structures Exercises

C (sample sentences)

1 It's no use trying to reason with him.
2 Let's go swimming.
3 Forgive my interrupting you.
4 Do you deny having taken/taking the money?
5 He came rushing towards me.
6 I'm busy writing letters.
7 I always enjoy going to the cinema.
8 Would you mind closing the door, please?

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 b 3 c 4 d 5 b 6 b 7 b
8 c 9 c 10 c 11 a 12 a

Key to Sentence structure

No *matter how busy you are, he always insists on coming with you.*

Lesson 69 But not murder!

Key to Summary writing

Mr. Eames had driven successfully through heavy traffic during his third driving test when the examiner instructed him to drive out of town. He told him to suppose that a child would suddenly cross the road in front of him. Mr. Eames would have to stop the car within five feet when the examiner tapped on the window. Though he tapped loudly, Mr. Eames did not react quickly enough and was told that he had just killed the child. (79 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *was being tested* (l. 1); *had been asked* (ll. 1～2); After *having been instructed* (ll. 2～3); *must have been pleased* (l. 5); *could be heard* (l. 9); *were* both *thrown* forward (l. 10)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 enjoy... practising 2 amused 3 advised... licence
4 entertain 5 entertained 6 amused

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 b 3 c 4 b 5 b 6 d 7 d
8 a 9 a 10 b 11 c 12 d

Key to Sentence structure

After *having been instructed to drive out of town, I began to acquire confidence.*

Lesson 70 Red for danger

Key to Summary writing

A drunk suddenly wandered into the middle of the ring during a bullfight and shouted rude remarKey structures and waved a red cap. Ignoring the matador, the bull charged at the drunk, but he stepped aside to let it pass. The crowd cheered and the drunk bowed. Just after this, three men dragged the drunk to safety while the bull looked on sympathetically before it once more turned its attention to the matador. (72 *words*)

Key to Composition

1 When the man became sober, it was possible to discover his identity.

2 He was Domingo Cordova, a man who had been a great matador in his youth but, having failed in the ring, he had taken to drink.

3 He had changed so much that no one recognized him.

Key to Letter writing (sample sentences)

I have not forgotten that I owe you some money and will pay you back when I see you.

You will find it hard to believe, but I've just won £100 on the football pools!

I am afraid I cannot meet you next week as I shall be in Singapore.

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *unaware* of (l. 2); *busy* with (l. 3); *sensitive* to (l. 5);

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

sure of (l. 7); *close* to (l. 8); *sorry* for (l. 10)

C 1 of 2 in...at 3 in...for
4 to...about 5 with...on 6 at...with
7 to...for 8 in 9 to...to
10 of 11 on 12 for
13 from 14 at...of 15 on...about/of
16 for...with 17 at 18 of
19 to...to 20 with 21 to
22 of 23 of 24 to
25 for

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 b 3 c 4 c 5 d 6 b 7 c
8 a 9 c 10 d 11 d 12 c

Lesson 71 A famous clock

Key to Summary writing

After the Houses of Parliament were burnt down in 1834, Sir Benjamin Hall was made responsible for the construction of a huge clock, which became known as Big Ben. It is very accurate despite its immense size, for officials from the Greenwich Observatory have the clock checked twice a day. This clock, which has rarely gone wrong, can be heard on the B.B.C. when it is striking, because microphones are connected to the clock tower. (75 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

C 1 shall have been working
2 have finished

D 1 had to go
2 should/ought to buy
3 should have/ought to have telephoned

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 shop assistant
2 hung
3 hanged

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 d 3 b 4 b 5 c 6 c 7 d
8 b 9 b 10 c 11 b 12 a

Key to Sentence structure

If the Houses of Parliament had not been burned down, the great clock would never have been erected.

Lesson 72 A car called *Bluebird*

Key to Summary writing

Sir Malcolm Campbell set up a land-speed record in 1935 driving a car called *Bluebird*, which had been specially built for him. His average speed was incorrectly declared to be 299 miles per hour, but this mistake was corrected later. He had averaged 301 miles an hour. Years later, his son, Donald, also broke a record and his car was also called *Bluebird*. (63 *words*)

Key to Letter writing (sample sentences)

I have not forgotten that it's your birthday tomorrow.
You will find it hard to believe, but I've decided to move into the country.
I am afraid I owe you a letter of apology.
I wonder how you learnt that I had changed my address.
You will never guess who turned up/what happened the other day.

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

A 1 miss 2 expecting 3 raise
4 lying 5 beats 6 quite
7 am used to 8 pick 9 price
10 cost 11 value 12 checked
13 accept 14 dress up 15 practise
16 amused 17 hung 18 late
19 hard 20 nearly

B 1 I told him about it in order to help you.
2 I opened the door quietly so as not to disturb him.
3 He left the letter on the table in order that I might/should see it.

C 1 up 2 down 3 out 4 up 5 off

D 1 say...told 2 tell 3 say 4 said 5 telling

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 c 3 a 4 d 5 b 6 a 7 c
8 c 9 d 10 b 11 a 12 d

Key to Sentence structure

Following *his father's footsteps many years later, Sir Malcolm's son, Donald, also set up a world record.*

Lesson 73 The record-holder

Key to Summary writing

A boy who played truant travelled 1,600 miles. He hitchhiked to Dover where he slept in a boat, only to find himself in Calais the next morning. A lorry driver gave him a lift and something to eat, and the boy got off near Paris. He stopped another car but, instead of being taken to Paris, he was taken to Perpignan on the French-Spanish border. After being picked up by a policeman, he was sent home by the local authorities. (80 *words*)

A boy played truant from school and travelled 1,600 miles. After hitchhiking to Dover, he slept in a boat. The next morning he found himself in Calais, where a lorry driver gave him a lift and something to eat. On getting off near Paris, he stopped another car

www.TopSage.com

which did not take him to Paris but to Perpignan on the French-Spanish border. There he was picked up by a policeman and sent home by the local authorities.

(77 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *who* (1.1); *or* (1.2); *as far as* (1.3); *who* (1.4); *while* (1.4); *and* (1.5); *when* (1.6); *as* (1.8); *and* (1.9); *and* (1.9); *as* (1.10); *but* (1.10); *and* (1.11); *who* (1.12)

C 1 The climbers not only reached the top of the mountain, but (they) spent the night there as well.

2 When a fire broke out in a cinema, several hundred people tried to leave the building and a number of them were injured.

3 James Sullivan, whose book on the Antarctic was published recently, will give a lecture at the local library next week.

4 Although the police searched everywhere, neither the missing boy nor his dog could be found.

5 In spite of the fact that fares have increased, the railway company is still losing money because the employees have demanded higher wages.

6 He gave me such a fright that I knocked the teapot over.

7 After making sure that the alarm clock worked, I set it so that it would ring at six o'clock.

8 I hid the Christmas presents under the desk quickly so that my young daughter would not see them when she entered the room.

9 Refusing the offer, I explained that I had already been offered a job by another company.

10 He fought the wolves off for three hours before help arrived.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 a 3 d 4 a 5 c 6 d 7 a
8 d 9 a 10 a 11 d 12 b

Key to Sentence structure

When *he woke up next morning*, *he discovered that the boat had*, *in the meantime*, *travelled to Calais*.

Lesson 74 Out of the limelight

Key to Summary writing

After an ancient bus had stopped by a dry river bed, a party of famous film stars descended. They were dressed in dark glasses and old clothes so as not to be recognized. Two of the actors carried some picnic things to a shady spot and everyone sat down. Just then a sheriff arrived and told them rudely that they must leave because camping was not allowed. Even when they told him who they were, he did not believe them.

(80 *words*)

An ancient bus stopped by a dry river bed. A party of famous film stars descended, dressed in dark glasses and old clothes in order that no one should recognize them. Two of the actors carried the picnic things to a shady spot. Everyone had sat down when a sheriff appeared and told them rudely that they must leave, as camping was not allowed there. They told him who they were but he did not believe them.

(77 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

B 1 *are* now *investigating*

2 *travels*

3 *resembles*

4 *delivers*

5 *looKey structures*

6 *loves*

7 *is coming*

8 *do* you *prefer*

C (sample sentences)

1 This box is empty, but that one contains old papers.

2 What does "No Camping" mean?

3 I don't believe a word he says!

4 I'm sorry, but I don't understand what you mean.

5 They want(to buy) a new house.

6 Don't hurry. It doesn't matter if we're late.

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

a 1 over 2 into 3 through 4 off
5 on... with 6 on with

b 1 No Smoking (in this compartment)
2 No Parking
3 No Waiting on this side of the street today

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 d 3 c 4 c 5 d 6 c 7 a
8 c 9 b 10 c 11 a 12 b

Lesson 75 SOS

Key to Summary writing

A plane crashed in the mountains, but the only passengers, a young woman and her two baby daughters, were not hurt. It was midwinter and extremely cold, so the woman put the children in a case, covered them with clothes and kept close to them all night. When she heard planes early next morning, she stamped out SOS in the snow. This was seen by a pilot, who sent a radio message, and they were soon rescued by a helicopter.

(80 *words*)

When a plane crashed in the mountains, the only passengers, a young woman and her two baby daughters, were not hurt. However, it was midwinter

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

and extremely cold. After putting the children in a case and covering them with clothes, the woman kept close to them all night. On hearing planes early next morning, the woman stamped out SOS in the snow, which was seen by a pilot. A message was sent and they were soon rescued by a helicopter. (80 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *flew*(l. 1); *crashed* (l. 2); *was killed* (l. 2); *grew* dark (l. 5); *turned* (l. 6); *put* (l. 6); *could find* (l. 7); *got* (l. 8); *kept*(l. 8); *could* (l. 8); *tried* to get (l. 9); *heard* (l. 9); *wondered* (l. 10); *could send* (l. 10); *had* (l. 10); *stamped* out (l. 11); *saw* (ll. 10~11); *sent* (l. 11); *arrived* (l. 12)

N. B. Other past tenses (e. g. *lay* [l. 4]; *knew*[l. 5]; *was*[l. 12]) are descriptive, i. e. they do not indicate something that *happened*.

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 grew/got/turned
2 fell
3 grew
4 turn/go
5 come/become
6 grew
7 growing/getting... growing/getting
8 got/grown
9 fell
10 come

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 a 3 b 4 d 5 b 6 a 7 b
8 b 9 d 10 d 11 c 12 c

Key to Sentence structure

When *it grew dark, she turned a suitcase into a bed and put the children inside it, covering them with all the clothes she could find.*

Lesson 76 April Fools' Day

Key to Summary writing

To end the special news bulletin, the television announcer showed viewers the macaroni fields of Calabria, where macaroni has been grown for over six hundred years. Harvesting has begun earlier this year and the whole village has been working hard, gathering and threshing the crop before the September rains. The crop is processed in the local factory. After the harvest, the famous Calabrian macaroni-eating competition, which Signor Fratelli has won every year since 1991, will take place. That ended the news bulletin for April 1st. (85 *words*)

To end the news bulletin, the television announcer showed viewers the fields of Calabria. Here, macaroni has been grown for over six hundred years. This year, harvesting has begun earlier. The whole village has been working hard, gathering and threshing before the September rains so that the crop can be processed in the local factory. After the harvest, the famous macaroni-eating competition will be held. This has been won by Signor Fratelli every year since 1991. With that, the news bulletin for April 1st ended. (85 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A What has happened: *has been grown* (l. 3); *has begun* (l. 6); *have* just *finished* (l. 7); *has won* (l. 13)

What has been happening: *have been expecting* (l. 5); *has been working* (ll. 8~9); *has been helping* (l. 10)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 among 2 usual
3 manager 4 headmaster
5 usual 6 director
7 between 8 usually

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 b 3 d 4 a 5 a 6 b 7 b
8 a 9 c 10 b 11 d 12 d

Lesson 77 A successful operation

Key to Summary writing

Doctors have just operated on the mummy of an Egyptian woman who died in 800 B. C.. They wanted to find out whether she died of a rare disease. After removing a section of the mummy, they sent it to a laboratory. During the operation, they unexpectedly found a small wax figure of a god. Though they were afraid the mummy would fall to pieces, it successfully survived the operation. (69 *words*)

Doctors have just operated on the mummy of an Egyptian woman who died in 800 B. C.. in order to find out if she died of a rare disease. They removed a section of the mummy, which they sent to a laboratory. Inside the mummy, they unexpectedly found a small wax figure of a god. They were afraid the mummy would fall to pieces, but it survived the operation. (69 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A What happened: *died*(l. 1); *died*(l. 5); *lasted*(l. 6); *proved* to be (l. 7); *covered*(l. 8); *removed* (l. 8); *sent* (l. 9); *found* (l. 9); *did not show* (l. 9); *was* normally *placed* (l. 10); *died* (l. 11); *feared* (l. 11); *cut* (l. 12); *survived* (l. 12)

What has happened: *has* just *had* (ll. 1~2); *have*

www.TopSage.com

not yet decided (l. 10)

What has been happening: *have been trying* (l. 4)

C 1 for 2 ago 3 since
4 since 5 for 6 ago... since
7 since 8 ago 9 since
10 for

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 complexion 2 leather 3 skin
4 candle 5 B. C.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 d 7 d
8 d 9 a 10 a 11 b 12 a

Lesson 78 The last one?

Key to Summary writing

Having read an article on smoking, the writer smoked his last cigarette. He did not smoke for a week and his wife suffered because he had a bad temper and a large appetite. Meanwhile friends offered him cigarettes and were amused to see him produce a packet of sweets from his pocket. When he went to a party, he accepted a cigarette which he was offered by a frined and since then things have returned to normal. (77 *words*)

The writer read an article on smoking and smoked his last cigarette. He did not smoke for a week and his wife suffered because of her husband's bad temper and large appetite. Whenever his friends offered him cigarettes, they were amused because he would produce a packet of sweets from his pocket. However, at a party he accepted a cigarette from a frined. Now things have returned to normal. (69 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

15 Gower St
Brisbane,
Queensland,
Australia.
24th April, 19 __

Key to Key structures Exercises

B 1 I'm making some coffee. Do you want some/any?
2 Exports have increased this year.
3 My dog is afraid of thunder and lightning.
4 The boy was sent to a school for the deaf.
5 Tax laws help the rich.
6 I spent the evening listening to some music.
7 Crime does not pay.
8 Would you like an apple or an orange?
9 Are you an artist or a musician?
10 Do you take sugar in your tea?

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 away from 2 off 3 up 4 on 5 out
6 up with 7 in

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 c 3 b 4 b 5 c 6 a 7 c
8 b 9 a 10 b 11 c 12 a

Key to Sentence structure

They made no effort to hide their amusement whenever I produced a packet of sweets from my pocket.

Lesson 79 By air

Key to Summary writing

The plane took off and flew low over the city. When it was slowly gaining height, it suddenly had to return to the airport. Meanwhile the passengers were told to keep calm. After they had disembarked, they learnt that there was a very important person on board. Someone had told the police that a bomb had been planted on the plane, but though it was searched, nothing was found. Five hours later, it took off again. (76 *words*)

After having taken off, the plane flew low over the city. Although it was slowly gaining height, it had to return to the airport. During this time, the passengers were told to keep calm until they had disembarked. Later they learnt that there was a very important person on board. Because the police had been told that a bomb had been planted on the plane, it was searched. However, nothing was found, so five hours later it took off again. (80 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A What happened: never *had* (l. 4); *turned* round (l. 7); *flew* back (l. 7); *told* (l. 8); *learnt* (l. 10); *was searched* (l. 11); *was found* (l. 12); *were* able to take off (l. 12)

What was happening: *were flying* (l. 6); and slowly *gaining* (l. 6); *were waiting* (l. 8)

What used to/would happen: *used to travel* (l. 1); *used to live* (l. 2); *used to fly* (l. 2); *would take* charge (l. 3)

C (sample answers)

1 *In the past* (but not now), I habitually flew there from Europe in the holidays.

2 I am accustomed to travelling by air *now* (because I have done it many times).

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 over 2 off 3 in 4 up... up 5 after
6 off 7 down 8 off

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 d 3 c 4 c 5 a 6 d 7 b
8 a 9 d 10 a 11 a 12 c

大家网 TopSage.com
www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

Key to Sentence structure

Only on one occasion *have I ever felt frightened*.

Lesson 80 The Crystal Palace

Key to Summary writing

The Crystal Palace, which was built for the Great Exhibition of 1851, was different from other buildings because it was made of iron and glass. Goods from various parts of the world were on display as well as a great deal of machinery. So many visitors came by boat and train that it was possible to build colleges and museums from the profits. After the exhibition, the Crystal Palace was moved to South London, where it remained until it was burnt down in 1936. (84 *words*)

The Crystal palace was built for the Great Exhibition of 1851. Made of iron and glass, it was different from other buildings. There were not only goods from various parts of the world on display but there was a great deal of machinery as well. This attracted thousands of visitors who travelled by boat and train. Later, colleges and museums were built from the profits. The Crystal Palace was moved to South London and it remained there until 1936 when it was burnt down. (84 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *the most extraordinary building* of the nineteenth century (l. 1); *one of the biggest buildings* of all time (ll. 4~5), *The most wonderful piece* of machinery on show (ll. 8~9); travelling was *not as easy as* it is today (l. 9); *one of the most famous buildings* in the world(l. 13)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 on duty 2 On second thoughts
3 on purpose 4 on foot
5 on the whole 6 on any account
7 On the average

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 b 3 d 4 a 5 d 6 c 7 a
8 d 9 c 10 c 11 d 12 b

Key to Sentence structure

The Crystal Palace was different from all other buildings in the world, for it was made of iron and glass.

Lesson 81 Escape

Key to Summary writing

After having killed the guard, the prisoner of war dragged him into the bushes and changed into his clothes. Then he put the rifle over his shoulder and marched up and down in front of the camp. A short time afterwards, four officers drove up in a car, so he stood to attention and saluted. When they had gone, the driver came towards him and after he had knocked him out, the prisoner jumped into the car and drove away. (80 *words*)

As soon as he had killed the guard and dragged him into the bushes, the prisoner of war changed into his clothes. With a rifle over his shoulder, he was marching up and down in front of the camp when four officers drove up in a car. He stood to attention and saluted. When the driver came towards him, the prisoner knocked him out. Then, jumping into the car, he drove away. (72 *words*)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 saluted 2 clear 3 cloth 4 clothes
5 greeted

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 a 3 a 4 d 5 b 6 b 7 d
8 c 9 b 10 d 11 b 12 d

Key to Sentence structure

The officers got out and the prisoner stood to attention and saluted as they passed.

Lesson 82 Monster or fish?

Key to Summary writing

A strange fish was caught near Madagascar after having pulled a small fishing boat miles out to sea. Making every effort not to damage the fish, the fisherman brought it to shore. The fish, which was over thirteen feet long, with a head like a horse, was sent to a museum. It is being examined by a scientist, who said that it was an oarfish and that such creatures live at a depth of six hundred feet. (77 *words*)

A strange fish was caught near Madagascar. Though it pulled a small fishing boat miles out to sea, the fisherman made every effort not to damage it. On being brought to shore, the fish was found to be over thirteen feet long and to have a head like a horse. Now that it has been sent to a museum, it is being examined by a scientist. It is called an oarfish and lives at a depth of six hundred feet. (80 *words*)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 wash up 2 laugh at 3 washed 4 laughed
5 wash

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 b 3 a 4 d 5 c 6 c 7 d
8 a 9 a 10 c 11 b 12 d

Key to Sentence structure

The fish, which has since been sent to a museum

www.TopSage.com

where it is being examined by a scientist, is called an oarfish.

Lesson 83 After the elections

Key to Summary writing

After having been defeated in the recent elections, the former Prime Minister, Mr. Wentworth Lane, retired abroad. My friend Patrick, who has always been a fanatical opponent of Mr. Lane's Radical Progressive Party, went to his house three times and asked the policeman on duty whether it was Mr. Lane's house. When he asked for the third time, the angry policeman told him again of Mr. Lane's defeat and retirement. Patrick said that it was something he loved to hear. (80 *words*)

Since being defeated in the recent elections, the former Prime Minister, Mr. Wentworth Lane, has retired abroad. As my friend Patrick has always been a fanatical opponent of Mr. Lane's Radical Progressive Party, he went to his house three times. Each time he asked the same policeman if it was Mr. Lane's house. The third time he was told again by the angry policeman of Mr. Lane's defeat and retirement, but Patrick said it was something he loved to hear. (80 *words*)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises (sample sentences)

1 He refused to help us and I *lost my temper with him.*
2 They were very rude but I managed to *keep my temper.*
3 He isn't usually *in* such *a good temper* on a Monday morning!
4 Don't ask him for a rise now. He's *in a very bad temper* today.
5 She's just won a prize in the lottery, so she's *in a very good mood.*
6 He's just lost a lot of money, so he's *in a very bad mood.*
7 Let's go out. I'm *in the mood for* a celebration!

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 a 3 c 4 c 5 a 6 b 7 c
8 b 9 c 10 d 11 a 12 b

Key to Sentence structure

The same policeman *was just walking slowly past the entrance, when Patrick asked the same question.*

Lesson 84 On strike

Key to Summary writing

The busmen's strike, which begins on Tuesday, may last a week. Because of this, car owners have offered to give rides to people going to work. University students, too, have volunteered to drive buses but they will have to pass a special test. Though it will be difficult to get to work, the public is grateful to the students. Only one or two people have objected that the students will drive too fast. (73 *words*)

Because of the busmen's strike, which begins on Tuesday and may last a week, car owners have offered to give rides to people going to work. University students who have volunteered to drive buses will have to pass a special test. Despite the fact that it will be difficult to get to work, the public is grateful to the students, except for one or two people who have objected that they will drive too fast. (75 *words*)

Key to Letter writing (sample sentences)

1 I shall be looking forward to seeing you next week.
2 I am very sorry for any inconvenience I have caused you.
3 I hope you will accept my apologies.
4 I wish you every success in your new job.
5 Please give my regards to your parents.

Key to Key structures Exercises

A What will happen: *will last* (l. 2); *will continue* until... *is reached* (ll. 3~4); *will last* (l. 5); *are going to offer* (l. 6); *will relieve* (l. 7); *will have to pass* (l. 10); *are going to take* (l. 10); *are going to find* (ll. 10~11); *will drive* (l. 12)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 He thought it safe to cross the road.
2 He finds it unnecessary to practise for long.
3 You'll find it hard to find a job.
4 She thinKey structures it important to speak clearly.
5 I thought it unwise for him to wait so long.
6 I considered it a good thing that she gave up smoking.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 d 6 c 7 c
8 c 9 d 10 a 11 c 12 d

Key to Sentence structure

University students have volunteered to drive buses while *the strike lasts.*

Lesson 85 Never too old to learn

Key to Summary writing

Now that my former headmaster, Mr. Page, is retiring, pupils of the school will be sending him a gift and an album with the signatures of all those who have contributed. Many former pupils will be attending a farewell dinner in his honour. After having completed forty years as a teacher, Mr. Page will devote himself to gardening, which will be a new hobby for him, but one is never too old to learn. (74 *words*)

After twenty-eight years as headmaster, Mr. Page

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

is retiring. Pupils of the school will not only be sending him a gift, but also an album with their signatures. Many former pupils will be attending a farewell dinner in honour of a man who has completed forty years as a teacher. Now he will devote himself to gardening. Though it will be a new hobby for him, this does not matter because one is never too old to learn.

(78 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

Love, Love, Yours,/Yours sincerely,

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 This car is too expensive to buy. This car is too expensive for me to buy.

2 This car is cheap enough to buy. This car is cheap enough for me to buy.

3 The tea is too hot to drink. The tea is too hot for me to drink.

4 This piece of music is too difficult to play. This piece of music is too difficult for me to play.

5 This piece is easy enough to play. This piece is easy enough for me to play.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d　2 d　3 b　4 a　5 b　6 a　7 b

8 d　9 b　10 b　11 d　12 c

Key to Sentence structure

All those *who have contributed towards the gift will sign their names in a large album which will be sent to the Headmaster's home.*

Lesson 86　Out of control

Key to Summary writing

The moment the speedboat struck the buoy, both men were thrown into the water. As it moved off very quickly across the water, the men began to swim towards the shore. Turning in a circle, the speedboat came straight towards them. After it had just missed them, they swam until they were out of danger. When the boat returned it had lost speed. Soon all the petrol was used up and it floated across the water.

(76 *words*)

Because the speedboat had struck a buoy, both men were thrown into the water. It moved off very quickly and, while the men were swimming towards the shore, it turned in a circle, came straight towards them and only just missed them. They had no sooner swum out of danger than the boat returned. This time, however, it had lost speed because nearly all the petrol had been used up and it floated across the water.

(76 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

Yours sincerely, Yours,

Key to Key structures Exercises

A　What happened: *tried* (1. 1); *came away* (1. 2); *waved* (1. 2); *were thrown* (11. 4～5); *continued* to move (1. 6); *noticed* (1. 7); *came* straight towards (11. 8～9); *roared* past (1. 9); *swam* on (1. 10); *knew* (1. 10); *completed* (1. 11); *dropped* (1. 13); *began* to drift (1. 13)

What had happened: *had* hardly *had* (1. 4); *had struck* (1. 5); *had* just *begun* (11. 6～7); *had passed* (1. 10); *had* just *had* (1. 11); *had slowed* down (1. 12); *had* nearly all *been used up* (1. 12)

What had been happening: *had been water skiing* (1. 4)

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 fairly... enough　2 fairly　3 enough

4 enough　5 enough

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b　2 c　3 a　4 b　5 b　6 b　7 d

8 c　9 a　10 b　11 b　12 c

Key to Sentence structure

After it had passed, they swam on as quickly as they could because they knew that the boat would soon return.

Lesson 87　A perfect alibi

Key to Summary writing

At the time of the murder, the man claimed that he had been travelling on the 8 o'clock train to London and had arrived at work on time. When the inspector asked if a later train would get him to work on time, the man agreed it would but said that he always travelled early. The inspector suggested that he was lying because, that morning, the 8 o'clock train broke down, so the man must have caught the 8. 25.　(79 *words*)

When the murder was committed, the man claimed that he was travelling on the 8 o'clock train to London. He said that he arrived at work on time. Then the inspector asked if a later train would get him to work on time. Though the man agreed it would, he said he always travelled early. In reply, the inspector suggested he was lying, as the 8 o'clock train broke down that morning and therefore the man must have caught the 8. 25.　(80 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A　The man said that he was travelling on the eight o'clock train to London at the time the murder was committed. The inspector asked him if he always

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

caught such an early train. The man said that he did because he had to be at work at ten o'clock, and that his employer would confirm that he was there on time. The inspector then asked him if a later train would get him to work on time. The man supposed that it would, but said that he never caught a later train. The inspector kased at what time he had arrived at the station. The man said that he had arrived at the station at ten to eight. He added that he had bought a paper and waited for the train. When the inspector asked him if he had noticed anything unusual, the man said he hadn't. The inspector suggested that he was not telling the truth and that he did not catch the eight o'clock train, but (caught) the eight twenty-five, which would still get him to work on time. The inspector pointed out that on the morning of the murder, the eight o'clock train did not run at all, as it had broken down at Ferngreen station and had been taken off the line.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 d 3 c 4 d 5 a 6 c 7 c

8 a 9 d 10 a 11 a 12 d

Key to Sentence structure

I suggest *that you are not telling the truth*.

Lesson 88 Trapped in a mine

Key to Summary writing

Six men who have been trapped in a mine for seventeen hours may lose their lives because rescue operations are proving difficult. Since explosives might cause the roof of the mine to collapse, rescue workers are drilling a hole through hard rock, but progress is slow. Two hours ago, a microphone was lowered into the mine and the men have been in touch with their relatives. They are running short of food and drink but they are in good spirits. (80 *words*)

Six men have been trapped in a mine for seventeen hours and may lose their lives. Rescue operations are proving difficult as explosives might cause the roof of the mine to collapse. Because of this, rescue workers are drilling a hole through hard rock, yet progress is slow. Now that a microphone has been lowered into the mine, the men are in touch with their relatives. Though they are running short of food and drink, they are in good spirits. (80 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A The word *if* is contained in four sentences.

C 1 would not have been injured 2 had been 3 will find 4 had given 5 is forbidden

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 into 2 out of 3 in 4 over 5 after

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 b 3 b 4 c 5 c 6 a 7 b

8 b 9 c 10 c 11 c 12 b

Key to Sentence structure

If *they knew how difficult it was to drill through the hard rock, they would lose heart.*

Lesson 89 A slip of the tongue

Key to Summary writing

The local cinema was packed because the P & U Bird Seed Company was presenting a free comedy show. As many of the artistes who should have appeared failed to turn up, the show was very dull. The funniest thing we heard came at the beginning from the advertiser who introduced the programme saying, "This is the Poo and Ee Seed Bird Company. Good ladies, evening and gentlemen!" (68 *words*)

The local cinema was packed. The P & U Bird Seed Company was presenting a free comedy show but many of the artistes who should have appeared failed to turn up. Because of this, the show was very dull. The funniest thing we heard came at the beginning from the advertiser who introduced the programme saying, "This is the Poo and Ee Seed Bird Company. Good ladies, evening and gentlemen!" (70 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

C 1 must not 2 need not

D 1 had to go 2 should have gone 3 should begin

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

A 1 queue 2 single

B (sample sentences)

1 It was so *funny* that I still laugh whenever I think about it!

2 It's *funny* (that) he hasn't replied to your letter.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 a 3 d 4 a 5 d 6 d 7 a

8 d 9 b 10 d 11 d 12 b

Lesson 90 What's for supper?

Key to Summary writing

Divers working on North Sea oil rigs are often terrified by giant fish that bump into them when they are working in deep water. These fish are not sharKey structures or whales. On the contrary, they are favourite eating varieties that grow to unnatural sizes. Three factors have caused this to happen; the first is the warmth from oil-pipes; the second is the

www.TopSage.com

supply of plentiful food; the third is the absence of fishing round the rigs. (76 *words*)

Divers who work on the North Sea oil rigs have been terrified out of their wits by giant fish bumping into them while they work in deep water. The fish are not sharKey structures or whales, but favourite eating varieties like cod and skate which have grown to unnatural sizes. Three factors have caused this to happen: the warmth from the hot oil-pipes, the plentiful food thrown from the rigs and the absence of fishing around the rigs. (76 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

B 1 They *have had* special cages *made* to protect the divers from these monsters.

2 The oil companies *have had the rigs repaired* frequently.

3 The divers often *have to work* in total darkness.

4 He *has had* a book *published*.

5 We *have to* protect fish stocKey structures.

6 We *have not had* the letter *sent* to his new address.

7 "I *will have* the package *sent* to you," she promised.

8 *Do you have to* go so soon?

9 Are you going *to have* this suit *cleaned*?

10 When will you *have* this loose handle *fixed*?

11 I have to take this cap in to *have* new brakes *fitted*.

12 How long is it since you *had to* see a doctor?

13 The doctor told me I *had to* get more exercise.

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 is 2 is 3 are 4 Is 5 have

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 c 3 c 4 c 5 a 6 b 7 c

8 b 9 a 10 d 11 d 12 d

Key to Sentence structure

Divers, who often have to work in darkness a hundred feet under water, have been frightened out of their wits by giant fish bumping into them as they work.

Lesson 91 Three men in a basket

Key to Summary writing

While circling the balloon, the pilot saw three men in the basket, one of whom was holding a pair of binoculars. When it flew over the station, one of the men took photographs. Then it landed near an airfield, but the police could not arrest anyone because the basket contained two Members of Parliament and the Commanding Officer of the station. Afterwards the Commanding Officer explained that one half of the station did not know what the other half was doing. (81 *words*)

The pilot circled the balloon, under which there was a basket containing three men, one of whom was holding a pair of binoculars. Before landing near an airfield, it flew over the station and someone took photographs. As two of the men were Members of Parliament and the other was the Commanding Officer, the police could not arrest anyone. The mystery was explained when the Commanding Officer admitted (said) that one half of the station did not know what the other half was doing. (83 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *was able to* explain(1.3), *can be* a great danger(1.5), *managed to* circle(1.7), *could* make out(1.8), *could* not arrest(1.11).

C 1 Can/Could 2 could/was(soon) able to

3 were able to 4 can

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 out 2 out 3 for 4 up 5 up for

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 b 3 c 4 b 5 c 6 d 7 b

8 b 9 c 10 b 11 c 12 b

Key to Sentence structure

A pilot *noticed a balloon which seemed to be making for a Royal Air Force Station nearby. He informed the station at once, but no one there was able to explain the mystery.*

Lesson 92 Asking for trouble

Key to Summary writing

The writer returned home at about two in the morning and rang the doorbell. Having failed to wake up his wife, he put a ladder against the wall and began climbing towards the bedroom window. Suddenly a policeman called out, but the writer answered him rudely. He told him he had forgotten his key. The shouting woke his wife. She opened the window just as the policeman had started climbing the ladder after him. (74 *words*)

On arriving home at about two in the morning, the writer rang the doorbell but failed to wake up his wife. After having put a ladder against the wall, he was climbing towards the bedroom window when a policeman called out. Answering him rudely, the writer told him he had forgotten his key. The shouting woke his wife, who opened the window at the moment when the policeman started climbing the ladder after him. (74 *words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

B (sample sentences)

www.TopSage.com

1 I am accustomed to working late at night.

2 Fancy seeing you here!

3 I always avoid going to expensive restaurants.

4 He accused me of telling lies.

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 He likes classical music and *so do I*.

2 He has had breakfast and *so have I*.

3 He doesn't like classical music and *neither do I*.

4 She will buy a new dress and *so will I*.

5 He hasn't had any breakfast and *neither have I*.

6 They ran quickly and *so did we*.

7 She won't buy a new dress and *neither will I*.

8 You are late and *so am I*.

9 They didn't run quickly and *neither did we*.

10 He could speak French and *so could I*.

11 He could not speak French and *neither could I*.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 c 3 d 4 c 5 b 6 a 7 b

8 b 9 a 10 d 11 c 12 a

Key to Sentence structure

It must *have been about two in the morning when I returned home*.

Lesson 93 A noble gift

Key to Summary writing

The Statue of Liberty, which was presented to the United States of America by the French people in the 19th century, was designed by Bartholdi and built on a metal frame constructed by Eiffel. The site chosen for it was an island at the entrance of New York Harbour, where a pedestal had to be built. The statue was erected in Paris in 1884 and re-erected two years later in America. It was officially presented in October, 1886.

(*78 words*)

The Statue of Liberty was presented to the United States of America by the French people in the 19th century. Though designed by Bartholdi, it was built on a metal frame constructed by Eiffel. The site chosen for it was an island at the entrance of New York Harbour and a pedestal had to be built. The statue was first erected in Paris in 1884, but it was re-erected two years later in America and officially presented in October, 1886.

(*80 words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

A *was presented* (1.2); *was designed* (1.4); *took*(1.4); *was made* of(1.5); *supported* by (1.5); *had been... constructed*(1.6); *could be transported* (1.7); *had to be found* (11.7～8); *had to be built* (1.8); *was* (1.8); *was* (1.9); *had been erected* (1.9); *was taken* to pieces (1.10); *sent* (1.10); *had been put... was... presented* (1.10); *has been* (1.12); *have passed* through(1.12).

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

1 ˈ*exported*... ˈ*imported* (Note: the direct contrast between EXported and IMported it this sentence makes it necessary to stress the prefixes of these verbs. Normally, of course, the stress would be: *exˈported... imˈported*.)

2 ˈ*records*... ˈ*exports*

3 *proˈtested*... ˈ*increase*

4 *inˈsulted*... ˈ*accent*

5 *conˈduct*

6 ˈ*contest*... ˈ*record*

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 d 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 c 7 c

8 d 9 c 10 b 11 d 12 b

Key to Sentence structure

One *of the most famous monuments in the world, the Statue of Liberty, was presented to the United States of America in the 19th century by the people of France*.

Lesson 94 Future champions

Key to Summary writing

At a swimming pool in Los Angeles, children are taught to hold their breath under water before they can walk. They begin learning when they are two months old and, in time, they can pick up weights from the bottom of the pool. The game they enjoy most is the tricycle race, which takes place seven feet under water. Some children pedal their tricycles, while others push or pull them, and a few get across without coming up for air.

(*80 words*)

At a swimming pool in Los Angeles, children who are taught to hold their breath under water before they can walk often begin learning to swim when two months old. Though they can pick up weights from the bottom of the pool, the game they enjoy most is the underwater tricycle race. This takes place seven feet under water and, while some children pedal their tricycles, others push or pull them. A few get across without coming up for air.

(*80 words*)

Key to Key structures Exercises

1 of 2 of... to 3 to... from

大家网 TopSage.com
www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

4 on... on	5 from... with	6 to... of
7 with... on	8 with... to	9 to... with
10 at... on	11 of... for	12 in/with
13 in	14 to... in... with	15 of... to
16 of	17 for	18 of... to
19 for... for	20 on... in	21 of... about
22 to	23 for/about... at/by	
24 in	25 of... of	26 to... of
27 for	28 to	29 on
30 on... of	31 to	32 to/with... of
33 to... to	34 from... of	35 in... on

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 b 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 d 7 a
8 c 9 d 10 a 11 b 12 c

Key to Sentence structure

It is not long *before they are accustomed to swimming*.

Lesson 95 A fantasy

Key to Summary writing

While the Ambassador of Escalopia was in his office, university students set the basement of the Embassy on fire. When the Ambassador went to investigate, a man called Horst aimed a fire extinguisher at him because he thought that the Ambassador was on fire. Moreover, there was a hole in the Ambassabor's hat which had been made when someone fired a shot through his office window. The Ambassador was lucky, for he was not wearing it at the time. *(78 words)*

The Ambassador of Escalopia was in his office when university students set the Embassy basement on fire. After the Ambassador had gone to investigate, a man called Horst aimed a fire extinguisher at him under the impression that the Ambassador was on fire. In addition to this, there was a hole in the Ambassador's hat. It had been made when someone fired a shot through his office window. It was lucky for the Ambassador that he was not wearing it. *(79 words)*

Key to Key structures Exercises

A When she asked what had happened and how his clothes had got into such a mess, the Ambassador answered drily that a fire extinguisher had been responsible. He then told her that university students had set the Embassy on fire that morning. His wife was most surprised and asked him where he had been at the time. The Ambassador answered that he had been in his office as usual. When the fire broke out in the basement, he had gone down to investigate and a man called Horst had aimed a fire extinguisher at him. Horst thought the Ambassador was on fire. The Ambassador said that he must definitely get the fellow posted. His wife suddenly noticed a big hole in her husband's hat and asked him how he could explain it. The Ambassador said that someone had fired a shot through his office window. The shot was accurate, but fortunately he had not been wearing his hat at the time. If he had, he would not have been able to get home for lunch.

B have *just* received... said... has broken... were demonstrating/demonstrated... broke... set... were protesting... has *recently* been imposed/was *recently* imposed... said... has been *seriously* affected... is said... was *bravely* defended... kept... announced... would be taken

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 d 6 c 7 d
8 c 9 a 10 c 11 d 12 c

Key to Sentence structure

"How *did your clothes get into such a mess*?"

Lesson 96 The dead return

Key to Summary writing

The Japanese annual Festival for the Dead is a cheerful occasion. As the dead are said to return home, food is laid out for them and lanterns are lit to guide them on their way. People dance and sing all night and the uneaten food is thrown into the sea or into a river the next morning. In some places, the lanterns are palced on the sea and people watch from the shore until the lanterns drift out of sight. *(80 words)*

The Japanese annual Festival for the Dead is a cheerful occasion, for the dead are said to return home. Not only is food laid out for them, but lanterns are lit to guide them as well while people dance and sing all night. The uneaten food is thrown into the sea or a river the next morning. In some places, the lanterns are placed on the sea. People watch from the shore as the lanterns drift out of sight. *(79 words)*

Key to Special difficulties Exercises

A 1 usual	2 among	3 manager
4 clothes	5 greets	6 clean
7 washing	8 temper	9 too
10 fairly	11 enough	12 single
13 queue		

www.TopSage.com

B
1 in 2 out of 3 up
4 over 5 away from 6 for
7 in 8 out 9 down
10 after 11 into 12 over
13 out 14 up

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 c 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 d 7 c
8 d 9 a 10 b 11 c 12 b

Key to Sentence structure

As they *are expected to be hungry after their long journey, food is laid out for them.*

大家网 TopSage.com
www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

全力出击



本书读者对象：

- ★欲在中考、高考英语考试中取得高分的初、高中学生；
- ★对必须面临的考试（四、六级、职称考试、专升本等）一筹莫展的考生；
- ★参加PETS2级和3级考试的考生；
- ★已经学完了《新概念英语》第一册或任何一种初级英语教程的英语学习者；
- ★语法基础不牢固者；
- ★已经放下英语多年，但有一定基础，希望重拾英语的学习者；
- ★想为自己的英语打牢根基的学习者；
- ★对大学英语学习感到吃力的学习者；
- ★不满足于只是应付水平考试，想全面提高自己英语水平的学习者。

http://www.cp.com.cn
ISBN 978-7-100-06922-9
定价：29.80元

更多学习资料请登录WWW.KAOTIANXIA.COM

www.TopSage.com